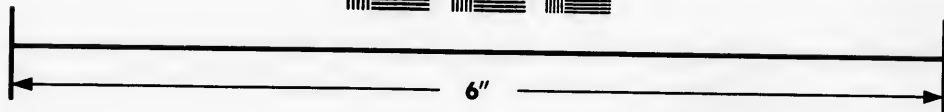
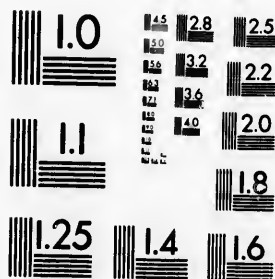


**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

**CIHM  
Microfiche  
Series  
(Monographs)**

**ICMH  
Collection de  
microfiches  
(monographies)**



**Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques**

**© 1993**



The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

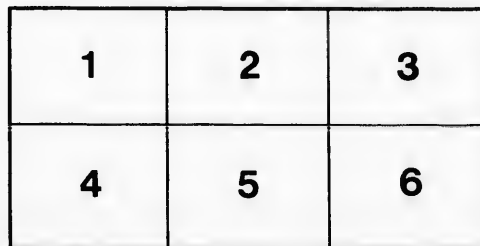
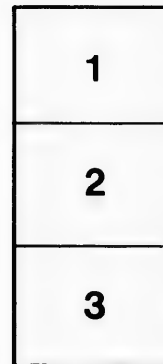
National Library of Canada

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol  $\rightarrow$  (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol  $\nabla$  (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Bibliothèque nationale du Canada

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole  $\rightarrow$  signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole  $\nabla$  signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

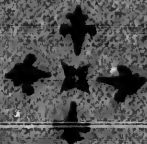
Gage & Co's.  
Educational Series

BOOK V.

ENGLISH READERS.

MEIKLEJOHN.

PE 1121  
E55





National Library  
of Canada

Bibliothèque nationale  
du Canada

~~Copy Reported~~  
~~are H/107.~~  
~~~~~







E

W. J. Gage & Co.'s Educational Series.

# ENGLISH READERS.

BOOK V.

EDITED BY

J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN, M.A.,  
PROFESSOR OF EDUCATION IN THE UNIVERSITY OF ST. ANDREWS,  
AND ADAPTED FOR USE IN CANADIAN SCHOOLS.



TORONTO:  
W. J. GAGE AND COMPANY.  
1881.

FELIX  
ECC



Entered, according to Act of Parliament, in the Office of the Minister  
of Agriculture, in the year of our Lord 1881, by W. J. GAGE & CO.,  
Toronto.

IN p  
pupils  
import  
past is  
tory, a  
present  
both by  
travel,  
Round  
fire and  
The p  
and he  
clearly  
the book  
An artic  
been ins  
derstood  
strongly  
tant sub  
tions — f  
system, a  
The po  
vating in  
poems, p  
It is hope  
Editor ha



## PREFACE

---

IN preparing the Fifth Book, the chief aim has been to give pupils an acquaintance with what is most interesting and most important in connection with the world, past and present. The past is seen in a series of some of the striking events of History, and in sketches of the lives of a few noble men. The present condition of the earth and its people is clearly given both by description and by pictures, in the numerous articles on travel, by the three lessons based on Montgomery's Voyage Round the World, and by the instructive selections relating to fire and water in deciding the physical formation of the earth.

The pupil is introduced to social phenomena on a large scale; and he is placed in a position to begin to think rightly and clearly about them. For this reason, a prominent feature in the book is the life of human beings in large towns and cities. An article on the SOCIAL ASPECTS OF TEMPERANCE has also been inserted; as it was felt that this question, to be fully understood, must be regarded as one of the influences which strongly affect society as at present constituted. This important subject has also been treated in its physiological relations—from the point of view of its effect on the nervous system, and the vital organs of the human body.

The poetical selections are such as cannot fail to have an elevating influence on the minds of the pupils. A number of poems, *printed as prose*, have been introduced into this volume. It is hoped that the teacher will find this exercise useful. The Editor has observed that the strongest tendency of the young

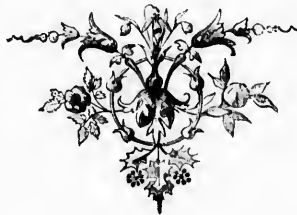
pupil in reading is to be carried away by the metre, and to forget the emphasis, or sense-accent, in favor of the ictus, or verse-accent. It is believed that these exercises will train him to prefer the sense to the sound, the thought to the rhythm, the reason to the rhyme, the emphasis to the mere accent; and that he will leave the metre and rhyme to take care of themselves, as in all English verse they can very well do.

Selections from noted Canadians, and articles relating to Canada, have been continued in this book.

The last of the articles on Hygiene has also been inserted.

The Exercises will, it is hoped, be found useful in many ways. A large variety has been intentionally given, that the master may be able to adapt the work to the different sections and ages of his classes, and that the pupils may be able to allow their minds free play over the forms of language. Great attention has been paid to working out the exact meaning of words and phrases. The Latin and Greek Derivatives at the end come in to close the series of Derivations. In the Fourth and Fifth Books, the learner has a pretty clear general view of the composition of the English language—in its Teutonic, Norman-French, and Latin and Greek elements. Armed with these, he will probably now be able to examine the nature of the different strands which exist in every ordinary English sentence.

The spacings, italics, cautions, and directions for reading the poetical extracts will, it is hoped, be very useful both to teachers and to pupils.



Geor  
The  
The  
Up W  
Wate  
The Y  
"He  
The  
Ingra  
Magn  
The  
The S  
The  
Alcohol  
The  
The  
Edwin  
The  
Joan  
Self-s  
A Bea  
Temp  
Robe  
An Ice  
To a V  
Metho  
Virtue  
The O  
A Din  
Tropic  
The L  
Thor  
"I'll E  
The C  
The R  
Spring  
The D  
Trial a  
Snow a  
Boiling  
Great  
Abroad  
"You  
Great  
A Man  
Great  
A Fore

# CONTENTS.

---

|                                                                          | PAGE |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| George Stephenson . . . . .                                              | 7    |
| The Imaginary Banquet . . . . . <i>From the "Arabian Nights."</i>        | 19   |
| The Day of Rest . . . . . <i>Lord Lytton</i>                             | 23   |
| Up With the Dawn . . . . . <i>Thomas Elliot</i>                          | 24   |
| Water Destroying and Fire Building up . . . . . <i>Sir John Herschel</i> | 26   |
| The White Ship . . . . . <i>Charles Dickens</i>                          | 33   |
| "He Never Smiled Again" . . . . . <i>Mrs. Hemans.</i>                    | 38   |
| The Brave Man . . . . . <i>From the German of Bürger.</i>                | 40   |
| Ingratitude . . . . .                                                    | 46   |
| Magna Charta . . . . .                                                   | 50   |
| The Battle of Morgarten . . . . .                                        | 56   |
| The Sailor's Life . . . . . <i>Barry Cornwall</i>                        | 60   |
| The Battle of Otterburn . . . . . <i>Sir Walter Scott</i>                | 61   |
| Alcohol . . . . . <i>A. S. Day</i>                                       | 66   |
| The Humble-bee . . . . . <i>R. W. Emerson</i>                            | 73   |
| The Battles of Cressy and Poitiers . . . . . <i>Dean Stanley</i>         | 76   |
| Edwin and Paulinus — Conversion of Northumbria . . . . .                 | 86   |
| The Life of Man . . . . . <i>Freeman</i>                                 | 88   |
| Joan of Arc, the Maid of Orleans . . . . . <i>DeQuincey</i>              | 89   |
| Self-sacrifice . . . . .                                                 | 98   |
| A Bear-hunt . . . . . <i>Atkinson</i>                                    | 102  |
| Temperance, or the Cheap Physician . . . . . <i>Crashaw</i>              | 107  |
| Robert Bruce Victorious . . . . . <i>Sir Walter Scott</i>                | 108  |
| An Iceberg . . . . . <i>Dana</i>                                         | 115  |
| To a Waterfowl . . . . . <i>W. C. Bryant</i>                             | 117  |
| Method and its Advantages . . . . . <i>S. T. Coleridge</i>               | 119  |
| Virtue . . . . . <i>Anonymous</i>                                        | 122  |
| The Origin of Rivers . . . . . <i>Tyndall</i>                            | 124  |
| A Dinner in an Old Manor House . . . . . <i>Longman</i>                  | 127  |
| Tropical Scenery . . . . . <i>Trollope</i>                               | 130  |
| The Last Charge of the French at Waterloo, . . . . . <i>Sir W. Scott</i> | 135  |
| Thoroughness in Work . . . . . <i>Address by Mr. Walter, M. P.</i>       | 138  |
| "I'll Find a Way, or Make It" . . . . . <i>Saxe</i>                      | 140  |
| The Character of Nelson . . . . . <i>Southey</i>                         | 142  |
| The Retreat from Moscow . . . . .                                        | 147  |
| Spring is Come . . . . . <i>William Allingham,</i>                       | 150  |
| The Death of Nelson . . . . . <i>Southey</i>                             | 151  |
| Trial and Execution of Marie Antoinette . . . . . <i>Carlyle</i>         | 156  |
| Snow and Ice . . . . .                                                   | 161  |
| Boiling Water, Hot Springs and Geysers . . . . .                         | 167  |
| Great Cities — London . . . . .                                          | 172  |
| Abroad, at Home . . . . . <i>Shakespeare</i>                             | 179  |
| "You Will Repent It" . . . . . <i>DeQuincey</i>                          | 181  |
| Great Cities — Rome . . . . .                                            | 185  |
| A Manly Life . . . . . <i>George Eliot</i>                               | 195  |
| Great Cities — Paris . . . . .                                           | 200  |
| A Forest Scene . . . . . <i>Matthew Arnold</i>                           | 208  |

|                                                    |                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Character of Sir Walter Scott . . . . .            | <i>Lockhart</i> . . . . .                          | 210 |
| The Spanish Armada . . . . .                       | <i>J. R. Green</i> . . . . .                       | 215 |
| The Spanish Armada . . . . .                       | <i>Lord Macaulay</i> . . . . .                     | 222 |
| Great Cities—Berlin . . . . .                      | . . . . .                                          | 230 |
| A Voyage Round the World. Part I. . . . .          | . . . . .                                          | 234 |
| The Skylark . . . . .                              | <i>James Hogg</i> . . . . .                        | 246 |
| The Castle by the Sea . . . . .                    | <i>Uhland (translated by Longfellow)</i> . . . . . | 247 |
| The Forests of the Amazons . . . . .               | . . . . .                                          | 248 |
| Kilmenny . . . . .                                 | <i>James Hogg</i> . . . . .                        | 253 |
| The Social Aspects of Temperance . . . . .         | . . . . .                                          | 255 |
| Rosabelle . . . . .                                | <i>Sir W. Scott</i> . . . . .                      | 262 |
| A Brave Sailor . . . . .                           | <i>Dickens</i> . . . . .                           | 265 |
| The Ferry . . . . .                                | <i>Ludwig Uhland</i> . . . . .                     | 269 |
| Great Cities—St. Petersburg . . . . .              | . . . . .                                          | 270 |
| The Suez Canal . . . . .                           | <i>Sterne</i> . . . . .                            | 278 |
| Contentment . . . . .                              | . . . . .                                          | 282 |
| A Voyage Round the World. Part II. . . . .         | . . . . .                                          | 285 |
| Night . . . . .                                    | <i>Robert Southey</i> . . . . .                    | 295 |
| The Gentleman . . . . .                            | <i>Chaucer</i> . . . . .                           | 296 |
| Battle of Waterloo . . . . .                       | <i>Sir W. Scott</i> . . . . .                      | 296 |
| Incidents of the Battle . . . . .                  | <i>Creasy</i> . . . . .                            | 303 |
| A Winter Day in the Arctic Regions . . . . .       | <i>Osborn</i> . . . . .                            | 312 |
| The Lost Expedition with Franklin . . . . .        | <i>Hood</i> . . . . .                              | 317 |
| Great Cities—Vienna . . . . .                      | . . . . .                                          | 318 |
| One by One . . . . .                               | . . . . .                                          | 325 |
| The Battle of Hohenlinden . . . . .                | . . . . .                                          | 326 |
| Heroism and Discipline . . . . .                   | . . . . .                                          | 330 |
| The Rabbi and His Children . . . . .               | . . . . .                                          | 336 |
| A Voyage Round the World. Part III. . . . .        | . . . . .                                          | 340 |
| The Land We Live In . . . . .                      | <i>T. D. McGee</i> . . . . .                       | 351 |
| Sunset . . . . .                                   | <i>Ruskin</i> . . . . .                            | 356 |
| "Fill the Doctor Comes" . . . . .                  | <i>Dr. McLaughlin</i> . . . . .                    | 356 |
| Canadian Confederation . . . . .                   | <i>Sir John A. Macdonald</i> . . . . .             | 362 |
| American Fugitive Slave-Bill . . . . .             | <i>Hon. George Brown</i> . . . . .                 | 368 |
| Winnipeg . . . . .                                 | . . . . .                                          | 372 |
| Foreign Elements in the English Language . . . . . | . . . . .                                          | 374 |





. . . 210  
 . . . 215  
 . . . 222  
 . . . 230  
 . . . 234  
 . . . 246  
 (low) 247  
 . . . 248  
 . . . 253  
 . . . 255  
 . . . 262  
 . . . 265  
 . . . 269  
 . . . 270  
 . . . 278  
 . . . 282  
 . . . 285  
 . . . 295  
 . . . 296  
 . . . 296  
 . . . 303  
 . . . 312  
 . . . 317  
 . . . 318  
 . . . 325  
 . . . 326  
 . . . 330  
 . . . 336  
 . . . 340  
 . . . 351  
 . . . 356  
 . . . 356  
 in . . . 362  
 nald, 368  
 own, 372  
 . . . 374

# ENGLISH READERS.

## BOOK V.



GEORGE STEPHENSON.  
 1781-1848.

**Locomotion**, the act or power  
 of moving from one place to  
 another.

**Model**, to shape, to copy.  
**Mechanics**, the science which  
 treats of machines.

**Agriculture**, farming; from the Latin *ager*, a field, and *cultura*, a cultivating.

**Gin**, a machine used in collieries; a contraction of *engine*.

**Pulley**, a wheel with a groove in it, in which a cord runs, used for raising weights.

**Muscular**, strong, vigorous. *Muscle* means literally a little mouse, from the appearance of a muscle's movement under the skin.

**Cylinder**, a hollow round, or roller-like body, whose ends are equal circles.

**Ambition**, the desire for honour, or excellence, or power.

**Enthusiastic**, filled with pleasure or delight.

**Piston**, a round bar moving up and down within a cylinder.

**Miniature**, an exact copy, but made smaller.

**Mortification**, vexation.

**Safety-lamp**, a lamp surrounded by wire-gauze, used for safety in mines.

**Capital**, the money for carrying on a business.

**Rebuff**, a beating back, discouragement.

**Lever**, that which lifts or raises.

1. George Stephenson and James Watt are the two men to whom we owe the speed and comfort of our present railway travelling. James Watt, a Scotchman, devoted himself to the perfection of the steam-engine; and George Stephenson, the son of a poor engine-tender, succeeded in adapting the steam-engine for locomotion. George was born in 1781, at a colliery village called Wylam, on the banks of the Tyne, about eight miles from Newcastle. He was one of six children who had to be supported on their father's small wages of twelve shillings a-week. Robert Stephenson, the father, or 'Old Bob,' as he was called, was an amiable man, fond of animals, and fond of telling stories, which made him a great favourite with young people. Mabel, his wife—'canny Mabel'—was a good, thoughtful woman; and thus, though their home was poor, it was not without kindness and refinement. 2. Whether it was that there was no school to send them to or not is not clear, but the young Stephensons certainly grew up without any education, and as soon as they were able to work they were set to any odd job that could be found. When

Geo  
ano  
sent  
a-da  
bare  
flies  
goin  
3.  
for  
tow  
coal  
not  
He  
came  
no c  
out  
of r  
to le  
do o  
four  
able-  
towa  
empl  
of w  
farm  
a gir  
twop  
a-wee  
the c  
miles  
eveni  
who  
about  
often

George was about eight years old his father removed to another colliery at Dewley Burn, where George was sent to herd cows, for which he was paid twopence a-day. And here, at Dewley Burn, we see him, a strong, bare-legged herd-boy, driving his cows or chasing butterflies, or amusing himself by making water-mills, or even going so far as to model small steam-engines in clay.

3. In these pursuits we have a glimpse of his genius for mechanics. Often we see that boys take a bent towards what first excites their fancy. Brought up among coal-pits and pumps, and wheels and engines, it was not surprising that his mind should be full of them. He pried into every mechanical contrivance that he came near, and acquired a knack of making things with no other help than an old knife. He liked to work out his own ideas in his simple way, without a thought of results. 4. From being a herd-boy he was promoted to lead horses when ploughing, to hoe turnips, and to do other farm-work, by which he rose from twopence to fourpence a-day. He might have advanced to be an able-bodied ploughman, but his tastes did not lean towards agriculture. What he wished was to be employed about a colliery, so as to be among the bustle of wheels, gins, and pulleys. 5. Accordingly, leaving farm-work, he got employment at Dewley Burn to drive a gin-horse, by which change he had another rise of twopence a-day, his wages being now three shillings a-week. In a short time he went as gin-horse driver to the colliery of Black Callerton; and as this was two miles from home, he walked that distance morning and evening. This walk, however, was nothing to George, who was getting to be a big stout boy, fond of rambling about after birds' nests, and keeping tame rabbits, and often taking a part in country sports. 6. His next

rise was to act as an assistant-fireman to his father at Dewley. Gladly he accepted this situation, for, besides that he was allowed a shilling a-day, he looked forward to being promoted to be engineman, which now, in his fourteenth year, was the height of his ambition. From Dewley he went to Mid Mill, and after that to the colliery of Throckley Bridge, at which his wages were twelve shillings a-week. He felt he was getting on. It was a proud moment for him when one Saturday evening he got his first twelve shillings. 'Now,' said he, enthusiastically, 'I am a made man for life.'

7. While at this occupation he acquired a character for steadiness—that was a great point gained. The world is always looking about for steady men, and sometimes it is not easy to get hold of them. George was rigorously sober, and was never so happy as when he was at work, though he took pleasure also, after work-hours, in wrestling, putting or throwing the stone, and other feats of muscular skill. He had a powerful frame, and could lift heavy weights in a manner that was thought surprising. 8. A general favourite from his good-nature and skill at games, George likewise gave satisfaction to his employers, and, being a clever, handy young man, was promoted to the situation of engineman or plugman at Newburn. From looking after a furnace, he had now to attend to the working of a steam-engine, and to watch that the pumps were kept properly working. 9. It was an important post, and not without trouble. If the pumps went wrong, he had to go down into the pit, and do his best to set them right by plugging—that is, stuffing any hole or crevice to make them draw; and, if the defect was beyond his power to mend, his duty was to report it to the chief engineer. In these services George took

im  
han  
cyl  
con  
cha  
10  
neve  
pum  
leve  
with  
wate  
engin  
and  
11. A  
Geor  
his e  
of th  
him t  
after  
again  
steam  
life, a  
operat  
12.  
nothin  
do, an  
occupy  
to mod  
had al  
ment,  
his me  
engine  
They  
books.

immense delight. He was now in his element; could handle, and scour, and work about among pistons, cylinders, wheels, levers, pumps, and other mechanical contrivances, and regarded the entire engine under his charge with feelings of keen admiration and affection.

10. George was so fond of his engine that he was never tired looking at it as it worked the enormous pumps. Stooping like a giant, down went the great lever or pump-handle; a moment's pause, and then without an effort up is drawn the prodigious volume of water, which runs away like a small river. That dear engine, how he did love it! to him, with its continuity and regularity of motion, it was like a living creature.

11. As a mother fondles and dresses her child, so did George never tire of fondling, dressing, and undressing his engine. It was not enough that he saw the outside of the mechanism. It became a kind of hobby with him to take her—a steam-engine is *her*—to pieces, and, after cleaning and examining all the parts, to put her again into working order. Then, what joy, when the steam is let on, to see her begin to move—to come to life, as it were—and to commence her grand pumping operations.

12. When the engine was going in excellent trim, and nothing was wrong with the pumps, there was little to do, and there was often time to spare. By way of occupying these idle minutes and hours, George began to model miniature steam-engines in clay, in which he had already some experience. It was a mere amusement, but it helped to fix shapes and proportions in his memory.

13. While so engaged, he was told of engines of a form and character he had never seen. They were not within reach, but were described in books. If he read these, he would learn all about them.

But George, though now eighteen years of age, was still ignorant of the alphabet. He clearly saw that unless he learned to read he must certainly stick where he was. 14. So, having made up his mind that he would go to school, cost what it might, he found out a teacher who agreed to give him lessons in the evening, for which Stephenson was to pay him threepence a-week, and by the time he was nineteen he was able to write his name. As there was not much time for arithmetical study during his short school-hours, George got sums set on his slate, which next day he worked out while attending to his engine. And this was all the school education he ever got.

15. Willing to put his hand to whatever might bring in a little money, Stephenson managed to save his first guinea by mending shoes and cleaning watches; and, by the time he was twenty-one, he had saved enough money to furnish a small cottage, and was able to marry his sweetheart, Fanny Henderson. In December 1803 his only son Robert was born, who became the first railway engineer in the country. The young wife died the next year. 16. In 1810 an opportunity occurred for George Stephenson to signalise himself. A badly-constructed steam-engine at Killingworth High Pit could not do its work; one engineer after another tried to set it to rights, but all failed; and at last in despair they were glad to let 'Geordie' try his hand, though, even with his reputation for cleverness, they did not expect him to succeed. To their mortification and astonishment, he was perfectly successful. He took the engine to pieces, rearranged it skilfully, and set it to work in the most effectual manner. Besides receiving a present of £10 for this useful service, he was placed on the footing of a regular engineer, and was afterwards

con  
wel  
17  
pov  
(the  
bro  
I  
stru  
app  
Rail  
his  
a ra  
he p  
to g  
suffi  
and  
said  
be fi  
Live  
thou  
the d  
moti  
runn  
and  
but a  
attain  
19.  
had  
abund  
of rail  
under  
labour  
spring  
ing, c

consulted in cases when the pumps were not working well.

17. Slowly, inch by inch, he fought his way against poverty and every other discouragement, until, in 1815 (the Waterloo year), the invention of a safety-lamp brought his name before the public.

It was at Killingworth Colliery that Stephenson constructed his first locomotive, and in 1821 he was appointed engineer to the Stockton and Darlington Railway; the line, on its completion, being worked by his great invention. He was next employed to make a railway between Liverpool and Manchester. 18. That he proposed to work the line with an engine which was to go at the rate of twelve miles an hour was a fact sufficient in itself, people thought, to shew how wild and absurd the scheme was. 'Twelve miles an hour!' said the *Quarterly Review*—'as well trust one's-self to be fired off on a Congreve rocket!' His salary from the Liverpool and Manchester Railway Company was a thousand a-year; and, when their line was completed, the directors offered a prize of £500 for the best locomotive that could be brought forward to compete in running on a certain day. Stephenson won the prize, and his engine was not only remarkable for its speed, but also for the contrivances by which the speed was attained. This was in the year 1829.

19. And now the tide of fortune, for which Stephenson had worked so hard and waited so long, flowed in abundantly. In 1836, two hundred and fourteen miles of railway, involving a capital of five millions, were put under his direction; but, in the midst of his immense labours, his heart remained as youthful as ever. In spring he would snatch a day for bird-nesting or gardening, or in autumn to go nutting; and w. and him even

at this time writing a touching account to his son of a pair of robins. 20. In the autumn of 1845 he visited Spain and Belgium to plan new railways, and on his way home he caught a severe cold, from which he never thoroughly recovered. He died at his country-seat of Tipton in 1848, a noble instance of honest purpose and steady determination. 'I have fought for the locomotive single-handed for nearly twenty years,' he says. 'I put up with every rebuff, determined not to be put down;' and the amount of wealth and prosperity that this one honest, persevering man has brought to the country is beyond all calculation.

## SUMMARY.

1. James Watt and George Stephenson are the two great improvers of the steam-engine. 2. George Stephenson was born near Newcastle in 1781. 3. His first employment was herding cows at twopence a-day. 4. He was always very fond of examining mechanical contrivances, and of making models of them. 5. At the age of thirteen he rose to be assistant-fireman to his father, with the wages of one shilling a-day. 6. He gets work at the colliery at Throckley Bridge, at twelve shillings a-week, and is a 'made man.' 7. He is always perfectly steady and rigorously sober. 8. He is promoted to be engineman at Newburn. 9. He is as fond of his engine as a mother of her baby. 10. In his spare time he models miniature steam-engines in clay. 11. He learns to read and to work sums in arithmetic at the age of eighteen. 12. He makes his first guinea by mending shoes and cleaning watches. 13. He marries at the age of twenty-one. 14. His son, Robert Stephenson, is born in 1803. 15. In 1810 he reconstructs an engine which all other engineers had failed to repair. 16. In 1815 he invents a safety-lamp. 17. In 1821 he constructs his first locomotive, and is appointed engineer to the Stockton and Darlington Railway. 18. In 1829 he wins a prize of £500 for the best locomotive. 19. He is manager of 214 miles of railway in 1836. 20. He dies in 1848 a rich man, and through all his life a brave, honest, ingenious, and open-eyed worker.

COMPOSITION.—Write a short sketch of Stephenson's life from

the follow-  
ments.  
6. Mod  
8. Marr  
mended  
Railway  
in 1836.

EXERCISES  
into ever  
towards  
Rigorous  
a capital

2. Lea  
In Steph  
twelve m

3. Ana  
4. Giv  
nouns co  
trivance;

5. Mak  
shall be u

Acquitted  
himself.  
Address, c  
Reclining,  
Dessert, c  
brought

The foll  
tion of stor  
people in th  
such as an  
Mohamme  
the phrase,  
of Barmec  
Mohamme



the following heads: 1. His home and family. 2. Early employments. 3. Gradual rise. 4. Love for machinery. 5. Steadiness. 6. Models of engines. 7. Learning to read, write, and cipher. 8. Marriage, and birth of his son. 9. The Killingworth engine mended. 10. First locomotive. 11. Stockton and Darlington Railway. 12. Liverpool and Manchester line. 13. His position in 1836. 14. His death.

**EXERCISES.**—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) He pried into every mechanical contrivance. (2) His tastes did not lean towards agriculture. (3) It was the height of his ambition. (4) Rigorously sober. (5) He was now in his element. (6) Involving a capital of five millions.

2. Learn to parse all the words in the following sentence: In Stephenson's time, a locomotive travelled at the rate of only twelve miles an hour.

3. Analyse the above.

4. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Perfection; education; pursuit; mechanics; contrivance; occupation.*

5. Make six sentences, in each of which one of these words shall be used.

---

## THE IMAGINARY BANQUET.

---

|                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Acquitted himself,</b> conducted himself.</p> <p><b>Address,</b> cleverness.</p> <p><b>Reclining,</b> resting.</p> <p><b>Dessert,</b> dishes of fruit, &amp;c., brought in after dinner.</p> | <p><b>Absolute,</b> complete.</p> <p><b>Appreciation,</b> power of setting the true value on.</p> <p><b>A profound reverence,</b> a deep bow.</p> <p><b>Outrage,</b> act of violence.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

The following story is taken from the 'Arabian Nights'—a collection of stories which illustrate the habits, manners, and customs of the people in the East, and which are full of the most incredible marvels, such as are still grayely told in Asia Minor, Turkey, and other Mohanmedan countries. This is the story which has given origin to the phrase, a *Barmecide Feast*. The *Barmecides* were descendants of Barmec, a very able adviser of the ruler or Caliph of all the Mohammedans, and tutor, and afterwards vizier (or prime minister)

to the great Haroun-al-Raschid. His descendants were wealthy, and renowned for their wit and wisdom; and it is of one of them that the following story is told.

1. My sixth brother was called Shacabac, the hare-lipped, who, by reverse of fortune, was reduced to the necessity of begging his bread. In this occupation he acquitted himself with great address, his chief aim being to procure admission, by bribing the officers and domestics, into the houses of the great, and, by having access to their persons, to excite their compassion.

2. By this means he one day gained admission to a magnificent building, in which, luxuriously reclining on a sofa, in a room richly furnished, he found the master, a Barmecide, who, in the most obliging manner, thus addressed him:

‘Welcome to my house. What dost thou wish, my friend?’

*Shacabac.* ‘I am in great want. I suffer from hunger, and have nothing to eat.’

3. The Barmecide was much astonished at this answer. ‘What!’ he cried. ‘What! Nothing to eat! Am I in the city, and thou in it hungry? It is a thing I cannot endure. Thou shalt be happy as heart can wish. Thou must stay and partake of my salt. Whatever I have is thine.’

*Shac.* ‘O my master! I have not patience to wait, for I am in a state of extreme hunger. I have eaten nothing this day.’

*Barmecide.* ‘What, is it true that even at this late hour thou hast not broken thy fast? Alas! poor man, he will die with hunger. Hallo there, boy, bring us instantly a basin of water, that we may wash our hands.’

4. Although no boy appeared, and my brother observed neither basin nor water, the Barmecide never-

thele  
water  
my b  
that  
a jes  
his h  
held

*Ba*

care r  
lay t  
the ta  
for th  
from t

5. S

broug  
on his  
chew  
man, t  
thinke

*Shac*

jest w  
in my  
than t  
cure it

*Barm*

whom  
(*Calling*  
which i  
my gu  
in abso

*Shac.*

‘Verily  
Solomo

*Barm*

theless began to rub his hands, as if some one held the water for him, and while he was doing this he urged my brother to do the same. Shacabac by this supposed that the Barmecide was fond of fun; and, as he liked a jest himself, he approached and pretended to wash his hands, and afterwards to wipe them with a napkin held by the attendant.

*Barm.* 'Now bring us something to eat, and take care not to keep us waiting. Set the table here. Now lay the dishes on it. Come, my friend, sit down at the table here. Eat, my friend, and be not ashamed; for thou art hungry, and I know how thou art suffering from the violence of thy hunger.'

5. Saying these words, although nothing had been brought to eat, he began as if he had taken something on his plate, and pretended to put it in his mouth and chew it; adding, 'Eat, I beg of thee; for a hungry man, thou seemest to have but a poor appetite. What thinkest thou of this bread?'

*Shac. (Aside.)* 'Verily this is a man that loveth to jest with others. (*To Barmecide.*) O my master, never in my life have I seen bread more beautifully white than this, or of sweeter taste. Where didst thou procure it?'

*Barm.* 'This was made by a female slave of mine, whom I purchased for five hundred pieces of gold. (*Calling aloud.*) Boy! bring to us the dish the like of which is not found among the viands of kings. Eat, O my guest! for thou art hungry—vehemently so, and in absolute want of food.'

*Shac. (Twisting his mouth about as if eating heartily.)* 'Verily this is a dish worthy the table of the great Solomon.'

*Barm.* 'Eat on, my friend. Boy! place before us

the lamb fattened with almonds. Now, this is a dish never found but at my table, and I wish thee to eat thy fill of it.'

6. As he said this, the Barmecide pretended to take a piece in his hand and put it to my brother's mouth. Shacabac held his head forward, opened his mouth, pretended to take the piece, and to chew and swallow it with the greatest delight.

*Shac.* 'O my master, verily this dish hath not its equal in sweetness of flavour.'

*Barm.* 'Do justice to it, I pray, and eat more of it. The goose, too, is very fat. Try only a leg and a wing. Hallo, boy, bring us a fresh supply.'

*Shac.* 'Oh, no, by no means; for in truth, my lord, I cannot eat any more.'

*Barm.* 'Let the dessert, then, be served, and the fruit brought. Taste these dates; they are just gathered, and very good. Here, too, are some fine walnuts, and here some delicious raisins. Eat, and be not ashamed.'

7. My brother's jaws were by this time weary of chewing nothing. 'I assure thee,' said he, 'I am so full that I cannot eat another morsel of this cheer.'

*Barm.* 'Well, then, we will now have the wine. Boy, bring us the wine! Here, my friend, take this cup; it will delight thee. Come, drink my health, and tell me if thou thinkest the wine good.'

But the wine, like the dinner and dessert, did not appear. However, he pretended to pour some out, and drank the first glass, after which he poured out another for his guest.

8. My brother took the imaginary glass, and, first holding it up to the light to see if it was of a good bright colour; he put it to his nose to examine the perfume; then, making a profound reverence to the

Barm  
appr  
T  
after  
that  
tipsy

WWW

W



gave t  
him d

9. B

of the

Shac

provisi

become

thee.

with m

Barmecide, he drank it off with marks of profound appreciation.

The Barmecide continued to pour out one bumper after another so frequently, that Shacabac, pretending that the wine had got into his head, feigned to be tipsy. This being the case, he raised his fist, and



gave the Barmecide such a violent blow that he knocked him down.

*Barm.* (*Very angry.*) 'What means this, thou vilest of the creation? Art thou mad?'

*Shac.* 'O my master! thou hast fed me with thy provisions, and treated me with old wine; and I have become intoxicated, and committed an outrage upon thee. But thou art of too exalted dignity to be angry with me for my ignorance!'

10. He had hardly finished this speech before the Barmecide burst into laughter. 'Come,' said he, 'I have long been looking for a man of thy character. Come, we shall now be friends. Thou hast kept up the jest in pretending to eat; now thou shalt make my house thy home, and eat in earnest.'

Having said this, he clapped his hands. Several slaves instantly appeared, whom he ordered to set out the table and serve the dinner. His commands were quickly obeyed, and my brother now enjoyed the reality of what he had before partaken only in idea.

EXERCISE.—1. Write a short composition on 'A Barmecide Feast,' from the following heads: (1) A hungry man obtains admission into the house of a Barmecide. (2) He pretends to invite him to dinner. (3) Courses: Mutton, fowl, goose, dessert. (4) Wine. And the poor man pretends to get tipsy, and strikes the Barmecide a violent blow. (5) Explanation. (6) Barmecide now orders a real dinner.

2. Explain the following phrases: (1) He acquitted himself with great address. (2) The Barmecide was reclining on a sofa. (3) This dish hath not its equal in sweetness of flavour. (4) He made a profound reverence. (5) I committed an outrage upon thee. (6) My brother now enjoyed the reality of what he had before partaken only in idea.

3. Learn to parse all the words in the following sentence: The Barmecide began to rub his hands with great delight.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from section 4 all the words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the way they are used. (Such are *water, hold, &c.*)

6. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Occupation; admission; access; magnificence; obligation; patience; pretence; continuance; obedience; reality.*

7. Make sentences, in each of which one of the first six words shall be used.

8. Learn the spelling of the following words, and notice where *au* is used, and where *aw*:

|         |          |         |         |
|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| Author  | Hawthorn | Sausage | Mawkish |
| Gaudy   | Tawdry   | Saucer  | Sawyer  |
| Pauper  | Lawyer   | Faulty  | Tawny   |
| Auction | Awkward  | August  | Awful   |

NOTES.—*Tawdry* is a contraction from *St Audrey* (short for *Ethelreda*). At *St Audrey*, in the isle of *Ely*, a showy kind of lace, called 'Sin *Tawdry's* lace,' was sold.—*Pauper* is a pure Latin word for *poor*.—*Auction* comes from the Latin *augeo*, *augium*, I increase; which also gives *Aug-ur* and *autumn-us*, the season of increase.—*Sausage* comes from *salsus*, salted; hence, too, *sauce*.

9. Write down all the words you can remember relating to *dinner*.

### THE DAY OF REST.

Fresh glides the brook and blows the gale,  
 Yet yonder halts the quiet mill;  
 The whirring wheel, the rushing sail,  
 How motionless and still!

Six days stern Labour shuts the poor  
 From Nature's care-free banquet hall;  
 The seventh, an Angel, opes the door,  
 And, smiling, welcomes all!

Lord Lytton.



before the  
 said he, 'I  
 y character.  
 ast kept up  
 shalt make

s. Several  
 l to set out  
 mands were  
 d the reality

A Barmecide  
 man obtains  
 e pretends to  
 goose, dessert.  
 y, and strikes  
 (6) Barmecide

mitted himself  
 ning on a sofa.  
 vour. (4) He  
 outrage upon  
 what he had

ing sentence:  
 delight.

may be both  
 ed. (Such are

the following  
*magnificence*;  
*ence*; *reality*.

first six words



### UP WITH THE DAWN!

**Team**, two or more horses working together.

**Traverse**, to cross.

**Commerce**, dealings with other nations.

**Jocund**, merry, cheerful.

**Prime**, highest point of excellence.

**Leprosy**, a loathsome disease.

**Tyrant**, oppressor.

**Grapple**, to struggle, fight.

1. Up with the dawn, ye sons of toil!  
 And bare the brawny arm,  
 To drive the harnessed team afield,  
 And till the fruitful farm;

VE  
with.

VE  
as str  
on to  
with, a

\* It  
of the  
the hou



To dig the mine for hidden wealth ;  
 Or make the woods to ring  
 With swinging axe, and steady stroke,  
 To fell the forest king.

2. With ocean car and iron steed  
 To traverse land and sea,  
 And spread our commerce round the globe,  
 As wind that wanders free.  
 Subdue the earth and conquer fate,  
 Outspeed the flight of time :  
 Old earth is rich, and man is young,  
 Nor near his jocund prime.

3. Work ! and the clouds of care will fly ;  
 Pale want will pass away.  
 Work ! and the prosoy of crime  
 And tyrants must decay.  
 Leave the dead ages in their urns :\*  
 The present time be ours,  
 To grapple bravely with our lot,  
 And strew our path with flowers.

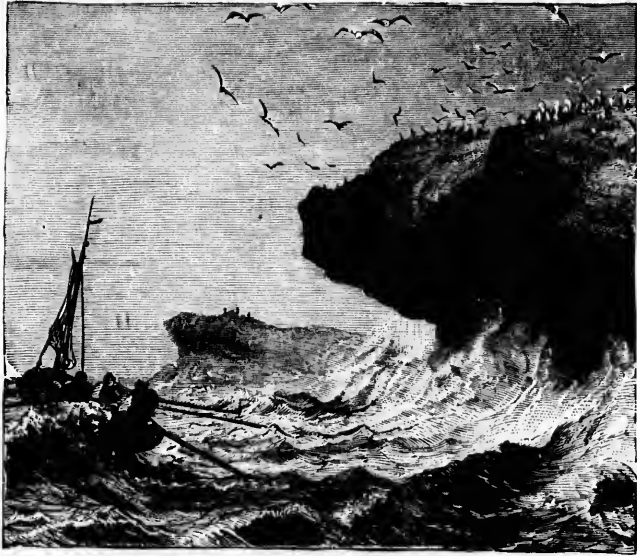
*Thomas Elliot.*

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1.—Line 1 : Take care not to place the accent upon *with*. Line 6 : Make the words *to ring* run into the next line.

VERSE 3.—Line 1 : No accent on *and*. Line 2 : *Pale* must be as strongly accented as *want*. Line 5 : No accent on *the*. Hurry on to the emphatic word *dead*. Line 7 : Avoid the accent on *with*, and make *with our lot* one word.

\* It was the custom among the ancient ROMANS to burn the bodies of the dead, and place the ashes in a vase or urn, which was kept in the house of the dead man's relatives.



Wearing away of Land by Water.

### WATER DESTROYING AND FIRE BUILDING UP.

**Current**, a body of water moving always in the same direction.

**Precipice**, a very steep place; from the Latin, *præceps*, headlong.

**Geology**, the science which tells of the structure of the earth; from the Greek *ge*, the earth, and *logos*, a discourse.

**Cube**, a solid square.

**Demonstration**, proof.

**Antagonism**, opposition.

**Estimate**, calculate.

**Neptune**, the Roman god of the sea.

**Volcano**, a fire-mountain; from Vulcan, the god of fire.

**Insignificance**, unimportance.

**Conception**, notion, idea.

**Cone**, a round, solid, pointed figure like a sugar-loaf.

**Soundings**, finding out the depth of water by dropping a line till it reaches the bottom.

**Perpendicular**, exactly upright.

**Convulsion**, a violent and sudden movement.

1. We see everywhere, and along every coast-line, the

sea  
com  
it to  
that  
bed,  
Loo  
acro  
coas  
sea-l  
stan  
still  
down  
anot  
roun  
carri  
ones  
3.  
every  
by fo  
by ce  
in ge  
helpin  
mou  
of our  
Gange  
into t  
is cor  
Irrawa  
earth  
are 86  
year;  
become  
all the  
from I



sea warring against the land, and everywhere over-coming it; wearing and eating it down, and battering it to pieces; grinding those pieces to powder, carrying that powder away, and spreading it out over its own bed, by the continued effect of the tides and currents. Look at our chalk cliffs, which once, no doubt, extended across the Channel to the similar cliffs on the French coast. 2. What do we see? Precipices cut down to the sea-beach, constantly hammered by the waves, and constantly crumbling: the beach itself made of the flints still remaining after the softer chalk has been ground down and washed away; but gradually grinding one another under the same ceaseless discipline—first rounded into pebbles, then worn into sand, and then carried out farther and farther, to be replaced by fresh ones from the same source.

3. Well, the same thing is going on *everywhere, round every coast* of Europe, Asia, Africa, and America. Foot by foot, or inch by inch, month by month, or century by century, down everything *must go*. Time is as nothing in geology. And what the sea is doing the rivers are helping it to do. 4. Look at the sandbanks at the mouth of the Thames. What are they but the materials of our island carried out to sea by the stream? The Ganges carries away from the soil of India, and delivers into the sea, twice as much solid substance *weekly*, as is contained in the great pyramid of Egypt.<sup>1</sup> The Irrawaddi sweeps off from Burmah 62 cubic feet of earth in every second of time on an average, and there are 86,400 seconds in every day, and 365 days in every year; and so on for the other rivers. 5. What has become of all that great bed of chalk which once covered all the weald of Kent,<sup>2</sup> and formed a continuous mass from Ramsgate and Dover to Beechy Head, running

RE  
an god of the  
ountain; from  
of fire.  
importance.  
idea.  
solid, pointed  
r-loaf.  
out the depth  
opping a line  
e bottom.  
ctly upright.  
lent and sud-  
ast-line, the

inland to Madamscourt Hill and Sevenoaks? All clean gone, and swept out into the bosom of the Atlantic, and there forming other chalk-beds. c. Now, geology assures us, on the most conclusive and undeniable evidence, that ALL our present land, all our continents and islands, have been formed in this way out of the ruins of former ones. The old ones which existed at the beginning of things have all perished, and what we now stand upon has most assuredly been at one time or other, perhaps many times, the bottom of the sea.

7. Well, then, there is power enough at work, and it has been at work long enough, utterly to have cleared away and spread over the bed of the sea all our present existing continents and islands, had they been placed where they are at the creation of the world. From this it follows, as clear as demonstration can make it, that without *some* process of renovation or restoration to act in antagonism to this destructive work of old Neptune, there would not now be remaining a foot of dry land for living thing to stand upon.

8. Now, what *is* this process of restoration? Let the volcano and the earthquake tell their tale. Let the earthquake tell how, within the memory of man—under the eyesight of eye-witnesses, one of whom (Mrs Graham) has described the fact—the whole coast-line of Chili, for about 100 miles about Valparaiso, with the mighty chain of the Andes—mountains compared with which the Alps shrink into insignificance—was hoisted at one blow (in a single night, Nov. 19, 1822) from 2 to 7 feet above its former level, leaving the beach *below* the old low water-mark high and dry; leaving the shell-fish sticking on the rocks out of reach of water; leaving the seaweed rotting in the air, or rather drying up to dust

und  
falls  
heav  
caus  
we l  
scale



the gi  
raiso.  
such a  
of mo

under the burning sun of a coast where rain seldom falls. The ancients had a fable of Titan<sup>3</sup> hurled from heaven and buried under Etna, and by his struggles causing the earthquakes that desolated Sicily. But here we have an exhibition of Titanic forces on a far mightier scale. One of the Andes upheaved on this occasion was



An Active Volcano.

the gigantic mass of Aconcagua, which overlooks Valparaiso. To bring home to the mind the conception of such an effort, we must form a clear idea what sort of mountain this is. It is nearly 24,000 feet in height.

10. Chimborazo, the loftiest of the volcanic cones of the Andes, is lower by 2500 feet; and yet Etna, with Vesuvius at the top of it, and another Vesuvius piled on that, *would little more than surpass the midway height of the snow-covered portion of that cone*, which is one of the many chimneys by which the hidden fires of the Andes find vent. On the occasion I am speaking of, at least 10,000 square miles of country were estimated as having been upheaved; and the upheaval was not confined to the land, but extended far away to sea, which was proved by the soundings off Valparaiso and along the coast having been found considerably shallower than they were before the shock.

11. Again, in the year 1819, during an earthquake in India, in the district of Cutch, bordering on the Indus, a tract of country more than fifty miles long and sixteen broad was suddenly raised ten feet above its former level. The raised portion still stands up above the unraised, like a long perpendicular wall, which is known by the name of the 'Ullah Bund,' or 'God's Wall.' And again, in 1538, in that convulsion which threw up the Monte Nuovo (New Mountain), a cone of ashes 450 feet high,<sup>4</sup> in a single night, the whole coast of Pozzuoli, near Naples, was raised twenty feet above its former level, and remains so permanently upheaved to this day. And I could mention innumerable other instances of the same kind.

12. This, then, is the manner in which the earthquake does its work—and *it is always at work*. Somewhere or other in the world there is perhaps not a day, certainly not a month, without an earthquake. In those districts of South and Central America where the great chain of volcanic cones is situated—Chimborazo, Cotopaxi, and a long list with names unmentionable, or at least unpro-

nounce  
earthq  
rain.  
is a  
Perth,  
withi  
to do

1. TH  
years a  
pyrami  
as Linc  
2. W  
That p  
was in  
miles a  
3. TH  
suppose  
4. AB  
5. In

1. Th  
it down  
do this.  
of earth  
cano an  
coast of  
from 2 t  
line, th  
heaved.  
were up  
country  
the form  
was rais  
like the

Compe  
lesson fr

nounceable—the inhabitants no more think of counting earthquake shocks than we do of counting showers of rain. Indeed, in some places along that coast a shower is a greater rarity. Even in our own island, near Perth,<sup>5</sup> a year seldom passes without a shock; happily, within the records of history, never powerful enough to do any mischief.

*Sir John Herschel (abridged).*

NOTES.

1. The pyramids are huge buildings, made thousands of years ago for the tombs of the Egyptian kings; the largest pyramid was higher than St Paul's, and covered as much ground as Lincoln's Inn Fields.

2. Weald is another form of the words *wood* and *wold*. That part of Kent and Sussex which is now called the Weald was in early English times a forest, which stretched for 120 miles along the northern frontier of the South-Saxon kingdom.

3. The Titans were the ancient gods of Greece, who were supposed to have been destroyed by Jupiter or Zeus.

4. About fifty feet higher than St Paul's.

5. In the neighbourhood of Comrie, in Perthshire.

SUMMARY.

1. The sea is constantly wearing away the land, and carrying it down into the bed of the sea. 2. The rivers help the sea to do this. 3. The Irrawaddi sweeps off from Burmah 62 cubic feet of earth every second. 4. The restorative powers are the volcano and the earthquake. 5. A hundred miles of the whole coast of Chili was hoisted, in the night of November 19, 1822, from 2 to 7 feet above its old level. 6. Along with the coast line, the peak of Aconcagua, 24,000 feet high, was also upheaved. 7. On the same occasion, 10,000 square miles of land were upheaved. 8. In the year 1819, 800 square miles of country in Cutch were raised by an earthquake 10 feet above the former level. 9. In 1538, the coast of Italy, near Naples, was raised 20 feet above its old level. 10. The earthquake, like the sea and the rivers, is always at work.

COMPOSITION.—Write a short paper on the contents of this lesson from the following heads: 1. The land constantly worn

down. 2. The materials carried out to sea. 3. Our chalk cliffs. 4. Action of rivers. 5. The Thames. 6. The Ganges. 7. Means of restoring the land. 8. The Chili earthquake. 9. The earthquake of 1819. 10. Monte Nuovo. 11. Volcanic fire always at work.

EXERCISES.—1. Parse all the words in the following sentence : There is hardly an instance of an active volcano at any considerable distance from the sea-coast.

2. Analyse the above.

3. Select from section 12 words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the way they are used.

4. Give, in the same way as in Exercise 9, page 21—but write them in columns, with their meanings—the words which relate to, or are compounds of, *earth* and *sea*.

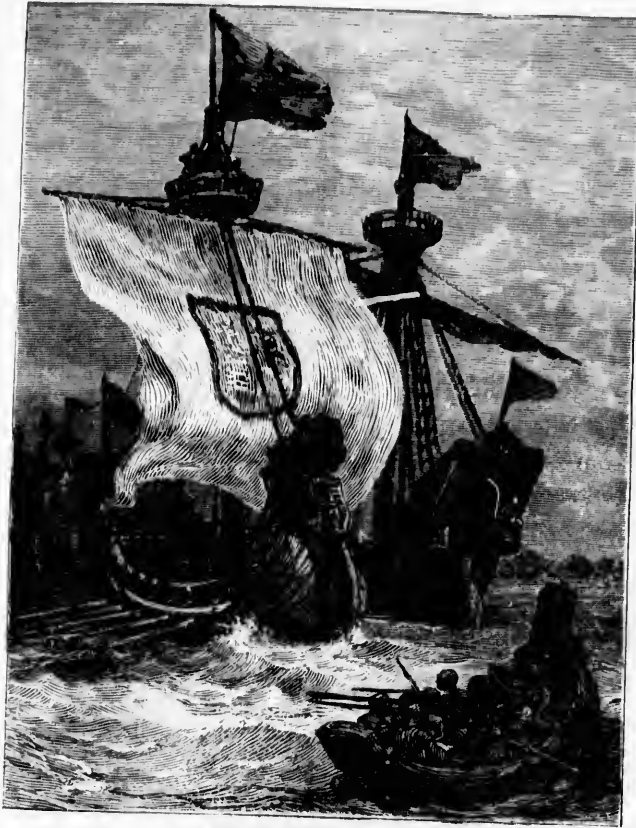
5. Distinguish the meaning of *soil*, *mass*, *chain*, *ashes*, *substance*, in the following pairs of sentences : (1) The *soil* of Egypt is fertilised by the overflowing Nile. Be careful not to *soil* the silk. (2) The Catholic soldiers go to *mass*. What a *mass* of useful facts the book contains. (3) The great *chain* of the Andes runs from north to south of South America. What a *chain* of evidences. (4) Here lie the *ashes* of the dead. Vesuvius threw out a great shower of *ashes*. (5) He was a man of *substance*. Write out the *substance* of the lecture.



Ketinue, se  
tendants.  
Exhausted,

Henry th  
He had to g  
England, he





THE WHITE SHIP.

Retinue, set of followers or attendants.

Exhausted, worn out.

Liege, lord (to whom I am bound; from a Latin word, *ligo*, I bind).

Intelligence, news.

Henry the First was the youngest son of William the Conqueror. He had to go to Normandy on business—as, though he was King of England, he was still Duke of Normandy, and was in fact much

more at home there, and much more of a Norman than an Englishman. Indeed, he could not be called an Englishman at all, either by birth or in language. He reigned 1100-1135.

1. King Henry I. went over to Normandy with his son Prince William and a great retinue, to have the Prince acknowledged as his successor by the Norman nobles, and to contract the promised marriage between him and the daughter of the Count of Anjou. Both these things were done with great show and rejoicing; and the whole company prepared to embark for home.

2. When all was ready, there came to the king Fitz-Stephen, a sea-captain, and said: 'My liege, my father served your father all his life upon the sea. He steered the ship with the golden boy upon the prow, in which your father sailed to conquer England. I beseech you to grant me the same office. I have a fair vessel in the harbour here, called the *White Ship*,<sup>1</sup> manned by fifty sailors of renown. I pray you, Sire, to let your servant have the honour of steering you to England.'

3. 'I am sorry, friend,' replied the king, 'that my vessel is already chosen, and that I cannot therefore sail with the son of the man who served my father. But the prince, with all his company, shall go along with you in the fair *White Ship*, manned by the fifty sailors of renown.'

4. An hour or two afterwards the king set sail in the vessel he had chosen, accompanied by other vessels, and, sailing all night with a fair and gentle wind, arrived upon the coast of England in the morning. While it was yet night, the people in some of the king's ships heard a faint wild cry come over the sea, and wondered what it was.

5. Prince William went aboard the *White Ship* with one hundred and forty youthful nobles like himself,

among  
rank.

the first

'G

prince

king

to make

6. 'G

fifty

vessel

night.

The

the same

prince

light

7. V

Barfle

the same

Fitz-S

The

wrapped

protect

The p

yet, fo

8. C

hearts.

of the

*Ship* ha

Fitz-

few no

the lan

rest of

9. B

ship, t

among whom were eighteen noble ladies of the highest rank. All this gay company, with their servants and the fifty sailors, made three hundred souls.

'Give three casks of wine, Fitz-Stephen,' said the prince, 'to the fifty sailors of renown. My father the king has sailed out of the harbour. What time is there to make merry here, and yet reach England with the rest?'

6. 'Prince,' said Fitz-Stephen, 'before morning my fifty and the *White Ship* shall overtake the swiftest vessel in attendance on your father, if we sail at midnight.'

Then the prince commanded to make merry; and the sailors drank out the three casks of wine; and the prince and all the noble company danced in the moonlight on the deck of the *White Ship*.

7. When, at last, she shot out of the harbour of Barfleur,<sup>2</sup> there was not a sober seaman on board. But the sails were all set, and the oars all going merrily, Fitz-Stephen himself at the helm.

The gay young nobles, and the beautiful ladies, wrapped up in mantles of various bright colours to protect them from the cold, talked, and laughed, and sang. The prince encouraged the fifty sailors to row harder yet, for the honour of the *White Ship*.

8. Crash! a terrific cry broke from three hundred hearts. It was the cry the people in the distant vessels of the king heard faintly on the water. The *White Ship* had struck upon a rock and was going down!

Fitz-Stephen hurried the prince into a boat with some few nobles. 'Push off,' he whispered, 'and row to the land. It is not far, and the sea is smooth. The rest of us must die.'

9. But, as they rowed away fast from the sinking ship, the prince heard the voice of his sister Marie

calling for help. He never in his life had been so good as he was then. He cried, in an agony, 'Row back at any risk! I cannot bear to leave her!'

They rowed back. As the prince held out his arms to catch his sister, such numbers leaped in that the boat was upset. And in the same instant the *White Ship* went down.

10. Only two men floated—a nobleman named Godfrey, and Berold, a poor butcher of Rouen. They both clung to the main yard of the ship, which had broken from the mast, and now supported them.

By-and-by another man came swimming towards them, whom they knew, when he pushed aside his long wet hair, to be Fitz-Stephen. When he heard that the prince and all his retinue had gone down, Fitz-Stephen, with a ghastly face, cried, 'Woe, woe to me!' and sank to the bottom.

11. The other two clung to the yard for some hours. At length the young noble said faintly, 'I am exhausted and chilled with the cold, and can hold on no longer. Farewell, good friend! God preserve you!' So he dropped and sank; and, of all the brilliant crowd, the poor butcher of Rouen alone was saved. In the morning some fishermen saw him floating in his sheepskin coat, and got him into their boat—the sole relater of the dismal tale.

12. For three days no one dared to carry the intelligence to the king. At length they sent into his presence a little boy, who, weeping bitterly, and kneeling at his feet, told him that the *White Ship* was lost with all on board.

The king fell to the ground like a dead man, and never afterwards was seen to smile.

*Charles Dickens.*

## NOTES.

1. **The White Ship.**—The French name was *La Blanche Nef* (from Latin *navis*, a ship).

2. **Barfleur**, a small seaport, 15 miles east of Cherbourg. It was from this port that William I. started for his invasion of England.

## SUMMARY.

1. King Henry I. went over to Normandy with his son William, to have him acknowledged as his successor by the Norman nobles. 2. A second purpose was to contract a marriage between William and the daughter of the Count of Anjou. 3. Fitz-Stephen, a sea-captain, offered to take the king back in his ship, called the *White Ship*, manned by fifty sailors. 4. The king's ship had been already engaged, so he sent the prince with Fitz-Stephen. 5. Prince William went on board with eighteen ladies and one hundred and twenty young noblemen. 6. With their servants and the sailors, there were three hundred souls on board. 7. Before sailing, the sailors had three casks of wine. 8. Trusting in the swiftness of his vessel, the captain did not sail till midnight. 9. When the ship shot out of the harbour of Barfleur, there was not a sober seaman on board. 10. Fitz-Stephen himself was at the helm. 11. The fifty sailors were rowing their hardest, all sails were set, when she struck upon a rock. 12. Fitz-Stephen hurried the prince, with a few nobles, into a boat. 13. They were rowing off, when the prince heard the voice of his sister Marie calling for help. 14. They rowed back, and such numbers leaped into the boat that it was upset. 15. All were drowned except three. 16. Fitz-Stephen came up, swimming to the other two men, who were holding on to a yard, and asked them about the prince. 17. When he heard that all were gone, he sank to the bottom. 18. Only one man, a butcher of Rouen, held on till the last, and was saved. 19. No one dared to tell the king for three days. 20. When at length the king was told, he fell to the ground like a dead man, and never afterwards was seen to smile.

COMPOSITION.—Write the story of the WHITE SHIP from the following outline: 1. Prince William returns from Normandy in the *White Ship*. 2. The sailors have drunk a great deal of wine. 3. The ship strikes on a rock. 4. The prince is sent ashore in a boat. 5. He hears a cry from his sister, and returns. 6. The boat is swamped, and all are drowned except one.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases : (1) The prince was acknowledged as his father's successor. (2) A marriage was contracted between him and the daughter of the Count of Anjou. (3) The boat was swamped. (4) Berold was the sole relater of the dismal tale. (5) No one dared to carry the intelligence to the king.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence : I have a fair vessel in the harbour here, manned by fifty sailors of renown.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Distinguish the meaning of *succeed*, *contracted*, *shoot*, *fair*, and *intelligence*, in the following pairs of sentences : (1) Henry succeeded William. His plan did not succeed. (2) A marriage was contracted between the two young people. His views on that subject are very contracted. (3) The gamekeeper will shoot the hawk. The leaves are beginning to shoot. (4) The bargain was not a fair one. I bought the horse at a fair. (5) He is a boy of wonderful intelligence. The intelligence of his death did not reach him.

### HE NEVER SMILED AGAIN.

This poem relates to the event recorded in the story of  
'The White Ship.'

**Festal**, belonging to a feast.  
**Minstrels**, musicians.  
**Blent**, mingled.

**Tourney**, a contest with spears or  
lances on horseback, between  
knights.

**Vows**, promises of love.

- The bark that held a prince went down,  
The sweeping waves rolled on ;  
And what was England's glorious crown  
To *him* that wept a son ?  
He lived—for life may long be borne  
Ere sorrow break its chain ;  
Why comes not death to those who mourn ?—  
He *never* smiled again !
- There stood proud forms around his throne,  
The stately and the brave ;

VERS  
on to th  
proud a  
verse-a  
VERSE  
No acc  
emphas  
place th  
Line 2 :  
weight  
Line 6 :  
Line 7 :

- But who could fill the place of one—  
 That one beneath the wave?  
 Before him passed the young and fair,  
 In pleasure's reckless train;  
 But seas dashed o'er his son's bright hair—  
 He *never* smiled again!
3. He sat where festal bowls went round,  
 He heard the minstrels sing;  
 He saw the tourney's victor crowned  
 Amidst the knightly ring:  
 A murmur of the restless deep  
 Was blent with every strain,  
 A voice of winds that *would* not sleep—  
 He *never* smiled again!
4. Hearts, in that time, closed o'er the trace  
 Of vows once fondly poured;  
 And strangers took the kinsman's place  
 At many a joyous board;  
 Graves, which true love had bathed with tears,  
 Were left to heaven's bright rain;  
 Fresh hopes were born for *other* years—  
 He *never* smiled again!

Mrs Hemans.

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1.—Line 1: Avoid the verse-accent on *held*, and hasten on to the emphatic word *prince*. VERSE 2.—Line 1: The words *proud* and *forms* must be equally accented. Line 3: Avoid the verse-accent upon *one*. Line 4: No emphasis on *beneath*. VERSE 3.—Line 4: Avoid the verse-accent on *amidst*. Line 5: No accent on *of*. Hasten on to *restless deep*, and place a slight emphasis on *every*. VERSE 4.—Line 1: No accent upon *in*; place the emphasis on *that*. Avoid the verse-accent on *o'er*. Line 2: *Once* is the emphatic word. Line 3: *Strangers* has the weight of emphasis. Line 5: *True love* are the emphatic words. Line 6: Avoid the verse-accent on *left*, and pass on to *heaven's*. Line 7: *Fresh hopes* are the two emphatic words.



THE BRAVE MAN.

**Tribute**, something to be paid.

**Aloof**, away.

**Wrack**, the blocks of ice and pieces of timber carried down by the flood.

**Stems**, holds out against.

**Surge**, the billowy water.

**Pistoles**, Spanish gold coins of the value of 17s.

**Mien**, manner and carriage.

**Proffered**, offered.

**Arrayed**, dressed.

1. Loud let the Brave Man's praises swell  
As organ blast, or clang of bell!

C  
E  
Then  
The t

T  
L  
T  
A  
It swe  
And it

2. T  
W  
T  
S  
And h  
They l

O  
A  
A  
U

There  
Oh, se

3. N  
L  
T  
A

'All-m  
We are

Hi  
Hi  
On  
Sc



Of lofty soul and spirit strong,  
 He asks not gold—he asks but song!  
 Then glory to God, by whose gift I raise  
 The tribute of song to the Brave Man's praise!

The thaw-wind came from the southern sea,  
 Dewy and dark o'er Italy;  
 The scattered clouds fled far aloof,  
 As flies the flock before the wolf;  
 It swept o'er the plain, and it strewed the wood,  
 And it burst the ice-bands on river and flood.

2. The snow-drifts melt, till the mountain calls,  
 With the voice of a thousand waterfalls;  
 The waters are over both field and dell—  
 Still doth the land-flood wax and swell;  
 And high roll its billows, as in their track  
 They hurry the ice-crag, a floating wrack.

On pillars stout, and arches wide,  
 A bridge of granite stems the tide;  
 And midway o'er the foaming flood,  
 Upon the bridge the toll-house stood;  
 There dwelleth the gate-man, with babes and wife;  
 Oh, seest thou the water? quick! flee for thy life!

3. Near and more near the wild waves urge;  
 Loud howls the wind, loud roars the surge;  
 The gate-man sprang on the roof in fright,  
 And he gazed on the waves in their gathering might:  
 'All-merciful God! to our sins be good!  
 We are lost! we are lost! The flood! the flood!'

High rolled the waves! In headlong track  
 Hither and thither dashed the wrack!  
 On either bank uprose the flood;  
 Scarce on their base the arches stood!



The gate-man, trembling for house and life,  
Out-cries the storm with his babes and wife.

4. High heaves the flood-wrack—block on block,  
The sturdy pillars feel the shock;  
On either arch the surges break,  
On either side the arches shake:  
They totter! they sink 'neath the whelming wave!  
All-merciful Heaven, have pity and save!

Upon the river's further strand  
A trembling crowd of gazers stand;  
In wild despair their hands they wring,  
Yet none may aid or succour bring;  
And the hapless gate-man, with babes and wife,  
Is screaming for help through the stormy strife.

5. *When* shall the Brave Man's praises swell  
As organ blast or clang of bell?—  
Ah! name him *now*, he tarries long;  
Name him at last, my glorious song!  
O! speed, for the terrible death draws near;  
O Brave Man! O Brave Man! arise, appear!

Quick gallops up, with headlong speed,  
A noble Count on noble steed!  
And, lo! on high his fingers hold  
A purse well stored with shining gold.  
'Two hundred pistoles for the man who shall save  
Yon perishing wretch from the yawning wave!'

6. Who is the Brave Man, say, my song:  
Shall to the Count thy meed belong?  
Though, Heaven be praised, right brave he be,  
I know a braver still than he;  
O Brave Man! O Brave Man! arise, appear!  
Oh, speed! for the terrible death draws near!

And ever higher swell the waves,  
 And louder still the storm-wind raves,  
 And lower sink their hearts in fear—  
 O Brave Man! Brave Man! haste, appear!  
 Buttress and pillar, they groan and strain,  
 And the rocking arches are rent in twain!

7. Again, again, before their eyes,  
 High holds the Count the glittering prize;  
 All see, but all the danger shun—  
 Of all the thousand stirs *not one*.  
 And the gate-man in vain, through the tumult wild,  
 Out-cries the tempest, with wife and child.

But who amid the crowd is seen,  
 In peasant garb, with simple mien,  
 Firm, leaning on a trusty stave,  
 In form and feature tall and grave?  
 He hears the Count, and the scream of fear;  
 He sees that the moment of death draws near!

8. Into a skiff he boldly sprang;  
 He braved the storm that round him rang;  
 He called aloud on God's great name—  
 And back he a deliverer came.  
 But the fisher's skiff seems all too small,  
 From the raging waters to save them all.

The river round him boiled and surged;  
 Thrice through the waves his skiff he urged,  
 And back, through wind and waters' roar,  
 He bore them safely to the shore:  
 So fierce rolled the river, that scarce the last  
 In the fisher's skiff through the danger passed.

9. Who is the Brave Man? Say, my song,  
 To whom shall that high name belong?

Bravely the peasant ventured in,  
 But 'twas, perchance, the prize to win.  
 If the generous Count had proffered no gold,  
 The peasant, methinks, had not been so bold.



Out spake the Count, 'Right boldly done!  
 Here, take thy purse; 'twas nobly won.'

A  
 A  
 But  
 By him  
 10. '  
 I  
 Y  
 G  
 He spa  
 And he  
 T  
 A  
 O  
 H  
 Then g  
 The tri

VERSE  
 on to br  
 the emp  
 in. Lin  
 the-bridg  
 as one w  
 Line 7 :  
 VERSE 5  
 phasis is  
 The emp  
 Hasten  
 High is  
 not see.  
 two very  
 emphatic

COMPO  
 following  
 of ice cor

A generous act, in truth, was this,  
 And truly the Count right noble is;  
 But loftier still was the soul displayed  
 By him in the peasant garb arrayed.

10. 'Poor though I be, thy hand withhold;  
 I barter not my life for gold!  
 You hapless man is ruined now;  
 Great Count, on *him* thy gift bestow.'  
 He spake from his heart in his honest pride,  
 And he turned on his heel and strode aside.

Then loudly let his praises swell  
 As organ blast, or clang of bell;  
 Of lofty soul and spirit strong,  
 He asks not gold— he asks but song!  
 Then glory to God, by whose gift I raise  
 The tribute of song to the Brave Man's praise!

*From the German of Bürger.*

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1.—Line 1: Avoid the verse-accent on *let*, and hasten on to *brave* and *swell*. VERSE 2.—Line 4: No accent on *doth*; the emphatic word is *still*. Line 5: Avoid the verse-accent on *in*. Line 10: Do not place any accent on *upon*, but read *Upon-the-bridge* as one word. VERSE 3.—Line 1: Read *and-more-near* as one word. Line 2: *Loud* is the emphatic word. VERSE 4.—Line 7: No accent on *upon*, but hasten on to *further strand*. VERSE 5.—Line 1: The word with the greatest weight of emphasis is *When*, and *shall* has none at all. VERSE 6.—Line 1: The emphatic word is *Who*. No emphasis at all on *is*. Line 2: Hasten on to the emphatic word *Count*. VERSE 7.—Line 2: *High* is more emphatic than *holds*. Line 3: *All* is emphatic; not *see*. Line 4: *Thousand* is the chief word; and then the two very emphatic words *not one*. VERSE 8.—Line 8: *Thrice* is emphatic, not *through*.

COMPOSITION.—Write the story of THE BRAVE MAN from the following heads: 1. A flood in the north of Italy. 2. The blocks of ice come down and strike a bridge. 3. A large part of it is



carried away. 4. The bridge-keeper and his family are in danger. 5. A gentleman offers a purse of gold to any one who will save. 6. A peasant jumps into a boat, and brings the family away in safety. 7. The gentleman offers him the purse; but he says—

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) A bridge of granite stems the tide. (2) He gazed on the waves in their gathering might. (3) A crowd of people stand upon the river's further strand. (4) Thrice through the wave his skiff he urged. (5) Loftier was the soul displayed by the peasant. (6) I barter not my life for gold.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence:

And back, through wind and waters' roar,  
He bore them safely to the shore.

*And* is a conjunction, connecting this sentence with another sentence going before. Be careful to distinguish between *water's* and *waters'*.

## INGRATITUDE.

Compassion, pity.

Expostulated, remonstrated or protested against an injustice.

Requite, pay back.

Refer, carry to a person, to have it decided.

With design to, with the intention of.

Recompensed, rewarded.

Finally, in the end, once for all.

Convince, compel a person to believe.

Fells, mountain plains or table-lands.

Ranged, extended or went as far as.

Harboured, gave refuge to.

1. A traveller passing through a thicket, says a Persian fable, and seeing a few sparks of a fire, which some passengers had kindled as they went that way before, turned his steps and walked up to it. On a sudden the sparks caught hold of a bush in the midst of which lay an adder, and set it in flames. The adder entreated the traveller's assistance, and he, tying a bag to the end of his staff, stretched it towards him and drew him out;

he then  
he hur  
compas  
him; a  
repay  
adder,  
custom  
can der  
3. The  
to it, i  
pensed  
replied  
here t  
scorchi  
branch  
Upon t  
appeal  
immedi  
was ma  
men it  
'by wo  
time w  
besides  
me into  
who wi  
upon th  
more tr  
should  
hearing  
persuad  
narrow  
again;  
his pow  
him to

he then bid him go where he pleased, but never more be hurtful to men, since he owed his life to a man's compassion. 2. The adder, however, prepared to bite him; and, when he expostulated how unjust it was to repay good with evil, 'I shall do no more,' said the adder, 'than what you men practise every day, whose custom it is to requite benefits with ingratitude. If you can deny this truth, let us refer it to the first we meet.' 3. The man consented, and, seeing a tree, put the question to it, in what manner a good turn was to be recompensed? 'If you mean according to the usage of men,' replied the tree, 'by its contrary. I have been standing here these hundred years to protect them from the scorching sun, and in requital they have cut down my branches, and are going to saw my body into planks.' Upon this the adder looked insultingly at the man, who appealed to a second evidence, which was granted, and immediately they met a cow. 4. The same demand was made, and much the same answer given, that among men it was certainly so. 'I know it,' said the cow, 'by woful experience; for I have served a man this long time with milk, butter, and cheese, and brought him besides a calf every year; but, now I am old, he turns me into this pasture, with design to sell me to a butcher, who will shortly make an end of me.' 5. The traveller upon this stood confounded, but desired of courtesy one more trial, to be finally judged by the next beast they should meet. This happened to be the fox, who, upon hearing the story in all its circumstances, could not be persuaded it was possible for the adder to get into so narrow a bag. The adder, to convince him, went in again; the fox told the man he had now his enemy in his power, and with that he fastened the bag and crushed him to death.

## THE WARMED SNAKE.

6. Once on a time, as Æsop tells,  
 A man, in winter's iron weather,  
 Found on the bare and wind-swept fells  
 A snake, its coils frost-bound together

He raised the creature from the ground,  
 And was about to fling it by,  
 When, lo! some spark of life he found  
 Still glowing in its evil eye.

7. The man, whose large compassion ranged  
 E'en to that reptile most unblest,  
 Sudden his idle purpose changed,  
 And placed the serpent in his breast.

Under his kindly bosom's glow  
 Slowly the stiffened coils outdrew;  
 The thickening blood resumed its flow,  
 The snaky instincts waked anew.

8. The man was glad to feel awake  
 The crawling life within his vest;  
 For to have harboured c'en a snake  
 Is pleasure in a gen'rous breast.

Sudden he stops, with shriek and start—  
 Then falls a corpse, all swollen and black!  
 The snake's fell tooth had stopped the heart  
 Whose warmth to life had brought it back.

## NOTE.

**Æsop** was a Greek slave who lived in the island of Samos (in the Ægean Sea) in the end of the sixth century B.C. He was fond of uttering wise thoughts in the form of fables; and a very large number is ascribed to him.

VER  
 accent  
 Line 6  
 on in.  
 3: No

COM  
 the fo  
 mount  
 serpen  
 his br  
 man t  
 bites h

EXE  
 owed h  
 the ad  
 us refe  
 down r  
 more tr  
 (8) The

2. Pa  
 iron we

3. An

4. Se  
 be used

5. Ma  
 shall be

6. Gi  
 followin

7. Gi  
 nouns c  
 fusion;

8. Gi

9. Wr  
 relate to



## DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 6.—Line 1: *On-a-time* to be read as one word; no accent upon *on*. Line 3: In the same way, no accent upon *on*. Line 6: Make *about-to-ting-it-by* one word. Line 8: No accent on *in*. VERSE 7.—Line 2: Avoid accent on *to*. VERSE 8.—Line 3: No accent on *to*. Line 7: Put an emphasis on *fell*.

COMPOSITION.—Tell the story of THE SNAKE REVIVED from the following outline: 1. A man, who was walking over a mountain country in the depth of winter, found a frozen serpent. 2. He saw it was not quite dead, and he placed it in his breast. 3. The snake slowly revived. 4. It pleased the man to think he had brought it back to life. 5. The snake bites him, and he falls dead.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) The adder owed his life to a man's compassion. (2) He expostulated with the adder. (3) It is unjust to retaliate good with evil. (4) Let us refer it to the first we meet. (5) In requital they have cut down my branches. (6) The traveller desired of courtesy one more trial. (7) His large compassion ranged even to reptiles. (8) The snaky instincts waked anew.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence: A man, in the iron weather of winter, found a frozen snake.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections those words which can be used both as nouns and as verbs, such as *pass*, *hold*, *flame*.

5. Make four pairs of sentences in which the first four words shall be used as nouns, and then as verbs.

6. Give all the derivatives and compounds you know of the following words: *Pass*; *see*; *way*; *hold*; *treat*; *own*; *man*.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Traveller*; *assistance*; *retaliation*; *requital*; *confusion*; *persuasion*.

8. Give the meanings of these words.

9. Write in columns, with their meanings, all the words which relate to *mountains* and *travellers* (see Exercise 9, page 21).



The Presentation of the Great Charter.

### MAGNA CHARTA (1215).

**Despotic**, having all power.

**Obsolete**, gone out of use.

**Venerable**, worthy of honour or reverence.

**Burgher**, an inhabitant of a burgh; a citizen or freeman.

**Patriotic**, loving one's country or fatherland.

**Forfeiture**, losing the right to property by any fault or crime.

**Denounce**, to accuse publicly.

**Compulsory**, forced.

**Enactment**, law, decree.

**Outlawed**, deprived of the protection of the law.

**Exiled**,  
count  
of.

**Peer**, a  
from

1. T

had be

of John

and led

a writt

*Magna*

law and

hundred

it, man

sary, it

differen

ally gov

importa

that the

been ha

to see h

abused.

the Brit

injured

from the

3. The

by the P

from, or

Without

to subdu

get the

win back

crown an

and recei

to be the

**Exiled**, sent out of one's native country; from Latin *ex*, out of.

**Peer**, an equal, an associate; from Latin *par*, equal.

**Arbitrary**, not according to settled law or custom; despotic.

**Villein**, a man attached to a *villa* or farm, a villager.

1. Tyrannical and despotic as all the Norman kings had been, it was the utter greed, cruelty, and selfishness of John that drove his barons into rebellion against him, and led them to demand from their worthless sovereign a written charter of rights and privileges; and this *Magna Charta*, or Great Charter, is still the basis of our law and English liberty. And although, during the six hundred years which have passed since John granted it, many of its details have become obsolete or unnecessary, its great principles of freedom still mark the difference which exists between a country constitutionally governed<sup>1</sup> and a despotism. 2. Another great and important step towards just and settled government was that the great charter was *written*; hitherto the law had been handed down by word of mouth, and it is easy to see how, in this way, it would be often set aside or abused. One copy of the charter may still be seen in the British Museum, brown and shrivelled by age and injured by fire, but with the seal of John still hanging from the venerable parchment.

3. The king was under a sentence of excommunication<sup>2</sup> by the Pope, and this sentence cut him off from help from, or intercourse with, the Christian princes of Europe. Without the help of foreign soldiers<sup>3</sup> he was unable to subdue his rebellious barons; in order, therefore, to get the sentence of excommunication removed, and to win back the favour of the Pope, he gave up both his crown and kingdom into the hands of the papal legate,<sup>4</sup> and received them back only on condition that he was to be the servant or vassal of the Pope. 4. The king



right to  
fault or

bliely.

.  
the pro-

was in a position now to get his foreign soldiers, but it was too late. All England was roused by the king's cowardice and treachery; baron and burgher were alike indignant at being sold to a foreign power. At Easter, 1215, the barons met at Stamford with two thousand knights and squires, and agreed to carry their charter of rights to John for signature. Their leaders were Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury, and William, Earl of Pembroke. 5. The king, deserted by nearly all his barons, promised to grant them their desires, and demanded a day and place for the meeting. 'The day, the 15th of June; the place, Runnymede,' the barons replied. And there, below the walls of Windsor, on a broad green meadow, still known by the name of Runnymede, John met his barons and signed the charter dear to the heart of every patriotic Englishman. 6. But, though he signed it, it was not of his own free will; he hated both it and the men who had forced him to sign it. When he left the meeting and returned to Windsor, he flung himself on the floor in a rage, gnawing sticks and straws in his fury, and cursing his rebellious barons.

But the charter was signed, and the 61st, the last important clause of it, was the king's promise faithfully to observe all that was contained in it, under pain of forfeiture of his power and lands. 7. Twenty-four barons were appointed to see that the charter was truly carried into effect; and if the king or his agents failed to obey its provisions in the smallest particular, it was the duty of these barons to denounce this abuse before the king, and demand that it should be instantly reformed. 'They have given me four-and-twenty over-kings,' cried John, in his fury.

8. Magna Charta may be divided into three parts:

one r  
to th  
impor  
life, l

Th  
chart  
shoul  
arbitr  
crown  
compt  
liable,

either  
have  
for he

grieva  
of the  
dom

borou  
was g  
mon  
but w  
cised  
check

10.  
backb  
'no fr

posse  
be out  
will w  
by lav  
land.

to any  
11. l  
and up

one related to the affairs of the clergy; another referred to the interests of the nobility; but the third and most important part of the charter is that which protects the life, liberty, and property of all freemen.

The interests of the clergy were already settled by a charter, and it was only necessary that this charter should be confirmed. The nobility were protected from arbitrary reliefs,<sup>5</sup> the abuses of the wardship of the crown were reformed,<sup>6</sup> and widows were secured from compulsory marriage, to which they had been before liable, to the profit of the crown. The king could either sell a widow's hand to a rich suitor, or she would have to pay a heavy fine for the privilege of choosing for herself. 9. These enactments redressed the worst grievances of the nobles, who held their lands as tenants of the king on condition of military service. The freedom of the city of London and of all towns and boroughs was secured. Permission to trade in England was granted to foreign merchants. The Court of Common Pleas<sup>7</sup> was no longer to follow the king's person, but was to sit in a fixed place, and the tyranny exercised in the neighbourhood of the royal forests was checked.

10. But it is the 39th article of the charter which is the backbone of our English law, and this declares that 'no freeman shall be seized or imprisoned, or be dispossessed of his freehold, or liberties, or free customs, or be outlawed, or exiled, or any otherwise destroyed; nor will we go against any man, or send against him, but by lawful judgment of his peers, or by the law of the land. We will sell to no man, we will not deny or delay to any man, justice or right.'

11. Further, the king promised to appoint only wise and upright judges; to forbid the conviction of any man

until witnesses had been heard in his favour; to restore to every man his position or property who might have been deprived without legal judgment, and to forbid all arbitrary grievances inflicted on townsmen, merchants, or villeins.

It is easy to see from these extracts that a man was sure of justice in any honest court of law, and that Magna Charta is the corner-stone of the great edifice of English liberty.

## NOTES.

1. That is governed according to a settled system of law and custom.
2. This sentence deprived him of all the privileges of the Church: he might join in none of the services of it, and the clergy would not administer the rites of marriage or of burial.
3. It was once the custom to hire foreign soldiers, who were ready to fight wherever they were paid for it.
4. The ambassador from the Pope (Latin, *legatus*).
5. Taxes raised at the will of the king. Certain reliefs the barons were under an agreement to pay the king; these were lawfully due, but no other.
6. An heir who was under age was in the wardship of the crown, and all profit from his estate went for the time into the king's exchequer; if the ward were an heiress, the king sold her hand to the highest bidder.
7. Then the highest court of appeal.

## SUMMARY.

1. The greed and cruelty of King John drove the barons to demand a written statement or charter of their rights. 2. This has been called the *Magna Charta*, or Great Charter; and it is still the basis of English law and liberty. 3. There is a copy in the British Museum. 4. King John, being under a sentence of excommunication, could receive no help from abroad. 5. To win back the favour of the Pope, he gave up his crown and kingdom into the hands of the Pope's legate. 6. He received them back only as vassal and servant of the Pope. 7. The king now tried to get his foreign soldiers, but it was too late. 8. At Easter 1215, the barons met at Stamford, and agreed to

ask Jo  
Langt  
Runny  
and tin  
again  
keep t  
13. Tw  
to see  
regulat  
nobilit  
of all  
boroug  
were a  
backbo  
shall n  
Uprigh  
were n

COMM  
mede,  
ing hea  
the bar  
4. The  
and in  
8. The  
61st. i  
passion.

EXER  
tence :  
Winds  
2. Ar  
3. Gi  
come: A  
signature  
4. W  
you kn  
secure ;  
5. Giv  
them in  
to or arc

ask John to sign their charter. 9. Their leaders were Stephen Langton and the Earl of Pembroke. 10. They appointed Runnymede, near Windsor, and the 15th of June, as the place and time of meeting. 11. John signed the charter, but sorely against his will. 12. By the 61st article, the king swore to keep the charter, on pain of forfeiting his power and lands. 13. Twenty-four barons were appointed as a standing committee, to see the charter truly carried into effect. 14. Magna Charta regulated and provided for the interests of the clergy and of the nobility, while it also took care of the life, liberty, and property of all freemen. 15. The city of London and all the English boroughs had their freedom secured. 16. Foreign merchants were allowed to trade in England. 17. The 39th article is the backbone of English law. 18. This article declares that justice shall not be sold, nor delayed, nor denied to any man. 19. Upright judges were to be appointed, and arbitrary grievances were not to be inflicted.

COMPOSITION.—Give an account of the meeting at Runnymede, and the principal clauses of the charter, from the following heads: 1. A June day. 2. The broad green meadow on the bank of the Thames. 3. Windsor Castle above on its hill. 4. The descent of John from the castle. 5. The barons armed and in deadly earnest. 6. The discussion. 7. The signing. 8. The promises to the nobles. 9. The 39th article. 10. The 61st. 11. The king's return to Windsor Castle, and his furious passion.

EXERCISES.—1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: After signing the charter, John rode at daybreak from Windsor towards the south.

2. Analyse the above.

3. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Rebellion; difference; despotism; government; cowardice; signature; provision.*

4. Write out all the compounds of the following words that you know: *Form; part; noble; settle; hold; serve; free; secure; trade; obey.*

5. Give in the same way as in Exercise 9, page 21—but write them in columns, with their meanings—the words which relate to or are compounds of *town* and *merchant*.

## THE BATTLE OF MORGARTEN.

**Wine-month, October.**

**Prime**, the highest condition of health and beauty.

**Their own** (voices), the echoes.

**Strait**, narrow pass.

**Defile**, narrow path between rocks.

**Blazoned streamers**, long flags embroidered with figures and names.

**Lauwine, avalanche.**

**Dell**, narrow valley.

**Unhelmed**, without his helmet.

**Mien**, appearance.

In the year 1315 the Swiss had risen in rebellion against the rule of Austria, who marched 20,000 men into their little country for the purpose of utterly crushing them. The Swiss could not meet the Austrians in the open field. They lay in ambush on both sides of the narrow mountain pass of Morgarten, which lies between a lake and high cliffs; and they also held both ends. When the Austrian army had fairly entered, they hurled rocks from the top of the high cliffs, lamed and killed the cavalry, and wounded many of the common soldiers. Then the Swiss who held the ends of the pass appeared and attacked the Austrians, and a terrible panic ensued. Most of the Austrians were driven into the lake; only a few escaped, among them the leader, Leopold, Archduke of Austria; and for the next seventy years no further attempt was made to subdue the resolute mountaineers of Switzerland.

1. The wine-month shone in its golden prime,  
 And the red grapes clustering hung,  
 But a *deeper* sound, through the Switzer's<sup>1</sup> clime,  
 Than the vintage-music rung—  
     A sound, through vaulted cave,  
     A sound, through echoing glen,  
 Like the hollow swell of a rushing wave;  
     'Twas the tread of steel-girt men.
  
2. And a trumpet pealing wild and far,  
     'Midst the ancient rocks was blown,  
 Till the Alps replied to that voice of war  
     With a thousand of their own.



And through the forest glooms  
 Flashed helmets to the day,  
 And the winds were tossing knightly plumes,  
 Like larch-boughs in their play.

3. But a band, the noblest band of all,  
 Through the rude Morgarten<sup>2</sup> strait,  
 With blazoned streamers and lances tall,  
 Moved onwards in princely state.  
 They came with heavy chains  
 For the race despised so long—  
 But, amidst his Alp domains,  
 The herdsman's arm is strong!
4. The sun was reddening the clouds of morn  
 When they entered the rock-defile,  
 And shrill as a joyous hunter's horn  
 Their bugles rang the while.  
 But on the misty height,  
 Where the mountain-people stood,  
 There was stillness as of night,  
 When storms at distance brood.
5. There was stillness, as of deep dead night,  
 And a pause—but not of fear,  
 While the Switzers gazed on the gathering might  
 Of the hostile shield and spear.  
 On wound those columns bright  
 Between the lake and wood,  
 But they looked not to the misty height  
 Where the mountain-people stood.
6. The pass was filled with their serried power,  
 All helmed and mail-arrayed;  
 And their steps had sounds like a thunder-shower  
 In the rustling forest shade.

There were prince and crested knight,  
 Hemmed in by cliff and flood,  
 When a shout arose from the misty height  
 Where the mountain-people stood.

7. And the mighty rocks came bounding down  
 Their startled foes among,  
 With a joyous whirl from the summit thrown—  
 Oh! the herdsman's arm is strong!  
 They came like lawine hurled  
 From Alp to Alp<sup>3</sup> in play,  
 When the echoes shout through the snowy world,  
 And the pines are borne away.
8. The fir-woods crashed on the mountain side,  
 And the Switzers rushed from high,  
 With a sudden charge, on the flower and pride  
 Of the Austrian chivalry:  
 Like hunters of the deer  
 They stormed the narrow dell;  
 And first in the shock, with Uri's<sup>4</sup> spear,  
 Was the arm of William Tell.
9. There was tumult in the crowded strait,  
 And a cry of wild dismay,  
 And many a warrior met his fate  
 From a peasant's hand that day!  
 And the empire's<sup>5</sup> banner then,  
 From its place of waving free,  
 Went down before the shepherd-men—  
 The men of the Forest-sea.<sup>6</sup>
10. With their pikes and massy clubs they brake  
 The cuirass and the shield;  
 And the war-horse dashed to the reddening lake  
 From the reapers of the field!

11. Oh

V

An

F

V

12. But

V

To t

A

W

1. Sw  
German2. Mo  
canton (3. Alp  
(The wor  
in the fo4. Uri  
Lake of I5. Em  
elected b  
Germany  
troops, w

The field—but not of sheaves :  
 Proud crests and pennons lay  
 Strewn o'er it thick as the beech-wood leaves  
 In the autumn tempest's way.

11. Oh! the sun in heaven fierce havoc viewed  
 When the Austrian turned to fly,  
 And the brave, in the trampling multitude,  
 Had a fearful death to die!  
 And the leader of the war  
 At eve unhelmed was seen,  
 With a hurrying step on the wilds afar,  
 And a pale and troubled mien.
12. But the sons of the land which the freeman tills  
 Went back from the battle-toil  
 To their cabin homes 'midst the deep green hills,  
 All burdened with royal spoil.  
 There were songs and festal fires  
 On the soaring Alps that night,  
 When children sprang to greet their sires  
 From the wild Morgarten fight.

## NOTES.

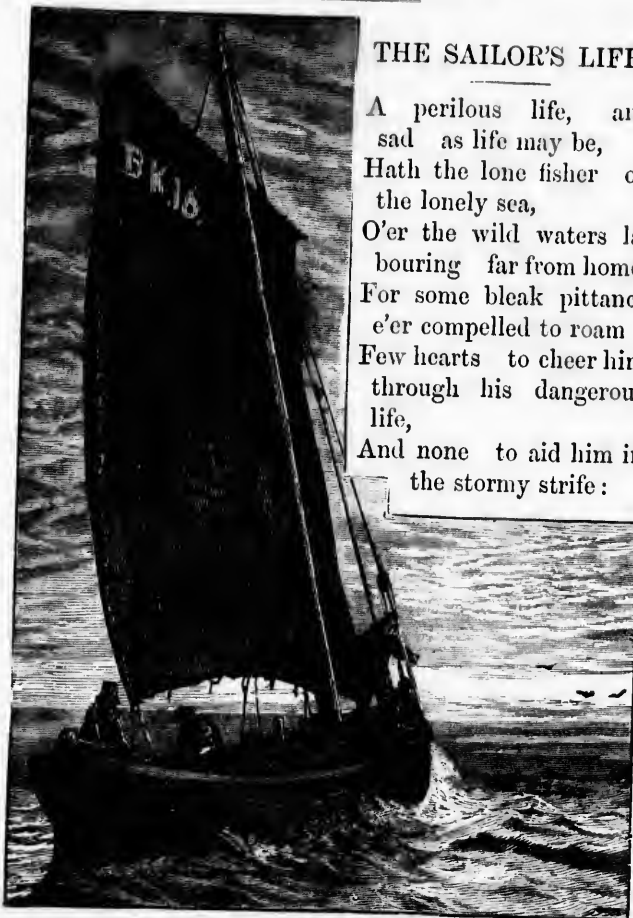
1. **Switzer**.—This is a German form of *Swiss*. The full German form is *Schweitzer*, and the French form is *Suisse*.

2. **Morgarten**, a mountain slope on Lake Egeri, in the canton (or state) of Zug.

3. **Alp**, the name of a hill or mountain among the Alps. (The word *Alp* is a Celtic word, meaning *white*; and it is found in the form *Alb* in *Albion*—the *country of the white cliffs*.)

4. **Uri**, one of the four forest cantons which lie round the Lake of Lucerne.

5. **Empire**, the Empire of Germany. The Emperor was elected by the kings, electors, grand-dukes, and other powers of Germany. Leopold, the Archduke of Austria, who led their troops, was brother to the then Emperor of Germany.



### THE SAILOR'S LIFE.

A perilous life, and  
 sad as life may be,  
 Hath the lone fisher on  
 the lonely sea,  
 O'er the wild waters la-  
 bouring far from home,  
 For some bleak pittance  
 e'er compelled to roam :  
 Few hearts to cheer him  
 through his dangerous  
 life,  
 And none to aid him in  
 the stormy strife :

Companion of the sea and silent air,  
 The lonely fisher thus must ever fare :  
 Without the comfort, hope—with scarce a friend,  
 He looks through life, and only sees its end !

*Barry Cornwall.*

Achiev  
 Penetr  
 Encour  
 Impet  
 ing t  
 Sallied  
 Trophy

1. I  
 an im  
 assem  
 that t  
 on th  
 incur  
 Dought  
 men.



THE BATTLE OF OTTERBURN.

**Achieved**, brought to pass.

**Penetrated**, made his way into.

**Encounters**, hostile meetings.

**Impetuosity**, eagerness amounting to rashness.

**Sallied out**, rushed out.

**Trophy**, prize taken in war.

**Ensued**, followed.

**Cognisance**, that by which one is known (such as the crest or arms on a shield).

**Deserted**, left by its holders.

**Enjoined**, commanded.

**Disastrous**, very unfortunate.

1. In 1388 the Scottish nobles had determined upon an invasion of England on a large scale, and had assembled a great army for that purpose. But, learning that the people of Northumberland were raising an army on the eastern frontier, they resolved to limit their incursion to what might be achieved by the Earl of Douglas with a chosen band of four or five thousand men.

With this force Douglas penetrated into the mountainous frontier of England, where an assault was least expected; and, issuing forth near Newcastle, he fell upon the flat and rich country around, slaying, plundering, and burning, and loading his army with spoil.

2. Percy, Earl of Northumberland, with whom Douglas had frequently had encounters, sent his two sons, Sir Henry and Sir Ralph Percy, to stop the progress of the invaders. Both were gallant knights; and the former, who, from his impetuosity, was called Hotspur, was one of the most distinguished warriors in England, as Douglas was in Scotland. The brothers threw themselves hastily into Newcastle, to defend that important town; and as Douglas, in an insulting manner, drew up his followers before the walls, they sallied out to skirmish with the Scots.

3. In the struggle that ensued, Douglas got possession of Hotspur's spear, which had attached to it a small ornament of silk embroidered with pearls, on which was represented a lion, the cognisance of the Percies. Douglas shook this trophy aloft, and declared that he would carry it into Scotland and plant it on his Castle of Dalkeith. 4. 'That,' said Percy, 'shalt thou never do. I will regain my lance before thou canst get back into Scotland.' 'Then,' said Douglas, 'come to seek it, and thou shalt find it before my tent.'

The Scottish army now began their retreat up the vale of the Reed, which afforded a tolerable road, leading north-westward to their own frontier. They encamped at Otterburn, about twenty miles from the Scottish border, on the 19th of August 1388.

In the middle of the night the alarm arose in the Scottish camp that the English host were coming up, and the moonlight shewed the approach of Sir Henry

Percy  
of D  
was  
army  
that  
a de  
expe  
char  
and p  
ing H  
6.  
throu  
his tr  
moon  
Scott  
ing, c  
Th  
Percy  
soldie  
coura  
were  
7.  
give v  
attenc  
war-cr  
with  
of the  
wound  
the ev  
the Sc  
man-a  
Me  
and f  
faithfu

Percy, with a body of men superior in number to that of Douglas. 5. He had already crossed the Reed, and was advancing towards the left flank of the Scottish army. Douglas, not choosing to receive the assault in that position, drew his men out of the camp; and, with a degree of military skill which could scarcely have been expected, when his forces were of such an undisciplined character, he altogether changed the position of the army, and presented his troops with their front to the advancing English.

6. Hotspur, in the meantime, marched his squadrons through the deserted camp. The interruptions which his troops met with threw them into disorder, when the moonlight breaking from the clouds shewed them the Scottish army, which they had supposed to be retreating, drawn up in complete order, and prepared to fight.

The battle commenced with the greatest fury; for Percy and Douglas were the two most distinguished soldiers of their time, and both armies trusted in the courage and talents of their commanders, whose names were shouted on either side.

7. The Scots, who were outnumbered, were about to give way, when Douglas caused his banner to advance, attended by his best men. He himself, shouting his war-cry of 'Douglas!' rushed forward, clearing his way with his battle-axe, and breaking into the very thickest of the enemy. He fell, at length, under three mortal wounds. 8. Had his death been observed by the enemy, the event would probably have decided the battle against the Scots; but the English only knew that some brave man-at-arms had fallen.

Meantime, the other Scottish nobles pressed forward, and found their general dying among several of his faithful attendants, who lay slain around him. A stout

priest, called William of North Berwick, the chaplain of Douglas, was protecting the body of his wounded patron with a long lance.

9. 'How fares it, cousin?' said Sinclair, the first knight who came up to the expiring leader.

'Indifferently,' answered Douglas; 'but, blessed be God, my ancestors have died in fields of battle, not on down beds. I sink fast; but let them still cry my war-cry, and conceal my death from my followers. There was a tradition in our family that a dead Douglas should win a field, and I trust it will this day be accomplished.'

10. The nobles did as he enjoined: they concealed the earl's body, and again rushed on to battle, shouting 'Douglas! Douglas!' louder than before. The English were weakened by the loss of the brave brothers, Henry and Ralph Percy, both of whom were made prisoners, fighting most gallantly; and hardly any man of note among the English escaped death or captivity.

11. The battle of Otterburn was disastrous to the leaders on both sides—Hotspur being made captive, and Douglas slain on the field. It has been the subject of many songs and poems; and the great historian Froissart says that, with one exception, it was the best-fought battle of that warlike time.

*Sir Walter Scott.*

NOTES.

**Otterburn.**—*Burn* is an Old English word (still in use in Scotland) for *brook*. As a brook is frequently a boundary between two counties or two estates, it came (with the spelling of *bourne*) to mean limit or boundary, and is so used by Shakespeare in the phrase, 'Gone to that bourne from whence no traveller returns.' The word is found in *Holborn* (which meant *Old Burn*), in *Tyburn* (a brook which joined the Kilburn and then flowed into the Serpentine) and *Kilburn*, now the names

of tw  
Reed

Fr  
the C  
was t  
was l  
Cour  
who  
the c  
Scotla

COM  
BURN  
Newc  
under  
the cr  
that t  
win a  
follow  
all the

EXE  
resolv  
the E  
was th  
probab  
nobles  
lish es

2. F  
march  
a neut  
tence,

3. A  
4. S  
be use  
&c.

5. G  
nouns  
defence

6. D  
fall and



of two suburbs of London. Otterburn is a tributary of the Reed, which falls into the Tyne.

**Froissart.**—He was a Norman-French historian and poet at the Court of Edward III. He lived from 1337 to 1410, and was thus a contemporary of the great English poet Chaucer, who was by birth also a Norman. In 1364 he paid a visit to the Court of Scotland, where he was well received by David II., who was himself Norman by descent. His 'Chronicles' give the chief battles and events of his time in France, England, and Scotland. They have been translated into English.

**COMPOSITION.**—Write a short paper on THE BATTLE OF OTTERBURN from the following heads: 1. Earl Douglas marched to Newcastle. 2. He was attacked at Otterburn by the English, under the two Percies. 3. The Scotch rushed into battle with the cry of 'Douglas!' 4. Douglas fell. 5 He tells his friends that there is a tradition in his family that a dead Douglas should win a field, and that they must conceal his death from his followers. 6. The Scotch win, and either kill or take captive all the Englishmen of note.

**EXERCISES.**—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) They resolved to limit their incursion to what might be achieved by the Earl of Douglas with four or five thousand men. (2) A lion was the cognisance of the Percies. (3) Douglas's death would probably have decided the battle against the Scotch. (4) The nobles did as he enjoined. (5) No man of note among the English escaped death or captivity.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Hotspur marched his squadrons through the deserted camp (*marched* is a neuter verb, used in an active sense, like *walked* in the sentence, 'I walked my horse up and down').

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections all the words that may be used both as nouns and as verbs—such as *purpose*, *people*, &c.

5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Invasion*; *resolution*; *achievement*; *impetuosity*; *defence*; *importance*; *possession*; *superiority*; *advancement*.

6. Distinguish between the following pairs: *Rise* and *raise*; *fall* and *fell*; *sit* and *set*; *drink* and *drench*; *lie* and *lay*.

## ALCOHOL.

- Distillation** (from Lat. *stilla*, a drop), a process which reduces a substance to a liquid form, turns it into vapour, and then condenses it back into liquid *drop by drop*.
- Putrefaction** (from Lat. *putris*, rotten, and *facere*, to make).
- Hydrogen** (from Gr. *hudor*, water), the gas which goes chiefly to the formation of water.
- Carbon** (from Lat. *carbo*, a coal), the substance which forms a very large part of coal.
- Oxygen** (from Gr. *oxus*, sharp), the gas which forms one-fifth of ordinary air.
- Paralysis** (from Gr. *paralysis*, a loosening).
- Promote** (from Lat. *pro*, forward, and *moveo*, I move), to urge forward.
- Beverage** (from O. Fr. *bavir*, to drink, Lat. *bibere*), something to drink.
- Capillary** (from Lat. *capillus*, a hair), hair-like in nature.
- Cavities** (from Lat. *cavus*, hollow), hollows.
- Auricle** (from Lat. *auris*, an ear), a part of the heart shaped like the ear.
- Ventricles** (from Lat. *venter*, the stomach), a part of the heart in shape like a stomach.
- Propel** (from Lat. *pro*, forward, and *pello*, I drive), to push forward.
- Ramify** (from Lat. *ramus*, a branch), to spread as a branch spreads.
- Stimulant** (from Lat. *stimulus*, a spur), that which is capable of exciting.
- Assimilate** (from Lat. *similis*, like), to make like itself, or take in and absorb.
- Abstinence** (from Lat. *ab*, away from, and *teneo*, I hold), keeping or holding quite away from a thing.

1. The word *alcohol*\* is an Arabic word, which means *something burnt*. It is now used to signify pure or *ardent*—that is, *burning*—spirit. It is obtained by distillation from beer, wine, and many other liquids. It is also obtained in the largest quantities from those solids

\* The prefix *al* is the Arabic for *the*; and we find it in *Alcoran* (= the Koran), *algebra* (= the art of signs), *alguazil* (= the watchman). The word probably came to us from the Moors, who held most of Spain from the beginning of the eighth to the end of the fifteenth century.

which  
such,  
lighte  
—that  
not be  
northe  
low as  
and it  
preven  
vegeta  
use it  
anima  
It is c  
burns a  
form o  
and ot  
spirit-l  
3. Cl  
hydrog  
alcohol  
and on  
from w  
it, and  
water d  
4. Al  
has bee  
human  
arms, l  
when t  
and giv  
when t  
ends by  
—of th  
to have

which contain the largest amount of sugar or of starch, such, for instance, as sugar-cane and grain. It is lighter in weight than water, boils much more easily—that is, by the application of less heat—and it cannot be frozen except by a cold of which, in even far northern countries, there is little experience. Cold as low as  $-166$  degrees of Fahrenheit has been applied, and it has not frozen. 2. It has also the property of preventing putrefaction—that is, of keeping animal and vegetable bodies from decaying; and hence scientific men use it to preserve specimens of animals, or of parts of animals, in bottles—such as we see them in museums. It is quite colourless; and, if a light is applied to it, it burns away with a very small amount of smoke. In the form of spirits of wine it is frequently used by chemists and others in experiments, and is burned by them in a spirit-lamp.

3. Chemists tell us that water consists of two atoms of hydrogen and one of oxygen. They also tell us that alcohol consists of six atoms of hydrogen, two of carbon, and one of oxygen. Thus we see that alcohol differs from water in having three times as much hydrogen in it, and in the possession of two atoms of carbon, which water does not possess at all.

4. Alcohol is a substance which, when too much of it has been received into the stomach, takes away from human beings the power of rightly using their hands, arms, legs, eyes, and organs of speech. At first, and when taken in moderate doses, it acts as a stimulant, and gives these parts of the body greater power; but, when taken continuously, or in large doses, it always ends by destroying a part—sometimes a large part—of the control which the mind has, or ought to have, over the limbs and powers of the body.

Thus we know that the effect of a large dose of alcohol on dogs is nearly always to produce paralysis, or loss of power, in the hind legs. 5. The amount of alcohol in different liquors varies very much, from the weakest of small beer up to the strongest rum. If we examine liquors by measure—or, as it is called, by *volume*—we shall find that, out of a hundred ‘volumes’ of rum, 77 are pure alcohol. Whisky and brandy come next in strength, and may contain from 50 to 60 per cent. Port and sherry contain from 16 to 25 per cent.; claret, from 10 to 17 per cent.; and ordinary ale from 3 to 5 per cent.

6. The steady pursuit of drinking alcohol—whether in its weaker or in its stronger forms—even if it never goes so far as to take away the power of using our limbs rightly and accurately, slowly but surely undermines the health, and makes the internal organs, such as the stomach, the brain, and the liver, less and less able to perform their proper work. The blood, when examined by a microscope, is seen to be formed of little cells called corpuscles. These corpuscles in the blood of a man who drinks much alcohol, are found to be very much changed in character and shape. 7. Even the brain itself, designed by our Creator to control our bodies and direct our course of action in relation to time and eternity, becomes altered in its structures by the use of alcohol. How unwise it is to pollute the “stream of life” and seriously injure the seat of intellect in order to get a little temporary stimulation. But, if a drink is required merely for the purpose of refreshing and of enabling the body to get through a larger amount of labor, one which may be highly recommended, is a mixture of oatmeal and water.

8. When alcohol or alcoholic drinks are taken into the stomach, they are at once absorbed or taken up by

thous  
capill  
every  
the a  
the li  
thenc  
organ  
every  
each  
caviti  
—rec  
into t  
this v  
9. Th  
blood  
which  
two s  
have  
called  
scope  
culate  
which  
right v  
through  
lungs.  
away t  
purifie  
to the  
arterie  
10. Ag  
the st  
liver, v  
placed  
lungs I

thousands of exceedingly small blood-vessels termed capillaries (from Latin for a hair), which run through every part of its walls. When these have absorbed the alcohol, they transmit it to the fine blood-vessels of the liver, and into the larger blood-vessels or veins, and thence into the heart. The heart is the strong muscular organ or force-pump which propels the blood through every part of the body. It is divided into two halves, each of which consists of two hollow chambers or cavities. One of these cavities—called the left *auricle*—receives the pure blood from the lungs, passes it on into the other cavity—called the left *ventricle*—and from this ventricle it is propelled or forced into the arteries. 9. Thus the arteries are the large pipes which carry the blood *from* the heart; while the veins are the pipes which carry it back *to* the heart; and, connecting these two sets of vessels, there are all over the body, as we have already said, a number of very small vessels—called capillaries, some so small that only the microscope can shew them—through which the blood circulates between the arteries and the veins. The blood which comes from the veins of the body is forced by the right ventricle of the heart into the lungs, where it passes through an intricate network of capillaries. In the lungs it comes in contact with the air, which takes away the carbon, gives it oxygen in exchange, and so purifies it. Then, in this purified state, it goes back to the left side of the heart, which pumps it into the arteries of the body, to perform its work of nourishing it. 10. Again, all the venous or impure blood which leaves the stomach and digestive organs passes through the liver, which may be compared to a kind of large sieve placed between the stomach and the heart. Just as the lungs have an infinite number of fine tubes or capillary

vessels, so the liver has an infinity of small branched veins, which ramify about every part of it, and in which the blood is cleansed, and has the bile secreted from it. Then, when the blood has passed through the minute vessels of the liver, it is passed back into the right side of the heart by one large trunk or main pipe, which collects it from the smaller vessels. 11. The whole of the blood flows round and round the body several hundred times daily, through skin and muscle and nerves and brain, in a journey of perpetual motion—a journey that is never ending, still beginning.

All, or nearly all, the alcohol which a person drinks, then, is sucked in or absorbed by the blood, carried on to the liver, to the heart, and to the lungs; then back to the heart again, which now distributes it all over the body. 12. Every beat of the heart—an organ which has been well compared to a force-pump—drives the blood, with the alcohol in it, through these networks of extremely fine capillaries. The effect of alcohol on the heart is to make it beat faster, and so to make it do more work in a given time. If liquors which contain four ounces of alcohol be taken in the course of a day, the action of the heart will be increased so much that in the course of the twenty-four hours it will have done more work than usual, to the extent, it has been calculated, of lifting fourteen tons to the height of one foot. 13. In a grown-up man the heart beats on an average about 73 times in each minute; that is, 4380 strokes an hour, and 105,120 strokes in the twenty-four hours. But, if alcohol is taken, whether in the form of beer or of wine, the number of heart-beats is increased, and the heart is compelled to do more work. Every four ounces of alcohol taken in the twenty-four hours increases the number of heart-beats by more than 12,000; and this

number  
is—is e  
of one f  
feet. 1  
in imm  
But not  
ruch a  
unfit fo  
more al  
because,  
which is  
that ha  
home, w  
15. TH  
though f  
waster o  
*depressan*  
so does a  
alcohol is  
quicken  
body is t  
and usel  
appetite i  
surably e  
healthy t  
unnatural  
not help  
it makes  
of the sto  
fresh blo  
through t  
lungs, wh  
which itse  
the liver,

number of beats, regarded as work done—which it really is—is equal to raising fourteen tons of stone to the height of one foot, or one ton of stone to the height of fourteen feet. 14. Thus it is that the man accustomed to drink in immoderate quantity feels weary and exhausted. But not only does the whole body feel weary after too much alcohol; the heart itself becomes enfeebled and unfit for work. Then, the usual custom is to give it more alcohol—to whip and spur it to do more work, because, according to its natural strength, it can do less, which is just as if one were to whip and spur a horse that had been hunting all day to make him gallop home, without giving him water or oats or rest.

15. The best physicians now tell us that alcohol, though for the moment a stimulant, is, in the long run, a waster of strength, a robber of power—in one word, a *depressant*. Work produces weariness and fatigue; and so does alcohol. But the weariness which comes from alcohol is not a healthy weariness. Exercise and labour quicken the motion of the blood; every part of the body is thrown into agreeable movement; the worn-out and useless matter of the body is thrown off; a good appetite is created; and the organs of the body are pleasantly excited to assimilate and put on new matter and healthy tissue. 16. But alcohol only excites; it produces unnatural activity; it leaves bad things behind it; it does not help the body to throw off matter that is hurtful; it makes the appetite weak; and it weakens the power of the stomach—that power of digestion, by which alone fresh blood is supplied. Very fine blood-vessels run through the brain, which rules our life; through the lungs, which help us to breathe; through the heart, which itself requires to be fed and nourished; through the liver, which cleans the blood; through the kidneys,

which distil all liquids; and through the stomach, which creates new blood. 17. If, then, these fine vessels become weakened, the sides of them sometimes give way, and they burst like frozen pipes during a thaw. Then the blood overflows into the brain or the lungs, or into whatever organ the fine vessel is at work in, and the life of the person is endangered. It is a well-ascertained fact that persons who are in the habit of drinking alcohol cannot resist the extremes of heat and cold so well as those who have accustomed themselves to beverages which are entirely free from alcoholic spirit. This is proved by the experience of sailors who have been on Arctic voyages, where the cold is often below zero; and is also proved by the daily experience of those who live in tropical countries—where strict temperance, or, better still, complete abstinence, is the best condition for maintaining life, health, and happiness.

18. From the above considerations we may learn that alcohol is injurious to the most important of our vital organs, the stomach and the brain; that it vitiates the blood on which every part of the body has to depend for support and growth; and that it frequently wrecks the health, the prosperity, the happiness, and the life of individuals and of whole families.

*A. S. Day.*





## THE HUMBLE-BEE.



**Porto Rique**, Porto Rico, an island in the West Indies.

**Epicurean**, a lover of ease and pleasure.

**Horizon**, the line that bounds the view where the earth and sky appear to meet.

**Subtle**, penetrating sharply (the *ò* not sounded).

**Mellow**, soft, quite without harshness.

**Bass**, the low notes in music.

**Crone**, for *crony*—a friend and companion.

**Unsavoury**, having an unpleasant taste.

**Columbine**, a dove-coloured plant; from *Lat. columba*, a dove.

**Maple-sap**, the juice of the maple, from which sugar may be made.

**Daffodels**, yellow flowers of the lily tribe; from the *Gr. asphodelos* (commonly spelt *daffodils*).

**Agrimony**, a wild plant with small yellow flowers, having a pleasant smell and bitter taste.

**Catechu**, a plant, the leaf of which folds up and encloses any unhappy fly which may alight on it.

**Adder's-tongue**, a fern very much like the mosses.

1. Burly, dozing humble-bee!  
Where *thou* art is clime for me;

Let them sail for Porto Rique,  
 Far-off heats through seas to seek—  
 I will follow thee alone,  
 Thou animated torrid zone !  
 Zigzag steerer, desert cheerer,  
 Let me chase thy waving lines :  
 Keep me nearer, me thy hearer,  
 Singing over shrubs and vines.

2. Insect lover of the sun,  
 Joy of thy dominion !  
 Sailor of the atmosphere ;  
 Swimmer through the waves of air ;  
 Voyager of light and noon ;  
 Epicurean of June ;  
 Wait, I prithee, till I come  
 Within earshot of thy hum—  
 All without is martyrdom.
3. When the south wind, in May days,  
 With a net of shining haze  
 Silvers the horizon wall,  
 And, with softness touching all,  
 Tints the human countenance  
 With a colour of romance,  
 And, infusing subtle heats,  
 Turns the sod to violets—  
 Thou, in sunny solitudes,  
 Rover of the underwoods,  
 The green silence dost displace  
 With thy mellow, breezy bass.
4. Hot Midsummer's petted crone,  
 Sweet to me thy drowsy tone ;

Tells of countless sunny hours,  
 Long days, and solid banks of flowers ;  
 Of gulfs of sweetness without bound  
 In Indian wildernesses found ;  
 Of Syrian peace, immortal leisure,  
 Firmest cheer, and bird-like pleasure.

5. Aught unsavoury or unclean  
 Hath my insect never seen ;  
 But violets and bilberry bells,  
 Maple-sap and daffodils,  
 Grass with green flag half-mast high,  
 Succory to match the sky,  
 Columbine with horn of honey,  
 Scented fern, and agrimony,  
 Clover, catchfly, adder's-tongue,  
 And brier-roses, dwelt among ;  
 All beside was unknown waste,  
 All was picture as *he* passed.
6. Wiser far than human seer,  
 Yellow-breeched philosopher !  
 Seeing only what is fair,  
 Sipping only what is sweet,  
*Thou* dost mock at fate and care,  
 Leave the chaff and take the wheat.  
 When the fierce north-western blast  
 Cools sea and land so far and fast,  
 Thou already slumberest deep ;  
 Woe and want *thou* canst outsleep ;\*  
 Want and woe, which torture us,  
*Thy* sleep makes ridiculous.

*Emerson.*

\* The bee lies partially torpid all through the winter.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Thou animated torrid zone. (2) Sailor of the atmosphere. (3) Turns the sod to violets. (4) The green silence dost displace. (5) Immortal leisure. (6) Leave the chaff and take the wheat.

## THE BATTLES OF CRESSY AND POITIERS. 1346 AND 1356.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Relinquish</b>, to give up.<br/> <b>Scruple</b>, hesitation in deciding or acting; it means literally a small, sharp, rough stone.<br/> <b>Involve</b>, to include.<br/> <b>Ravage</b>, to lay waste.<br/> <b>Incident</b>, an event.<br/> <b>Oriflamme</b>, the ancient royal standard of France; from the Latin <i>aurum</i>, gold, and <i>flamma</i>, a flame.<br/> <b>Virtually</b>, really, though not apparently.<br/> <b>Carnage</b>, slaughter, dead bodies.<br/> <b>Imminent</b>, near at hand.</p> | <p><b>Copse</b>, a wood of small growth for cutting; from the Greek <i>kopto</i>, to cut.<br/> <b>Chivalrous</b>, daring, brave.<br/> <b>Exemplify</b>, to shew by example.<br/> <b>Mediæval</b>, relating to the middle ages; from the Latin <i>medius</i>, middle, and <i>ævum</i>, an age.<br/> <b>Prowess</b>, bravery.<br/> <b>Railery</b>, mockery.<br/> <b>Palm</b>, the palm was carried in sign of victory.<br/> <b>Chaplet</b>, a garland or wreath for the head.</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

This lesson should be read with an historical map of France, and it would greatly assist the pupil to draw a plan of this, and of all other battles, on the black-board.

1. The two great events of Edward the Black Prince's life, and those which made him famous in war, were the two great battles of Cressy and Poitiers. I will not now go into the origin of the war, of which these two battles formed the turning-points. It is enough for us to remember that it was undertaken by Edward III. to gain the crown of France, a claim, through his mother,<sup>1</sup> which he had solemnly relinquished, but which he now resumed to satisfy the scruples of his allies, the citizens of Ghent, who thought that their oath of allegiance to the 'King of France' would be redeemed if their leader did but bear the name.

2. And now, first for Cressy. I shall not undertake to describe the whole fight, but will call your attention briefly to the questions which everyone ought to ask himself, if he wishes to understand anything about a battle whatever. First, where was it fought? Secondly, why was it fought? Thirdly, how was it won? And fourthly, what was the result of it? And to this I must add, in the present instance, what part was taken in it by the prince, now following his father as a young knight, in his first great campaign? 3. The first of these questions involves the second also. If we make out where a battle was fought, this usually tells us why it was fought. And this is one of the many proofs of the use of learning geography together with history. Each helps us to understand the other. Edward had ravaged Normandy, and reached the very gates of Paris, and was retreating towards Flanders, when he was overtaken by the French king, Philip, who, with an immense army, had determined to cut him off entirely, and so put an end to the war.

4. With difficulty, and by the happy accident of a low tide, he crossed the mouth of the Somme, and found himself in his own maternal inheritance of Ponthieu, and for that special reason encamped near the forest of Cressy, fifteen miles east of Abbeville. 'I am,' he said, 'on the right heritage of madam, my mother, which was given her in dowry; I will defend it against my adversary, Philip of Valois.'<sup>2</sup> 5. It was Saturday, the 28th August 1346, and it was at four in the afternoon, that the battle commenced. It always helps us better to imagine any remarkable event when we know at what time of the day or night it took place, and on this occasion it is of great importance, because it helps us at once to answer

the question we asked—How was the battle won?  
 6. The French army had advanced from Abbeville,<sup>3</sup> after a hard day's march to overtake the retiring enemy. All along the road, and flooding the hedgeless plains which bordered the road, the army, swelled by the surrounding peasantry, rolled along, crying. 'Kill! kill!' drawing their swords, and thinking they were sure of their prey. What the French king chiefly relied upon (besides his great numbers) was the troop of fifteen thousand crossbowmen from Genoa.<sup>4</sup> These were made to stand in front, when, just as the engagement was about to take place, one of those extraordinary incidents occurred which often turn the fate of battles, as they do of human life in general. 7. A tremendous storm gathered from the west, and broke in thunder, and rain, and hail on the field of battle; the sky was darkened, and the horror was increased by the hoarse cries of crows and ravens, which fluttered before the storm, and struck terror into the hearts of the Italian bowmen, who were unaccustomed to these northern tempests. And when at last the sky had cleared, and they prepared their crossbows to shoot, the strings were so wet by the rain that they could not draw them. 8. By this time the evening sun streamed out in full splendour over the black clouds of the western sky—right in their faces; and at the same moment the English archers, who had kept their bows in cases during the storm, and so had their strings dry, let fly their arrows so fast and thick that those who were present could only compare it to snow or sleet. Through and through the heads, and necks, and hands of the Genoese bowmen the arrows pierced. Unable to stand it, they turned and fled, and from that moment the panic and confusion were so great that the day was lost.

9. E  
 had t  
 we m  
 the w  
 this w  
 destro  
 sacred  
 broide  
 sign t  
 king I  
 shoul  
 dom, i  
 it to h  
 the sc  
 hangin  
 barehe  
 knight  
 panion  
 when  
 gained  
*spurs,*  
 prover  
 very g  
 thrown  
 Beaum  
 throwi  
 ground  
 assailar  
 11. T  
 the lon  
 night, t  
 that the  
 pursuit  
 that the

9. But, though the storm, and the sun, and the archers had their part, we must not forget the prince. He was, we must remember, only sixteen, and yet he commanded the whole English army. It is said that the reason of this was, that the king of France had been so bent on destroying the English forces that he had hoisted the sacred banner of France—the great scarlet flag, embroidered with golden lilies, called the oriflamme—as a sign that no quarter would be given; and that when king Edward saw this, and saw the hazard to which he should expose not only the army, but the whole kingdom, if he were to fall in battle, he determined to leave it to his son. 10. On the top of a windmill, of which the solid tower is still to be seen on the ridge overhanging the field, the king, for whatever reason, remained bareheaded, whilst the young prince, who had been knighted a month before, went forward with his companions-in-arms into the very thick of the fray; and, when his father saw that the victory was virtually gained, he forebore to interfere. ‘Let the child *win his spurs*,’ he said, in words which have since become a proverb, ‘*and let the day be his.*’ The prince was in very great danger at one moment; he was wounded and thrown to the ground, and only saved by Richard de Beaumont, who carried the great banner of Wales, throwing the banner over the boy as he lay on the ground, and standing upon it till he had driven back the assailants.

11. The assailants were driven back, and far through the long summer evening, and deep into the summer night, the battle raged. It was not till all was dark that the prince and his companions halted from their pursuit; and then huge fires and torches were lit up, that the king might see where they were. And then

took place that touching interview between the father and the son; the king embracing the boy in front of the whole army, by the red light of the blazing fires, and saying, 'Sweet son, God give you good perseverance; you are my true son; right royally have you acquitted yourself this day, and worthy are you of a crown.' 12. And the young prince, after the reverential manner of those times, 'bowed to the ground, and gave all the honour to the king his father.' The next day the king walked over the field of carnage with the prince, and said, 'What think you of a battle? is it an agreeable game?'

The general result of the battle was the deliverance of the English army from a most imminent danger, and subsequently the conquest of Calais, which the king immediately besieged and won, and which remained in the possession of the English from that day to the reign of Queen Mary.

13. And now we pass over ten years, and find the Black Prince on the field of Poitiers. Again we must ask, What brought him there, and why the battle was fought? He was this time alone. His father, though the war had rolled on since the battle of Cressy, was in England. But, in other respects, the beginning of the fight was very like that of Cressy. 14. Gascony<sup>5</sup> belonged to him by right, and from this he made a descent into the neighbouring provinces, and was on his return home when the king of France—John, the son of Philip—pursued him, as his father had pursued Edward III., and overtook him suddenly on the high upland fields which extended for many miles south of the city of Poitiers. It is the third great battle which has been fought in that neighbourhood. The first was that in which Clovis<sup>6</sup> defeated the Goths, and established the

faith  
the s  
back  
anism  
victor  
six m  
of the  
marke  
hollow  
large  
it from  
in by  
ridge t  
was so  
positio  
was ar  
great d  
The fa  
division  
It was  
the bat  
fruitless  
bloodsh  
17. T  
prisoner  
France  
hear of  
and his  
the very  
having e  
the batt  
is told  
his posi  
chivalrou



faith in the Creed of Athanasius throughout Europe; the second was that in which Charles Martel drove back the Saracens,<sup>7</sup> and saved Europe from Mohammedanism; the third was this—the most brilliant of English victories over the French. 15. The spot, which is about six miles south of Poitiers, is still known by the name of the 'Battle-field.' Its features are very slightly marked—two ridges of rising ground, parted by a gentle hollow. Behind the highest of these two ridges is a large tract of copse and underwood, and leading up to it from the hollow is a somewhat steep lane, there shut in by woods and vines on each side. It was on this ridge that the prince had taken up his position, and it was solely by the good use which he made of this position that the victory was won. 16. The French army was arranged on the other side of the hollow, in three great divisions, of which the king's was the hindmost. The farm-house which marks the spot where this division was posted is visible from the walls of Poitiers. It was on Monday, September 19, 1356, at 9 A.M., that the battle began. All the day had been taken up by fruitless endeavours of Cardinal Talleyrand to save the bloodshed by bringing the king and prince to terms.

17. The prince offered to give up all the castles and prisoners he had taken, and to swear not to fight in France again for seven years. But the king would hear of nothing but his absolute surrender of himself and his army on the spot. The cardinal laboured till the very last moment, and then rode back to Poitiers, having equally offended both parties. 18. The story of the battle, if we remember the position of the armies, is told in a moment. The prince remained firm in his position; the French charged with their usual chivalrous ardour—charged up the lane. The English

archers, whom the prince had stationed behind the hedges on each side, let fly their showers of arrows, as at Cressy. In an instant the lane was choked with the dead, and the first check of such headstrong confidence was fatal. Here, as at Cressy, was exemplified the truth of the remark of the mediæval historian, 'We no longer contest our battles as did the Greeks and Romans; the first stroke decides all.'<sup>19</sup> The prince in his turn charged; a general panic seized the whole French army: the first and second divisions fled in the wildest confusion; the third alone, where King John stood, made a gallant resistance. The king was taken prisoner; and by noon the whole was over. Up to the gates of the town of Poitiers the French army fled and fell, and their dead bodies were buried by heaps within a convent, which still remains in the city. It was a wonderful day. The numbers were 8000 to 60,000.

The prince who had gained the battle was still only twenty-six—that is, a year younger than Napoleon at the beginning of his campaigns—and the battle was distinguished from all others by the number, not of the slain, but of the prisoners, one Englishman often taking four or five Frenchmen.

<sup>20</sup> The day of the battle, at night, the prince gave a supper in his lodgings to the French king and to most of the great lords that were prisoners. The prince caused the king and his son to sit at one table, and other lords, knights, and squires at the others, and the prince always served the king very humbly, and would not sit at the king's table, although he requested him. He said he was not qualified to sit at the table with so great a prince as the king was. <sup>21</sup> Then he said to the king, 'Sir, for God's sake make no bad cheer, though your will was not accomplished this day; for, sir, the

king  
frien  
you  
And  
be m  
high  
on y  
for a  
this,  
the  
prin  
woul  
perse

1. E  
the r  
Edwar  
2. F  
Philip  
3. A  
4. I  
foreign  
5. T  
6. C  
Goths  
eastern  
7. T  
eighth

1. Ed  
the tw  
had a  
Edward  
Flander  
camped  
5. The

king, my father, will certainly bestow upon you as much friendship and honour as he can, and will agree with you so reasonably that you will ever after be friends. And, sir, I think you ought to rejoice, though the battle be not as you will, for you have this day gained the high honour of prowess, and have surpassed all others on your side in valour. Sir, I say not this in raillery, for all our party, who saw every man's deeds, agree in this, and give you the palm and chaplet.' Therewith the Frenchmen whispered among themselves that the prince had spoken nobly, and that most probably he would prove a great hero, if God preserved his life to persevere in such good fortune.

*Dean Stanley (adapted).*

NOTES.

1. Edward the Third's mother was a daughter of Philip IV.; the reigning king, Philip VI., was only his nephew, and Edward III. claimed that he, as a grandson, was a nearer heir.
2. Philip VI. was the son of the Count of Valois, brother of Philip IV.
3. Abbeville is near the mouth of the river Somme.
4. In the middle ages the kings used frequently to hire foreign soldiers when they could not raise men enough at home.
5. Through Eleanor of Provence, wife of Henry III.
6. Clovis I., king of France, or of the Franks, in 507. The Goths were a Scandinavian people; the Ostrogoths were the eastern and the Visigoths the western branch.
7. The Moors, or Saracens, held rule in Spain from the eighth to the fifteenth century; this battle was in 732.

SUMMARY.

1. Edward the Black Prince became famous chiefly through the two great battles of Cressy and Poitiers. 2. Edward III. had a claim on the throne of France through his mother. 3. Edward, after ravaging Normandy, was retreating through Flanders, when he was overtaken by Philip. 4. Edward encamped near the forest of Cressy, fifteen miles east of Abbeville. 5. The battle began at 4 P.M. on Saturday, the 28th August 1346.

6. The French king relied chiefly on his numbers, and on his 15,000 crossbowmen from Genoa. 7. But a storm of rain wet the strings of the crossbows, which were thus made useless. 8. The evening sun now streamed in the faces of the Genoese, and made a good mark of them; and the English, who had kept their bows dry in cases, let fly their arrows like sleet. 9. The king of France had hoisted the oriflamme, as a sign of no quarter; and therefore King Edward left the fighting to his son. 10. The king watched from a windmill the work of his son, who was only sixteen, and had been knighted only one month before. 11. The prince was thrown to the ground, and was only saved by Richard de Beaumont. 12. The French were at length beaten back; the battle raged deep into the summer night; and the prince did not cease from his pursuit till it was quite dark. 13. The result of the battle was the safety of the English army; and one of the after-consequences was the taking of Calais, which remained in the possession of the English till the reign of Queen Mary. 14. Ten years after, the Black Prince fought the battle of Poitiers. 15. He was returning home from an expedition, when King John of France overtook him. 16. The prince took up his position on a ridge, the only road to which was a steep lane. 17. The battle began at 9 A.M. on the 19th of September 1356. 18. Cardinal Talleyrand had tried to bring the two sides to terms; the Black Prince had offered to give up all the castles and prisoners he had taken, and not to fight for seven years; but the king of France demanded unconditional surrender. 19. The French charged up the lane; the English bowmen killed them as they came on. 20. The lane was choked with the dead; a panic seized the French army; two divisions fled; King John was taken prisoner; and the whole affair was over at twelve o'clock. 21. The Black Prince was now only twenty-six; and the battle was distinguished by the large number of the prisoners. 22. At night, the Black Prince waited on King John at supper.

COMPOSITION.—Give a description of the position of the French and English armies at the battle of Cressy, and the result of the fight: 1. Edward, marching rapidly to Flanders, pursued by the French. 2. Crosses the Somme at low water. 3. Gets as far as the forest of Cressy. 4. Turns to face the French. 5. French advance, with the Genoese bowmen in

front. 6. low-sink charge d far into

EXERCISES: 1. sentence: 2. supper in

2. Ana 3. Sele and verb

4. Wri you know

5. Give them in c to or are

6. Disti charged, high and c

2. The pr purple pa a severe

4. Chance Canterbur stories. 5

sixpence f

front. 6. Thunder-storm and heavy rain. 7. The rays of the low-sinking sun dazzle the eyes of the French. 8. Thick discharge of English arrows. 9. Contest and flight kept up till far into the night. 10. Triumphant return of the prince.

EXERCISES.—1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The day of the battle, at night, the prince gave a supper in his lodgings to the French king and the great lords.

2. Analyse the above.

3. Select from section 21 words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the way they are used.

4. Write out all the compounds of the following words that you know: *Reason*; *engage*; *hand*; *sign*; *ground*; *conquer*.

5. Give in the same way as in Exercise 9, page 21—but write them in columns, with their meanings—the words which relate to or are compounds of *crown* and *battle*.

6. Distinguish the meaning of *high*, *ground*, *check*, *stories*, and *charged*, in the following pairs of sentences: 1. The cliff was *high* and dangerous. The wind was too *high* for the boat to sail. 2. The prince's troops were posted on rising *ground*. I chose a purple pattern on a gray *ground*. 3. The French met with a severe *check*. His suit was of black and white *check*. 4. Chaucer's pilgrims told each other *stories* as they went to Canterbury. The houses in Edinburgh are built in very many *stories*. 5. The French *charged* up the lane. The lad *charged* sixpence for carrying my bag to the station.



## EDWIN\* AND PAULINUS—THE CONVERSION OF NORTHUMBRIA.†

Gaunt, exceedingly thin.  
Yule-time, Christmas.

Pondered, thought—from the  
Latin *pondus*, a weight.

1. The black-haired gaunt Paulinus  
By ruddy Edwin stood:  
'Bow down, O King of Deira,‡  
Before the blessed Rood!§  
Wilt thou not hear his message  
Who bears the keys and sword?'||  
But Edwin looked and pondered,  
And answered not a word.
  
2. Rose then a sage old warrior,  
Was five score winters old;  
Whose beard from chin to girdle  
Like one long snow-wreath rolled:  
'At Yule-time in our chamber  
We sit in warmth and light,  
While cold and howling round us  
Lies the black land of Night.

\* Or Eadwine. He lived in the seventh century; and although he was only King of Northumbria, he was overlord of all the rest of Britain, Kent excepted. The story of his life is told by the great Northumbrian monk and historian, the venerable Bede, who says that Paulinus was sent to Northumbria by Eadbald, King of Kent, when his sister Æthelbert married Edwin.

† It included all the country on the east side of Britain, between the Forth and the Humber.

‡ Northumbria was divided into two provinces—Deira in the south, and Bernicia in the north.

§ The Cross.

|| The Bishop of Rome, who sent the mission to England. The keys and sword are the arms of the Pope.

COMPOS  
King Edw  
Roman m  
3. The m  
comparison  
EXERCIS

3. 'Athwart the room a sparrow  
Darts from the open door :  
Within the happy hearth-light  
One red flash—and no more !  
We see it come from darkness,  
And into darkness go.  
So is our life, King Edwin !  
Alas, that it is so !
4. 'But if this pale Paulinus  
Have somewhat more to tell ;  
Some news of Whence and Whither,  
And where the soul will dwell ;  
If on that outer darkness  
The sun of hope may shine—  
He makes life worth the living !  
I take his God for mine !'
5. So spake the wise old warrior ;  
And all about him cried,  
'Paulinus' God hath conquered !  
And he shall be our guide ;  
For he makes life worth living  
Who brings this message plain—  
When our brief days are over  
That we shall live again.'

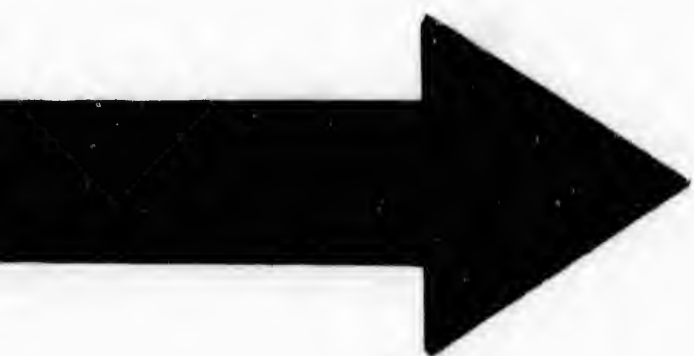
*Unknown.*

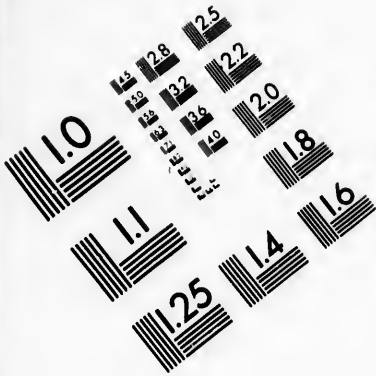
COMPOSITION.—Tell the story of the message of Paulinus to King Edwin from the following heads: 1. The pale, dark Roman missionary. 2. The fair, red-haired British king. 3. The message. 4. How received. 5. The old warrior's comparison of life. 6. His reason for accepting the new faith.

EXERCISES.—1. Parse all the words in the following sen-

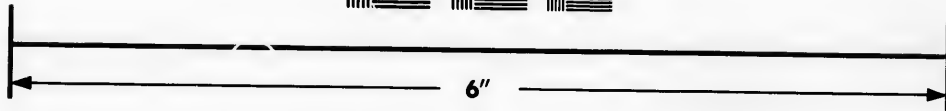
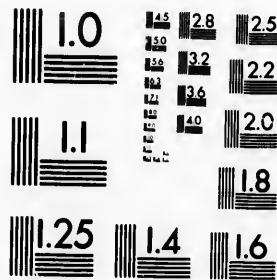








**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99

tence: In the seventh century England was divided into seven kingdoms.

2. Analyse the above sentence.
3. Select from verses 2 and 3 words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the way they are used.
4. Write out all the compounds of the following words that you know: *Black; down; king; key; snow; light; open; hope; any.*
5. Give in the same way as in exercise 9, page 21—but write them in columns, with their meanings—the words which relate to, or are compounds of, *land* and *night*.

---

### THE LIFE OF MAN.

---

Then another of the King's Thanes rose and said: 'Truly, the life of a man in this world, compared with that life whereof we wot not, is on this wise. It is as when thou, O King, art sitting at supper with thine Aldermen and thy Thanes in the time of winter, when the hearth is lighted in the midst and the hall is warm, but, without, the rains and the snow are falling, and the winds are howling; then cometh a sparrow and flieth through the house; she cometh in by one door and goeth out by another. While she is in the house she feeleth not the storm of winter; but yet, when a little moment of rest is passed, she flieth again into the storm, and passeth away from our eyes. So is it with the life of a man; it is but for a moment; what goeth before it and what cometh after it, wot we not at all. Wherefore, if these strangers can tell us aught, that we may know whence man cometh and whither he goeth, let us hearken to them and follow their law.'

*Freeman,*

## JOAN OF ARC, THE MAID OF ORLEANS.

**Subjugation**, a bringing under of the power or dominion; from the Latin *sub*, under, and *jugum*, a yoke.

**Anointed**, touched with sacred oil.

**Sorcery**, magic; the power of reading the future by the help of evil spirits.

**Instinct**, a natural prompting to action, not at all connected with reason.

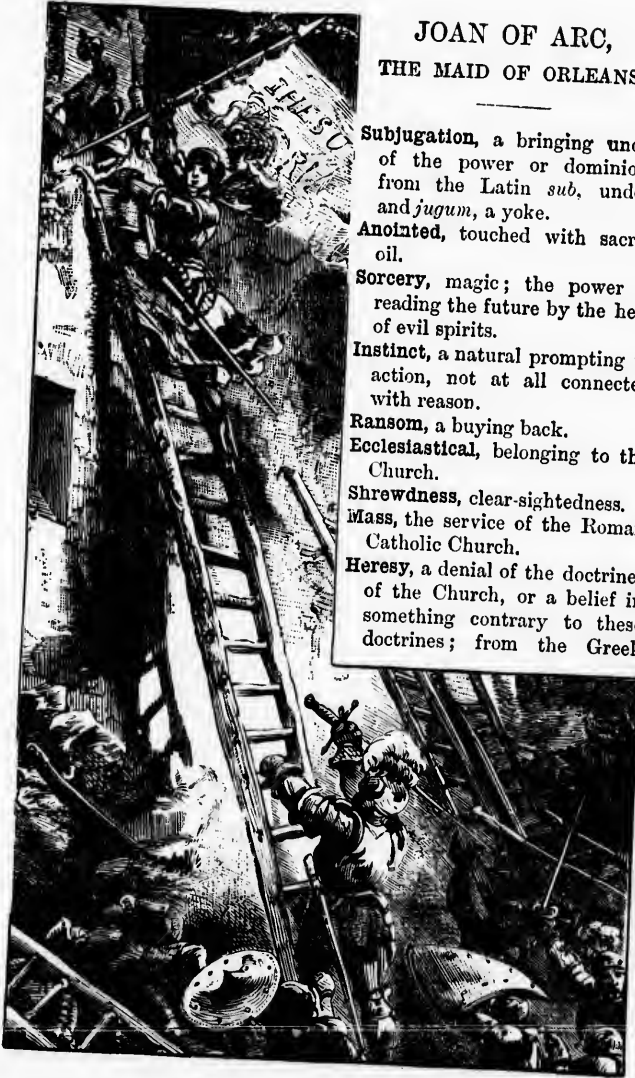
**Ransom**, a buying back.

**Ecclesiastical**, belonging to the Church.

**Shrewdness**, clear-sightedness.

**Mass**, the service of the Roman Catholic Church.

**Heresy**, a denial of the doctrines of the Church, or a belief in something contrary to these doctrines; from the Greek



|                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><i>haireomat</i>, I take for myself, choose.</p> <p><b>Ban</b>, a proclamation, a public announcement.</p> <p><b>Excommunication</b>, expelling from the rights and privileges of a Church.</p> | <p><b>Anniversary</b>, the day on which an event is yearly celebrated; thus our birthday is the anniversary of our birth.</p> <p><b>Temporary</b>, for a time only.</p> <p><b>Respite</b>, forbearance; or putting off the execution of a criminal.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. Jeanne d'Arc, or, as she is named in English, Joan of Arc, was the daughter of a peasant of Domrémy, a little village on the borders of Lorraine and Champagne. She was born in 1412. Domrémy is close to the great woods of the Vosges,<sup>1</sup> in which Jeanne loved to wander, watching the birds and the beasts, and making friends of them. At home she was 'a good girl, simple and pleasant in her ways,' and differed from other girls in being more modest, industrious, and pious. She was taught to sew and to spin, but not to read and write.

2. At this time all the northern part of France was torn and desolated by the war which had for its object the subjugation of France to the power of England.<sup>2</sup> Misery and disease were everywhere, and even in her distant village, at the foot of the Vosges, Jeanne had been made acquainted with the horrors and hardships which afflicted her country. When about thirteen years of age, she believed that St Michael appeared to her in a blaze of light, commanding her to be modest and attentive to all the duties of religion. This vision, and her sorrow for the distress of France, absorbed her whole being; her constant expression was, she 'had pity on the fair realm of France.'

3. When she was fifteen, St Michael appeared to her again, and bade her go and fight for the Dauphin.<sup>3</sup> 'Messire,' replied the girl, 'I am but a poor maiden; I know not how to ride to the wars, or to lead men-at-arms.' The poor girl wept, and wished to escape a work so difficult and

so new. But, encouraged by the angel, her brave spirit overcame her fears, and she made known her mission to her friends. 4. At first she was laughed at as insane, and her father swore he would drown her rather than she should go with men to the wars; but she succeeded in the end in leaving her home, and in making her way to the Dauphin, whom she persuaded of her heavenly mission, and promised that he should be anointed and crowned in the town of Rheims.<sup>4</sup> She was now in her eighteenth year—tall, strong, and active, and able to remain on horseback without food from dawn till dark. Mounted on a charger, clad in a suit of white armour from head to foot, and bearing a white banner, she seemed 'a thing wholly divine, whether to see or hear.'

5. In April 1429 she commenced the relief of Orleans, which was closely besieged by the English, and which, pressed by famine, was on the point of surrender when Jeanne presented herself to the Dauphin. In the midst of a terrible thunder-storm she marched through the English lines, unperceived and unopposed, and next morning shewed herself with her banner on the walls of Orleans. 'I bring you,' she said to the French general Dunois,<sup>5</sup> who had sallied out of Orleans to meet her, 'the best aid ever sent to any one, the aid of the King of Heaven.' Fort after fort fell into her hands, and the English, believing they were fighting against invisible powers, raised the siege and marched away. The belief in witchcraft and sorcery was then real and living among all classes of people. 6. Triumph after triumph followed; and, with an ever-increasing army, she at length reached the gates of Rheims. 'O gentle king, the pleasure of God is done!' she cried, when she saw the crown placed on the head of Charles

the Seventh ; and she now passionately longed to go back to her father, to her village and her quiet home. ' O that I might go and keep sheep once more with my brothers and sisters ; they would be so glad to see me again ! ' But the French court had found out how useful she was, and refused to let her depart.

7. Jeanne's instinct and the heavenly voices spoke the truth. From this time she could not help feeling that her mission was at an end, and that she was fighting without the support of heaven. During the defence of Compiègne she was thrown from her horse and taken prisoner. After the barbarous custom of the time in dealing with prisoners, she was sold by her captor to the Duke of Burgundy, an ally of England, and again by the Duke into the hands of the English. 8. Her triumphs were triumphs of sorcery in the eyes of her enemies ; and even her king must have believed her to be a witch, for, with the base ingratitude born of intense and royal selfishness, he made not the smallest attempt either to ransom or release her. After a year's imprisonment, an ecclesiastical court, with the Bishop of Beauvais<sup>6</sup> at its head, was formed to try her. 9. The accusation was that she had been guilty of heresy and magic. Not permitted an advocate or defender, she was only supported by the courage of innocence ; but she displayed in her answers a shrewdness and simple good sense that contrasted strongly with the artful dealings of the learned doctors, her judges. When they asked : ' Do you believe that you are in the favour of God ? ' she replied, ' If I am not, God will put me in it ; if I am, God will keep me in it.'

10. When asked if the saints of her visions hated the English, she answered : ' They love whatever God loves, and hate whatever He hates.' And when the Bishop of

Be  
Go  
' V  
kn  
bat  
kin  
she  
slay  
" R  
the  
ans  
take  
And  
four  
four  
S  
hear  
It  
the  
that  
if sh  
twelv  
and  
of th  
the y  
wher  
the C  
sever  
the s  
storm  
patier  
inter  
not sp  
such a



Beauvais, still trying to entrap her, proceeded: 'Does God, then, hate the English?' she still replied: 'Whether God loves or hates the English, I do not know; but I know that all those who do not die in battle shall be driven away from this realm by the king of France.' When questioned about her standard, she said: 'I carried it instead of a lance, to avoid slaying any one; I have killed nobody. I only said: "Rush in among the English," and I rushed among them the first myself.' 11. 'The voices,' she continued, in answer to further questions—'the voices told me to take it without fear, and that God would help me.' And when they asked her if her hope of victory was founded on the banner or herself, she said: 'It was founded on God, and on nought besides.'

She was deprived of mass. 'Our Lord can make me hear it without your aid,' she said, weeping.

It is said that an Englishman who was present at the trial was so struck with Jeanne's evident sincerity that he could not help crying out: 'A worthy woman, if she were but English!' 12. Her judges drew up twelve articles of accusation on the grounds of sorcery and heresy. On the 24th of May 1431, the anniversary of the day on which the maid had been taken prisoner the year before, she was led to the cemetery of St Ouen, where two platforms were erected. On the one stood the Cardinal of Winchester, the Bishop of Beauvais, and several other churchmen. 13. Jeanne was conducted to the second platform, where a preacher, named Erard, stormed at her fiercely; she listened with gentle patience, until he began to accuse the king; then she interrupted him warmly, saying: 'Speak of me, but do not speak of the king. He is a good Christian, and not such as you say; I can swear to you he is the noblest of

all Christians, and one who the most loves the Church and the faith.'

14. When the sermon was finished, the preacher read to Jeanne a form of abjuration, of which she asked an explanation, saying she had nothing to abjure, for that all she had done was at the command of God. At this they told her she must submit to the Church, and then, using threats, they pointed to the public executioner, telling her that instant death was the only alternative. Poor Jeanne! Braver hearts than thine have failed at such a trial. Trembling, she put her mark to the paper, saying: 'I would rather sign than burn!'

15. The Bishop of Beauvais then proceeded to pass sentence. He said, 'that as, by the grace of God, she had given up her errors, and come back to the bosom of the Church, the ban of excommunication was removed. But,' he added, 'as she had sinned against God and the holy Catholic Church, though "by grace and moderation" her life was spared, she must pass the rest of it in prison, with the bread of grief and the water of anguish for her food.'

16. This, however, was only a temporary respite; it was not designed that her life should be spared. Her enemies sought only to gain time in order to find a better excuse for her death, but they sought in vain. She was accused of a return to heresy, and condemned to death. A great pile was raised in the marketplace of Rouen; here she was led, and found her enemies awaiting her. Asking for a cross, an English soldier made one by breaking his staff asunder. She kissed it and clasped it to her breast. 17. Suddenly she cried out: 'Yes! my voices were of God! they have never deceived me!' Her last word, with her eyes fixed on a crucifix held before her by a priest, was 'Jesus!' and

am  
and  
cou  
A  
wh  
18  
tho  
fore  
out  
past  
to t  
king  
cup  
for l  
dust.  
19.  
thun  
shall  
her c  
turie  
this l  
suffer-  
alway  
a mor  
is sho  
ends.  
20.  
even a  
senses  
the d  
might  
saw n  
fiery s  
Rouen

amid the deep and awful silence of the brutal soldiery and unfeeling people, the heroic soul of the poor young country girl passed away.

A statue of the Maid of Orleans now marks the spot where she suffered death.

18. What is to be thought of her? What is to be thought of the poor shepherd girl from the hills and forests of Lorraine, who rose suddenly out of the quiet, out of the safety, out of the religious inspiration of deep pastoral solitudes, to a station in the van of armies, and to the more perilous station at the right hand of kings? The poor maiden drank not herself from that cup of rest which she had secured for France. No! for her voice was then silent. No! for her feet were dust.

19. Pure, innocent, noble-hearted girl! When the thunders of universal France, as even yet may happen, shall proclaim the grandeur of her who gave up all for her country, thy ear will have been deaf for five centuries. To suffer and to do, that was thy portion in this life; to *do*—never for thyself, always for others; to *suffer*—never in the persons of generous champions, always in thy own—that was thy destiny; and not for a moment was it hidden from thyself. Life, thou saidst, is short; let me use that life, so transitory, for glorious ends.

20. This pure creature—pure from every suspicion of even a visionary self-interest, even as she was pure in senses more obvious—never once relaxed in her belief in the darkness that was travelling to meet her. She might not prefigure the very manner of her death; she saw not in vision, perhaps, the aerial altitude of the fiery scaffold, the spectators on every road pouring into Rouen as to a coronation, the surging smoke, the volley-

ing flames ; but the voice that called her to death—that she heard for ever.

21. Great was the throne of France even in those days, and great was he that sat upon it ; but well she knew that not the throne, nor he that sat upon it, was for *her* ; but, on the contrary, that she was for *them*. Not she by them, but they by her, should rise from the dust. Gorgeous were the lilies of France, and for centuries had they the privilege to spread their beauty over land and sea ; but well she knew—early at Domrémy she had read that bitter truth—that the lilies of France would decorate no garland for *her*. Flower nor bud, bell nor blossom, would ever bloom for *her*.

22. With an undaunted soul, but a meek and saintly demeanour, the maiden encountered her terrible fate. Upon her head was placed a mitre, bearing the inscription, ‘*Relapsed heretic, apostate, idolatress.*’ Her piety displayed itself in the most touching manner to the last ; and her angelic forgetfulness of self was manifested in a remarkable degree. 23. The executioner had been directed to apply his torch from below. He did so. The fiery smoke rose upwards in billowing volumes. A monk was then standing at her side. Wrapt up in his sublime office, he saw not the danger, but still persisted in his prayers.

Even then, when the last enemy was racing up the fiery stairs to seize her, even at that moment did this noblest of girls think only for *him*—the one friend that would not forsake her—and not for herself ; bidding him with her last breath to care for his own preservation, but to leave *her* to God. ‘Go down,’ she said ; ‘lift up the cross before me, that I may see it in dying, and speak to me pious words to the end.’

*De Quincey.*

1.  
the  
2.  
succe  
had  
Henr  
succe  
appe  
3.  
4.  
prese  
—a v  
flask),  
5. A  
Franc  
6. A  
7. T  
COM  
the fo  
3. Her  
nation  
7. Tria  
EXER  
The ex  
Bedfor  
2. An  
3. Se  
nouns a  
4. Di  
the foll  
unhealt  
*fair* bar  
ment wi  
(4) The  
the good  
in all th  
in the st

NOTES.

1. A range of mountains north-east of France; now one of the boundaries between France and Germany.
2. This war was begun by Henry V., who had been entirely successful; he had married a daughter of the French king, and had been promised the crown of France at Charles's death. Henry, however, died suddenly, leaving a son, not a year old, to succeed him; the Duke of Bedford, the late king's brother, was appointed General and Regent of France.
3. The eldest son of the king of France.
4. A town in the north-east of France, where, down to the present century, the kings of France were crowned and anointed—a vessel of sacred oil, called *La sainte Ampoule* (the holy flask), being kept here for the purpose.
5. A cousin of the Dauphin's, and one of the bravest soldiers France ever possessed.
6. A town a little to the east of Rouen.
7. The Dauphin was now Charles VII.

COMPOSITION.—Give an account of Joan of Arc's career, from the following heads: 1. Her quiet village home. 2. Visions. 3. Her journey to the Dauphin. 4. Relief of Orleans. 5. Coronation at Rheims. 6. Taken prisoner at the siege of Compiègne. 7. Trial. 8. Execution.

EXERCISES.—1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The execution of Joan of Arc, and the death of the Regent Bedford, destroyed the power of the English in France.

2. Analyse the above.
3. Select from sections 4 and 5 words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the way they are used.
4. Distinguish the meaning of *close*, *fair*, *suit*, *court*, *form*, in the following pairs of sentences: (1) The room was *close* and unhealthy. Her cottage is *close* by. (2) The drover made a *fair* bargain. The lady was *fair* and gentle. (3) This arrangement will not *suit* me. His *suit* was made of good broadcloth. (4) The law-*courts* are at Westminster. The candidate *courts* the good opinion of the electors. (5) A *form* of prayer was read in all the churches. What manly and beautiful *forms* one sees in the statues of Greece!



### SELF-SACRIFICE.

[Philip II. of Spain succeeded his father, Charles V., as king of Spain and the Netherlands in 1556. He had in 1554 married Mary, the Queen of England; and, after her death, he sent against this country, in 1558, the famous 'Invincible Armada.' His policy was to keep down the Netherlands, which was strongly Protestant and Lutheran, by tyranny, torture, fines, imprisonment, and cruelties of every kind; and Elizabeth sent an army in 1586, under Lord Leicester, for the relief of the Netherlands. Sir Philip Sidney

was  
poet

Displ  
Ance  
fath

1.

cause  
Philip  
displ  
two  
third  
trench  
ride  
being  
thirst  
instan  
vessel  
happ  
at it  
Sidney  
ing, an  
'Thy

was a young man, but he had already distinguished himself as a poet and a soldier.]

Displayed, shewed plainly.

Ancestry, lineage—or line of fore-  
fathers.

Radiance, light sent in rays.

Wistful, longing.

Train, attendant courtiers.

Endued, gifted.

1. In the battle of Zutphen, which was fought in the cause of liberty against the tyrant Philip of Spain, Sir Philip Sidney, who commanded the English cavalry, displayed the greatest coolness and courage. He had two horses killed under him; and, whilst mounting a third, he was wounded by a musket-shot from the trenches, which broke his thigh-bone. 2. He had to ride back about a mile and a half to the camp; and, being faint with loss of blood, and parched with severe thirst, he called for a draught of water, which was instantly brought him; but, as he was putting the vessel to his mouth, a poor wounded soldier, who happened to be carried past him at that instant, looked at it with wistful eyes. The gallant and generous Sidney took the vessel from his mouth without drinking, and delivered it to the soldier, with the words: 'Thy necessity is yet greater than mine.'

3. 'Twas on the field of Zutphen;  
The battle's din was o'er,  
And bold and gallant foemen  
Had fallen to rise no more.

Just then with lessening radiance  
Streamed the pale light of day  
O'er the sad place, where side by side  
Victor and vanquished lay.

ring of  
Mary,  
at this  
y was  
at and  
ties of  
Lord  
idney

4. Among the dead and dying  
Was many a noble face,  
Which told of gentle ancestry,  
And spoke of inbred grace.
5. But 'midst them all a face there shone  
Pre-eminently bright,  
A face that almost seemed endued  
With more than earthly light;

A face which e'en to look upon  
Reflected goodness gave,  
And left a sense of happiness,  
It was so true and brave.

6. It was the face of such a man  
As you shall rarely see ;  
Of all Queen Bess's brilliant train  
The courtliest knight was he.

But sore he had been wounded ;  
When hardly yet begun,  
His noble life was ebbing fast,  
His glorious work was done.

7. And, as he rode in agony,  
A deep cry from him burst :  
'Oh, for one drop of water,  
To quench this raging thirst !'

With willing steps and loving hearts  
They bring it him in haste ;  
See ! with what eagerness he longs  
The cooling draught to taste !

1. In  
slight p  
2. In  
pause a  
3. In  
and has  
4. In  
COMP  
followin  
2. He  
4. He is  
a wound  
him wit  
EXERC  
tence : S  
Philip o  
2. An  
3. Sel  
be used  
4. Ma  
be used,  
5. Giv  
nouns co  
plaint.  
6. Wr  
that you  
7. Wri  
that relat



8. But, as in very act to drink,  
 He hears a stifled moan  
 From a poor soldier lying near,  
 And dying all alone.

Without one least complaining word,  
 Without one single sigh,  
 He yields the cup; he simply says:  
 'He needs it more than I.'

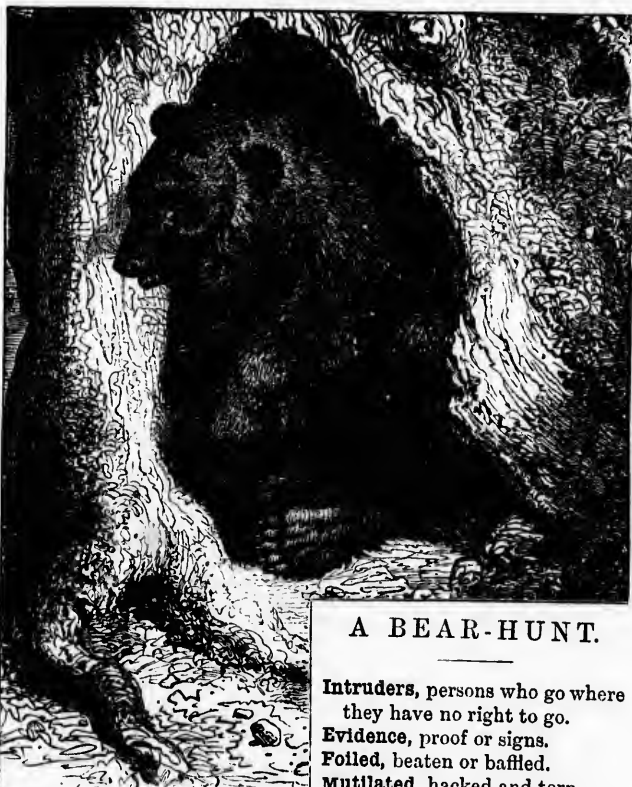
## DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

1. In the 1st verse, avoid the verse-accent on *on*; make a slight pause after 'Twas, and say, 'Twas on the field-of-Zutphen.
2. In the 8th verse, avoid the verse-accent upon *for*; make a pause after *Oh!* and say, *Oh, for one drop!*
3. In the 9th verse, pause after *See!* slur over the word *with*, and hasten on to the word *what*.
4. In the 10th verse, *as* is not emphatic; nor is *a*.

COMPOSITION.—Tell the story of Sir Philip Sidney from the following heads: 1. He is wounded in the battle of Zutphen. 2. He suffers terribly from thirst. 3. He calls for water. 4. He is raising it to his mouth, when he sees the eager eyes of a wounded soldier fastened upon the goblet. 5. He hands it to him with the words, &c.

EXERCISES.—1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Sir Philip Sidney fought in the cause of liberty against Philip of Spain.

2. Analyse the above sentence.
3. Select from the first three sections all the words that can be used both as nouns and as verbs, such as *fight*, *display*, &c.
4. Make sentences in which the first three of them shall be used, first as nouns, and then as verbs.
5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Generosity*; *radiance*; *eminence*; *endowment*; *complaint*.
6. Write down all the compounds of the following words that you know: *Mount*; *carry*; *take*; *fall*; *most*; *willing*; *act*.
7. Write down in columns, with their meanings, all the words that relate to *siege* and *tyrant* (see Exercise 9, page 21).



### A BEAR-HUNT.

Encounters, fights.  
Held in great repute, very famous.


Intruders, persons who go where they have no right to go.  
Evidence, proof or signs.  
Folled, beaten or baffled.  
Mutilated, hacked and torn.  
Prompted, put into his mind.  
Vigilance, watchfulness.  
Brook, bear or endure.

1. My ride in the Altai Mountains<sup>1</sup> was over ground where bears are numerous; their tracks we followed, but without seeing even one. I passed places where fearful encounters with these animals have taken place. A very large one had been seen by the wood-cutters about a dozen miles from the gold mine; and two men,

one  
skill  
wand  
track  
evid  
prepa  
their  
thirty  
breez

3.

vital  
The  
his sh  
fire.  
and, t  
assail  
his sc  
arm,  
gradu  
to his  
he sav  
left hi  
the go  
it was  
mangle  
at day  
guide.  
where  
still re  
victim  
his rifl  
that th  
A dilig  
the tra



one a hunter, held in great repute for his daring and skill, determined to make his acquaintance. 2. After wandering about for some time, they came upon his tracks, quite fresh in the long, dewy grass. He was evidently near; this made them cautious, and they prepared for action. Presently a loud growl saluted their ears; then out he sprang from a thicket about thirty-five paces distant, where he stood snuffing the breeze and eyeing the intruders.

3. The hunter fired and the ball struck, but not in a vital part. In an instant the wounded animal charged. The other man, who was less experienced, reserved his shot until within twenty paces. The rifle missed fire. At once the brute raised himself on his hind-legs, and, tearing the earth beneath him, rushed on his first assailant, striking him down with a blow that stripped his scalp and turned it over his face; then, seizing his arm, he began to gnaw and crush it to the bone, gradually ascending to the shoulder. 4. The man called to his companion to load and fire; but the fellow, when he saw his friend so fearfully mangled, ran away and left him to his fate. Late in the evening he reached the gold mine, and reported what had happened; but it was too late to make any effort in behalf of the mangled hunter. The officer ordered a large party out at daylight the next morning, with the coward for a guide. 5. He took them through the forest to the spot where the encounter had taken place, of which there still remained ample evidence; but no remains of the victim were met with, except some torn clothing and his rifle. By the state of the grass it was evident that the man had been carried off into the thick forest. A diligent pursuit was therefore made; sometimes the track was lost, but the pursuers of the bear were

too well skilled in woodcraft to be foiled, and at length discovered his larder. 6. He had dragged the hunter into a dense mass of wood and bushes, and, to render the place still more secure, had broken off a great quantity of branches and heaped them over his body. These were quickly stripped off, when, to their great surprise, they found the man, though frightfully mutilated and quite insensible, still living! Two long poles were immediately cut, to which saddle-cloths were secured in the middle. One horse was placed in front, another at the back, and the ends of the poles secured to the stirrups, thus forming a very easy conveyance. 7. The sufferer was placed upon the saddle-cloths and carefully propped up, and then began the painful march back as fast as possible.

On their arrival at the gold mines he was taken direct to the hospital; the doctor dressed his wounds, and administered all that medical skill and kindness prompted. His patient survived, but long remained unconscious of everything around him. After more than two months had elapsed, a slight improvement took place, and his reason appeared to be restored. 8. His first question was about the bear, and then he referred to his own defeat. He spoke of nothing else, and was constantly asking for his rifle to go and kill 'Michael Ivanovitch'<sup>2</sup> (the bear). The medical men thought his mind seriously affected. As he gained strength there arose in him so great a desire to have another combat with his powerful and ferocious enemy, that it was considered necessary to place him under some restraint.

9. The summer had passed over, and autumn had arrived; the frost had scorched the foliage, changing it into golden and crimson hues; and, as it was now thought the poor lunatic had forgotten his adventure, less vigilance was

exerc  
lost,  
his co  
young  
ammu  
of bla  
armed  
witho  
lost to  
Wh  
were s  
return  
during  
day he  
huge k  
exclain  
was a  
which  
could n  
tion wa  
again  
before

1. Al  
Siberia,  
gold mov  
lead—th

2. Mi  
names to  
frequent  
Russian,  
Michael,  
are given  
boy is ca  
Michael 1

exercised towards him. The opportunity was not lost, for he secretly left the hospital and started off for his cottage. All the family being absent, except some young children, he was enabled to secure his rifle and ammunition, and provide himself with an axe and a loaf of black bread, which he stowed in his wallet. 10. Thus armed and provisioned, he left the village in the evening without being seen, except by the children, and was soon lost to them in the forest.

When it was discovered that he had escaped, people were sent out in various directions to seek him, but they returned without success. More than a week passed over, during which nothing had been heard of him, when one day he walked into the hospital, carrying the skin of a huge black bear on his shoulders, and throwing it down, exclaimed, 'I told you I would have him!' 11. This man was a fine old hunter; it was not a spirit of revenge which prompted him to this daring act; the fact was, he could not brook the idea of a defeat. Now his reputation was re-established, he was happy; his health was again restored; nor was this the last bear that fell before his deadly rifle.

*Atkinson.*

NOTES.

1. **Altai Mountains.**—A high range in Asiatic Russia or Siberia, to the north of Chinese Tartary. The name means *gold mountain*; and the range is rich in gold, silver, copper, and lead—the mines of which are worked by the Russians.

2. **Michael Ivanovitch.**—Hunters are in the habit of giving names to those wild animals they happen to 'know,' and have frequently tried to ensnare. The hunter in this case was a Russian, and so he gave him a Russian name. The name means *Michael, the son of Ivan (or John)*. This is the usual way names are given in Russia, where surnames are still unknown. Thus a boy is called *Peter Alexandrovitch (son of Alexander)*; another *Michael Petrovitch (son of Peter)*, and so on.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short composition on 'The Wounded Hunter' from the following heads: (1) Is struck down by a bear. (2) Companion runs away. (3) Is dragged by the bear to his larder. (4) Is found after a long search by his friends. (5) Two months in hospital. (6) Disappears for a week. (7) Returns with the skin.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) Fearful encounters with these animals have taken place. (2) The hunter was held in great repute for his daring and skill. (3) The second hunter reserved his shot. (4) It was too late to make any effort in his behalf. (5) There still remained ample evidence of the struggle. (6) The doctor administered all that skill and kindness prompted. (7) Less vigilance was exercised towards him. (8) He could not brook the idea of a defeat.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: They came upon his track, quite fresh in the long, dewy grass.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from section 3 all the words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the way in which they are used—such as *fire, part, wound, &c.*

6. Make eight sentences in which the first four words are used alternately as nouns and as verbs.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Acquaintance; distance; assailant; ascent; evidence; insensibility; provision; exclamation; and pursuit.*

8. Carefully distinguish between the endings of the following words:

|         |         |         |        |           |            |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|-----------|------------|
| Succeed | Secede  | Supreme | Esteem | Serene    | Marine     |
| Proceed | Precede | Extreme | Redeem | Convene   | Magazine   |
| Exceed  | Recede  |         |        | Intervene | Tambourine |

9. Write down all the words you know which relate to *hunting*, with their meanings.



## TEMPERANCE, OR THE CHEAP PHYSICIAN.

Begulle, deceive or cheat age  
into believing that it is still  
young.  
Fable, story.

Reverend snow, the white hair  
that accompanies age.

In sum, to sum up, or to give the  
result of the whole matter.

1. Hark, hither, reader! wilt thou see  
Nature her own physician be?  
Wilt see a man all his own wealth,  
His own music, his own health;  
A man whose sober soul can tell  
How to wear her garments well;  
Her garments that upon her sit,  
As garments should do, close and fit—  
A well-clothed soul that's not oppressed  
Nor choked with what she should be dressed:  
A soul sheathed in a crystal shrine,  
Through which all her bright features shine;  
As when a piece of wanton lawn,  
A thin aërial veil, is drawn  
O'er beauty's face, seeming to hide,  
More sweetly shews the blushing bride—  
A soul, whose intellectual beams  
No mists do mask, no lazy steams—  
A happy soul, that all the way  
To heaven hath a summer's day?
2. Wouldst see a man whose well-warmed blood  
Bathes him in a genuine flood?  
A man whose tuned humours be  
A seat of rarest harmony?  
Wouldst see blithe looks, fresh cheeks, beguile  
Age? Wouldst see December smile?  
Wouldst see nests of new roses grow  
In a bed of reverend snow?

Warm thoughts, free spirits, flattering  
 Winter's self into a spring?  
 3. In sum, wouldst see a man that can  
 Live to be old, and still a man?  
 Whose latest and most leaden hours  
 Fall with soft wings, stuck with soft flowers;  
 And when life's sweet fable ends,  
 Soul and body part like friends;  
 No quarrels, murmurs, no delay;  
 A kiss, a sigh, and so away.  
 This rare one, reader, wouldst thou see?  
 Hark, hither! and thyself be he.

*Crashaw.*

DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1.—Line 3: Emphasis on *all* and *own*; not on *his*.  
 Line 7: No accent on *upon*. Line 9: Emphasis on *oppressed*.  
 Line 13: No accent on *when*, but hasten on to *is drawn*. VERSE  
 3.—Line 2: Avoid accent on *to*, and make *to-be-old* one word.  
 Line 4: Avoid accent on *with*; emphasis on *soft*. Line 5: No  
 accent upon *when*.

ROBERT BRUCE VICTORIOUS.

|                                                                                                                 |                                                                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Basinet</b> , helmet, headpiece.                                                                             | <b>Enjoin</b> , to order with authority.                            |
| <b>Couched</b> , bent down for attack.                                                                          | <b>Embalm</b> , to preserve from decay<br>by sweet-smelling drugs.  |
| <b>Mass</b> , a Roman Catholic ser-<br>vice.                                                                    | <b>Sepulchre</b> , tomb.                                            |
| <b>Crucifix</b> , a figure of Christ on<br>the Cross.                                                           | <b>Achieve</b> , to perform.                                        |
| <b>Van</b> , the front.                                                                                         | <b>Enterprise</b> , attempt, under-<br>taking.                      |
| <b>Lour</b> , look dark.                                                                                        | <b>Loyal</b> , obedient, faithful.                                  |
| <b>Galled</b> , annoyed.                                                                                        | <b>Casket</b> , a little <i>case</i> or case for<br>holding jewels. |
| <b>Faalty</b> , the oath to be true to<br>their king which all knights<br>took (Lat. <i>fidelitas</i> , faith). | <b>Destination</b> , place to which one<br>is going.                |
|                                                                                                                 | <b>Liege</b> , lord.                                                |

1. Bruce came back to Scotland with renewed hope  
 and courage, and now his fortunes were entirely changed.

He d  
 battle  
 over  
 he wa  
 High  
 in his  
 disting  
 body o  
 riding  
 Harry  
 horse,  
 2. Bru  
 among  
 in his p  
 he cam  
 a blow  
 to the  
 seen by  
 it dispi  
 lords fo  
 but grun  
 3. It  
 as being  
 the Eng  
 merry.  
 stood lo  
 after sa  
 crucifix,  
 this, the  
 said Sir  
 English  
 knight a  
 draw the



He defeated the English whenever he met them, and the battle of Bannockburn \* made him completely victorious over his enemies. Before this great fight commenced, he was riding along in front of his army on a small Highland pony, encouraging his men with a battle-axe in his hand. On his basinet he wore a small crown, distinguishing him from his knights. When the main body of the English came up, seeing the Scottish king riding along in this manner, an English knight, Sir Harry de Bohun, armed at all points, set spurs to his horse, and, with his spear couched, galloped against him.

2. Bruce, seeing him coming, instead of withdrawing among his own men, prepared for attack; and reining in his pony, so as to cause the knight to miss him when he came on, he stood up in the stirrups, and dealt such a blow with his battle-axe that the skull, down almost to the neck, was cleft through the helmet. This feat, seen by both armies, encouraged the one as much as it dispirited the other. Bruce, when reproached by his lords for exposing himself so unnecessarily, did nothing but grumble that he had broken the shaft of his battle-axe.

3. It was a sleepless night on both sides. The Scotch, as being the weaker, spent it in prayers and devotion; the English, as being the stronger, in drinking and making merry. In the gray of the morning the two armies stood looking at each other. The Abbot of Inchaffray, after saying mass, walked along barefoot, holding a crucifix, in front of the Scotch, who all knelt. Seeing this, the English cried out, 'They ask mercy.' 'Yes,' said Sir Ingram de Umfraville, a Scottish knight in the English army, 'but it is from Heaven.' 4. The same knight advised the king to pretend to retreat, so as to draw the Scotch out of their well-chosen position; but

\* A mile or two from Stirling.

his advice was not taken. The signal was given, and the English van moved on to the attack.

' Now 's the day, and now 's the hour ;  
See the front of battle lour ;  
See approach proud Edward 's power—  
Chains and slavery !'

Immovably firm, the Lion standard \* floating proudly on



Spearmen—Fourteenth Century.

them, while he himself plunged into the fight with

\* The national flag of Scotland—a red lion on a golden ground.

† The king's brother.

a rising-ground, fixed in a large earthfast stone, the Scottish battalions waited the onset. 5. Edward Bruce's † wing was the first attacked; but in a short time all the three bodies were engaged, and there were three battles going on together. Seeing his men severely galled by the English archers, Bruce detached a body of five hundred cavalry, under Sir Robert Keith, to ride in among these and disperse

his r  
of l  
in f  
seize  
turne  
Scott  
safet  
to le  
when  
7. Th  
gaini  
wave  
Engli  
they  
rocks  
Forth  
the E  
but, b  
did no  
miles  
for E  
8. V  
sent f  
devoti  
comm  
fully l  
to obe  
he att  
brave  
near, a  
of his  
better  
in my

his reserve. The battle was now a hand-to-hand fight of 100,000 against 30,000 men. c. Fortune turned in favour of the weaker party. The English were seized with a panic fear, and their confusion was turned into a flight. It appears that a group of Scottish baggage-carriers and camp-followers, placed for safety behind the brow of the hill, becoming anxious to learn the fate of the battle, crawled to the top of it, whence they could look down on the field beneath. 7. The moment they saw that their countrymen were gaining the day, they set up a prolonged shout and waved their cloaks, which, giving an impression to the English that there was a new army coming to the attack, they turned their backs and fled. Many crowded to the rocks near Stirling, and many were drowned in the Forth. Edward, the English king, led off the field by the Earl of Pembroke, fled in the direction of Linlithgow; but, being pursued by Douglas and sixty horsemen, he did not rest till he arrived at Dunbar, a distance of sixty miles from the field of battle, and there he took shipping for England.

8. When King Robert felt that his end drew near, he sent for those barons and lords of his kingdom in whose devotion he had the greatest confidence, and affectionately commanded them, on their fealty, that they should faithfully keep his kingdom for David, his son, promising to obey him, and place the crown upon his head when he attained the full age; after which, he beckoned that brave and gentle knight, Sir James Douglas,\* to come near, and thus addressed him in presence of the rest of his courtiers: 'Sir James, my dear friend, few know better than yourself the great toil and suffering which, in my day, I have undergone for the maintenance of

\* The 'good Sir James.'

the rights of this kingdom; and when all went hardest against me, I made a vow, which it now deeply grieves me *not* to have accomplished: I then vowed to God, that, if it were His sovereign pleasure to permit me to see an end of my wars, and to establish me in peace and security in the government of this kingdom, I would then proceed to the Holy Land, and carry on war against the enemies of my Lord and Saviour, to the best and utmost of my power. 9. Never hath my heart ceased to bend earnestly to this purpose; but it hath pleased our Lord to deny me my wishes, for I have had my hands full in my days, and, at the last, you see me taken with this grievous sickness, so that I have nothing to do but to die. Since, therefore, this poor frail body cannot go thither and accomplish that which my heart hath so much desired, I have resolved to send my heart there, in place of my body, to fulfil my vow; and because, in my whole kingdom, I know not any knight more hardy than yourself, or more thoroughly furnished with all those knightly qualities requisite for the accomplishment of this vow, it is my earnest request to thee, my beloved and tried friend, that, for the love you bear me, you will, instead of myself, undertake this voyage, and acquit my soul of its debt to my Saviour; for, believe me, I hold this opinion of your truth and nobleness, that whatever you once undertake you will not rest till you successfully accomplish; and thus shall I die in peace, if you will do all that I shall enjoin you. 10. It is my desire, then, that as soon as I am dead you take the heart out of my body, and cause it to be embalmed, and spare not to take as much of my treasure as appears sufficient for the expenses of your journey, both for yourself and your companions; and that you carry my heart along with you, and place it in the holy

sepul  
thithe  
course  
both  
ever  
have  
Robert  
11.  
and, w  
'Ah,  
I than  
permit  
and p  
best o  
comm  
worthy  
friend,  
you pr  
and lo  
promis  
owe to  
12. 'No  
in pea  
valiant  
for me  
and, no  
life. H  
his age.  
the hea  
but, be  
the cask  
back to

sepulchre of our Lord, since this poor body cannot go thither. And I do moreover command, that in the course of your journey you keep up that royal state both for yourself and your companions, that into whatever lands or cities you may come, all may know you have in charge to bear beyond seas the heart of King Robert of Scotland.'

11. At these words, all who stood by began to weep; and, when Sir James himself was able to reply, he said, 'Ah, most gentle and noble king, a thousand times do I thank you for the great honour you have done me in permitting me to be the keeper and bearer of so great and precious a treasure. Most willingly, and, to the best of my power, most faithfully shall I obey your commands, although I do truly think myself little worthy to achieve so high an enterprise.' 'My dear friend,' said the king, 'I heartily thank you, provided you promise to do my bidding, on the word of a true and loyal knight.' 'Undoubtedly, my liege, I do promise so,' replied Douglas, 'by the faith which I owe to God, and to the order to which I belong.'

12. 'Now, praise be to God,' said the king, 'I shall die in peace, since I am assured that the best and most valiant knight in my kingdom hath promised to achieve for me that which I myself never could accomplish: and, not long after, this noble monarch departed this life. He died June 7, 1329, in the fifty-fifth year of his age. Douglas set out on his solemn expedition with the heart of the deceased sovereign in a silver casket; but, being killed in Spain fighting with the Moors,\* the casket never reached its destination, and was brought back to Scotland, and buried at Melrose. The body of

\* The Moors were at this time masters of Spain.

the royal Bruce, after being embalmed, was buried in the Abbey Church of Dunfermline.\*

*Sir Walter Scott.*

SUMMARY.

1. The day before the battle of Bannockburn, Bruce rode out on a small Highland pony, and was attacked by Sir Harry de Bohun, whom he killed with a blow of his battle-axe. 2. The Scotch spent the night in prayer, the English in drinking. 3. The standard of the Lion was fastened in a stone. 4. The English van opened the attack. 5. The battle became a hand-to-hand fight between the 100,000 Englishmen and the 30,000 Scotchmen. 6. Panic seized the English, and they fled. 7. The camp-followers, from the Gillies' Hill, now set up a shout, and the fight became a rout. 8. Edward II. was led off the field by the Earl of Pembroke, and galloped to Dunbar. 9. When King Robert Bruce was dying, he requested Sir James (or Lord James) Douglas to carry his heart to the Holy Land, because he had not been able to go there himself. 10. Sir James promised to do so. 11. Bruce died June 7, 1329, at the age of fifty-four. 12. His heart was placed in a silver casket. 13. Douglas was killed in Spain, fighting with the Moors, and the casket was brought back to Scotland and buried at Melrose. 14. The body of Bruce was embalmed, and buried in Dunfermline Abbey. (The battle of Bannockburn was fought on June 24, 1314.)

COMPOSITION.—Give an account of the battle of Bannockburn from the following heads: 1. Scotch posted with a hill behind them and deep concealed pits in front. 2. Flag waving. 3. English advance. 4. Edward Bruce's division attacked. 5. Three battles. 6. English archers. 7. Sir Robert Keith's cavalry. 8. Appearance of the baggage-carriers. 9. Flight of the English.

EXERCISES.—1. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Bruce begged Sir James Douglas to carry his heart to Jerusalem.

2. Analyse the above sentence.

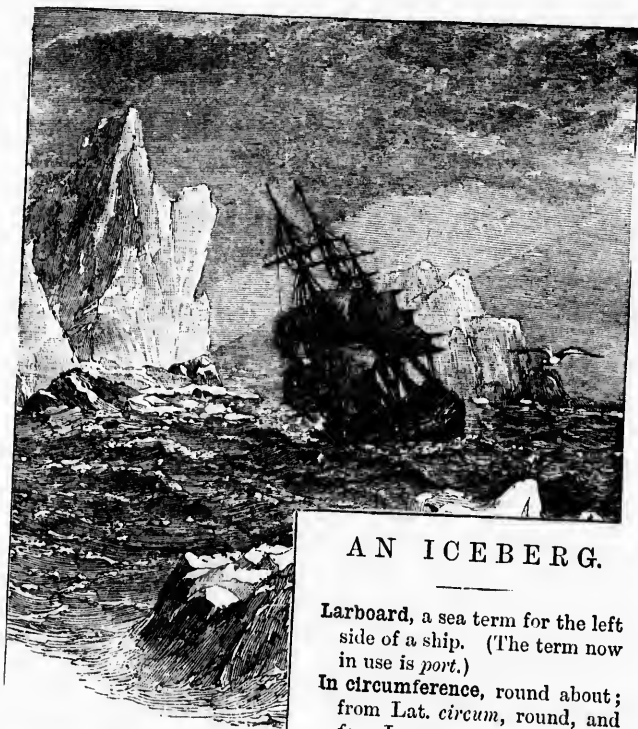
3. Select from section 12 words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the way they are used.

4. Give in the same way as in Exercise 9, page 21—but write them in columns, with their meanings—the words which relate to, or are compounds of, *battle* and *king*.

\* In Fife.

Cavities,  
carus,  
Leeward,  
wind bl

1. At  
through  
scuttle,  
sight we  
'Whe  
up. 'O  
in the c



### AN ICEBERG.

**Larboard**, a sea term for the left side of a ship. (The term now in use is *port*.)

**In circumference**, round about; from Lat. *circum*, round, and *fero*, I carry.

**Transparent**, that can be seen through; from Lat. *trans*, through, and *parco*, I appear.

**Cavities**, hollows; from Lat. *cavus*, hollow.

**Leeward**, the side to which the wind blows.

1. At twelve o'clock we went below, and had just got through dinner, when the cook put his head down the scuttle, and told us to come on deck and see the finest sight we had ever seen.

'Where away, cook?' asked the first man who went up. 'On the larboard bow.' And there lay, floating in the ocean several miles off, an immense irregular

mass, its top and points covered with snow, and its centre of a deep indigo colour. This was an iceberg, one of the largest size, as one of our men said who had been in the Northern Ocean.

2. As far as the eye could reach, the sea in every direction was of a deep blue colour, the waves running high and fresh, and sparkling in the light; and in the midst lay this immense mountain-island, its cavities and valleys thrown into deep shade, and its points and pinnacles glittering in the sun.

All hands were soon on deck looking at it, and admiring in various ways its beauty and grandeur; but no description can give any idea of the strangeness, splendour, and real sublimity of the sight.

3. Its great size—for it must have been from two to three miles in circumference, and several hundred feet in height; its slow motion, as its base rose and sank in the water, and its high points nodded against the clouds; the dashing of the waves upon it, which, breaking high with foam, covered its base with a white crust; the thundering sound of the cracking of the mass, and the breaking and tumbling down of huge pieces, together with its nearness and approach, which added a slight element of fear—all combined to give it the character of true sublimity.

4. The main body of the mass was, as I have said, of an indigo colour; its base was crusted with frozen foam; and, as it grew thin and transparent towards the edges and top, its colour shaded off from a deep blue to the whiteness of snow. It seemed to be drifting slowly towards the north, so that we kept away and avoided it.

5. It was in sight all the afternoon; and, as we got to leeward of it the wind died away, so that we lay-to quite near it for the greater part of the night. Unfor-

tuna  
and  
the s  
the s  
6.  
which  
the w  
down  
the se  
and a



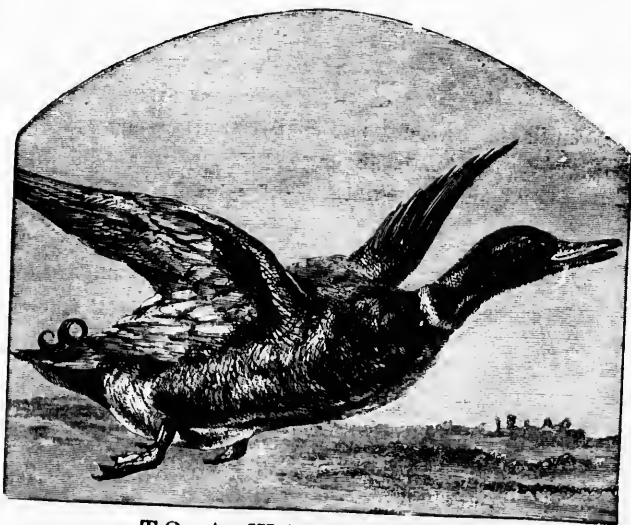
Whil  
Far,



unately there was no moon; but it was a clear night, and we could plainly mark the long, regular heaving of the stupendous mass, as its edges moved slowly against the stars.

6. Several times in our watch loud cracks were heard, which sounded as though they must have run through the whole length of the iceberg; and several pieces fell down with a thundering crash, plunging heavily into the sea. Towards morning a strong breeze sprang up; and at daylight it was out of sight.

*Dana.*



TO A WATERFOWL.

Whither, 'midst falling dew,  
While glow the heavens with the last steps of day,  
Far, through their rosy depths, dost thou pursue  
Thy solitary way?

Vainly 'the fowler's eye  
 Might mark thy distant flight to do thee wrong,  
 As, darkly painted on the crimson sky,  
 Thy figure floats along.

Seekest thou the plashy brink  
 Of weedy lake, or marge of river wide,  
 Or where the rocking billows rise and sink  
 On the chafed ocean side?

There is a Power whose care  
 Teaches thy way along that pathless coast—  
 The desert and illimitable air—  
 Lone wandering, but not lost.

All day thy wings have fanned,  
 At that far height, the cold thin atmosphere;  
 Yet stoop not, weary, to the welcome land,  
 Though the dark night is near.

And soon that toil shall end,  
 Soon shalt thou find a summer home, and rest,  
 And scream among thy fellows; reeds shall bend  
 Soon o'er thy sheltered nest.

Thou'rt gone, the abyss of heaven  
 Hath swallowed up thy form; yet on my heart  
 Deeply hath sunk the lesson thou hast given,  
 And shall not soon depart.

He who, from zone to zone,  
 Guides through the boundless sky thy certain flight,  
 In the long way that I must tread alone,  
 Will lead my steps aright.

*W. C. Bryant.*

## METHOD AND ITS ADVANTAGES.

**Novelty**, newness; from Lat. *novus*, new.

**Triviality**, commonness and trifling character; from Lat. *trivium*, a place where three ways meet. Such a spot was likely to be a meeting-place for idlers and people who exchange gossip.

**Necessitate**, make necessary.

**Unpremeditated**, not thought of beforehand; from Lat. *pre*, before, and *meditor*, I meditate.

**Hazardous**, full of risk.

**Desultory**, jumping from subject to subject. In the Roman circus the *desultor* leaped from horse to horse while they were galloping.

**Rectification**, putting or making right; from Lat. *rectus*, right, and *facio*, I make.

**Superfluous**, needlessly much; from Lat. *super*, over, and *fluo*, I flow.

**Lapse**, passing away; from Lat. *labor* (*lapsus*), I slip away.

1. What is that which first strikes us, and strikes us at once, in a man of education, and which, among educated men, so instantly distinguishes the man of superior mind, that (as was observed with eminent propriety of the late Edmund Burke) 'we cannot stand under the same archway during a shower of rain without finding him out?' Not the weight or novelty of his remarks; not any unusual interest of facts communicated by him; for we may suppose both the one and the other precluded by the shortness of our intercourse, and the triviality of the subjects. 2. The difference will be impressed and felt, though the conversation should be confined to the state of the weather or the pavements. Still less will it arise from any peculiarity in his words and phrases; for if he be, as we now assume, a well-educated man, as well as a man of superior powers, he will not fail to follow the golden rule of Julius Cæsar, and, unless where new things necessitate new terms, he will avoid an unusual word as a rock. It must have been among the earliest lessons of his youth that the

wrong,

re;  
d,

rest,  
bend

heart  
en,

flight,

Bryant.

breach of this precept, at all times hazardous, becomes ridiculous in the topics of ordinary conversation. 3. There remains but one other point of distinction possible; and this must be, and in fact is, the true cause of the impression made on us. It is the unpremeditated and evidently habitual *arrangement* of his words, grounded on the habit of foreseeing, in each integral part, or (more plainly) in every sentence, the whole that he then intends to communicate. However irregular and desultory his talk, there is method in the fragments.

4. Listen, on the other hand, to an ignorant man, though perhaps shrewd and able in his particular calling, whether he be describing or relating. We immediately perceive that his memory alone is called into action, and that the objects and events recur in the narration in the same order, and with the same accompaniments, however accidental or impertinent, as they had first occurred to the narrator. 5. The necessity of taking breath, the efforts of recollection, and the abrupt rectification of its failures, produce all his pauses, and, with the exception of the '*and then,*' the '*and there,*' the '*says I,*' and the still less significant '*and so,*' they constitute likewise all his connectives. Our discussion, however, is confined to method, as employed in the formation of the understanding and in the constructions of science and of literature. It would indeed be superfluous to attempt a proof of its importance in the business and economy of active or domestic life. 6. From the cotten's hearth, or the workshop of the artisan, to the palace or the arsenal, the first merit, that which admits neither substitute nor equivalent, is, that *everything is in its place*. Where this charm is wanting, every other merit either loses its name, or becomes an additional ground of

accu  
poss  
7. T  
larit  
inde  
othe  
man  
does  
char  
are c  
call i  
disti  
consc  
soul  
away  
own  
ablen  
serva  
ised,  
that  
as the  
perfor  
extan

EXE  
tages o  
of a pla  
import  
phrases  
come i  
done b  
2. E  
is precl  
is precl  
necessi

accusation and regret. Of one by whom it is eminently possessed, we say, proverbially, he is like clockwork. The resemblance extends beyond the point of regularity, and yet falls short of the truth. Both do, indeed, at once divide and announce the silent and otherwise indistinguishable lapse of time. But the man of methodical industry and honourable pursuits does more: he realises its ideal divisions, and gives a character and individuality to its moments. If the idle are described as killing time, he may be justly said to call it into life and moral being, while he makes it the distinct object not only of the consciousness, but of the conscience. He organises the hours, and gives them a soul; and that, the very essence of which is to fleet away, and evermore *to have been*, he takes up into his own permanence, and communicates to it the imperishableness of a spiritual nature. Of the good and faithful servant whose energies, thus directed, are thus methodised, it is less truly affirmed that he lives in time than that time lives in him. His days, months, and years, as the stops and punctual marks in the records of duties performed, will survive the wreck of worlds, and remain extant when time itself shall be no more.

*S. T. Coleridge.*

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short composition on 'The Advantages of Method' from the following heads: (1) The importance of a place for everything, and everything for its place. (2) The importance of a time for everything. (3) The right words and phrases should be chosen. (4) These words and phrases should come in the right order. (5) Thus more and better work is done by the artist or labourer.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) The one is precluded by the shortness of our intercourse. (2) The other is precluded by the triviality of the subjects. (3) New things necessitate new terms. (4) The unpremeditated arrangement

of his words. (5) The rectification of failures. (6) His energies are methodised.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: We cannot stand under the same archway during a shower of rain without finding him out.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 1 and 2 all the words which may be used both as nouns and as verbs, according to the function in which they are employed, as *man*, *rain*, &c.

6. Write eight sentences in each of which the first four words in the above are used alternately as nouns and as verbs.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives which are connected with the following nouns: *Education*; *weight*; *novelty*; *triviality*; *conversation*; *addition*; *description*; *narrator*; *resemblance*; *punctuality*; *honour*; *consciousness*; *performance*.

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words:

|         |        |           |           |
|---------|--------|-----------|-----------|
| Collar  | Manger | Conductor | Saltpetre |
| Cellar  | Paper  | Senator   | Manœuvre  |
| Pillar  | Brier  | Traitor   | Acre      |
| Vulgar  | Eager  | Ancestor  | Lucre     |
| Vinegar | Waiter | Aggressor | Massacre  |

9. Write down all the words you can think of that relate to *Method* and *Order*.

## VIRTUE.

**His** for *its*. This poem was written in the 16th century; and the word *its* did not come into general use till the end of the 17th.

**Twain**, two. This word is an Old English form of *two*. Other forms are *twin* and *tween* (in *between*), and also *twen* in *twenty*. Cognates are: *twine*, *twist*, *twirl*; and *twig*.

**Subtle**, very fine.

**Drizzling**, falling in very small drops. The word is a diminutive of *drip*. Another diminutive is *dribble*.

**Fowler**, a man who catches birds or *fowls*. (*Fowl* or *fugol* was the Old English for *bird*.)

**Consume**, waste away.

**Betides**, happens in time. The word *tide* is the Old English word for *time*. Cognate: *Tidings*.

1. The sturdy rock, for all his strength,  
By raging seas is rent in twain ;  
The marble stone is pierced at length  
With little drops of drizzling rain ;  
The ox doth yield unto the yoke ;  
The steel obey'th the hammer stroke.
2. The stately stag, that seems so stout,  
By yelping hounds at bay is set ;  
The swiftest bird that flies about  
Is caught at length in fowler's net ;  
The greatest fish in deepest brook  
Is soon deceived with subtle hook.
3. Yea! man himself, unto whose will  
All things are bounden to obey,  
For all his wit and worthy skill  
Doth fade at length, and fall away :  
There is *no* thing but time doth waste—  
The heavens, the earth consume at last.
4. But virtue sits triumphing still  
Upon the throne of glorious fame ;  
Though spiteful death man's body kill,  
Yet hurts he not his virtuous name.  
By life or death, whatso betides,  
The state of virtue never slides.

*Anonymous.*

CAUTIONS.—VERSE 3.—Line 1: Avoid the verse-accent on *unto*, and hasten on to *all things*. Line 2: Avoid the verse-accent on *things*. VERSE 4.—Line 2: Avoid the verse-accent on *upon*, and hasten on to *fame*. Line 4: The emphatic word is *yet*.

## THE ORIGIN OF RIVERS.

**Percolated**, worked its way through, drop by drop (Lat. *percolare*, to strain through).

**Orifice**, opening (Lat. *orificium*, a small opening, from *os*, a mouth, and *facio*, I make).

**Opaque**, not to be seen through—the opposite of *transparent* (Lat. *opacus*, dark).

**Condensed**, made closer, thicker, and hence smaller. The word

is chiefly applied to the change of *vapour* or *steam* into drops of water (Lat. *densus*, thick).

**Re-converted**, changed back again; from Lat. *re*, back, and *convertio*, I turn. Cognates: *Convert*, *conversion*, *revert*, *reverse*: *verse* (the speech that is turned back at the end of a line), *version*.

1. Let us trace a river to its source. Beginning where it empties itself into the sea, and following it backwards, we find it from time to time joined by tributaries which swell its waters. The river of course becomes smaller as these tributaries are passed. 2. It shrinks first to a brook, then to a stream; this again divides itself into a number of smaller streamlets, ending in mere threads of water. These constitute the source of the river, and are usually found among hills.

Thus, the Severn has its source in the Welsh mountains; the Thames in the Cotswold Hills; the Missouri in the Rocky Mountains; and the Amazon in the Andes of Peru.

3. But it is quite plain that we have not yet reached the real beginning of the rivers. Whence do the earliest streams derive their water? A brief residence among the mountains would prove to you that they are fed by rains. In dry weather you would find the streams feeble, sometimes, indeed, quite dried up. In wet weather you would see them foaming torrents. 4. In general these streams lose themselves as little threads of water upon the hill-sides; but sometimes you may

trac  
assu  
whi  
whi  
com  
5.  
that  
you  
a clo  
B  
acqu  
at o  
stea  
cloud  
sharp  
dista  
tion  
betw  
space  
What  
trans  
visibl  
7. ]  
With  
visibl  
would  
When  
hot fu  
shrink  
of wa  
kind c  
the air  
9. W  
locom



trace a river to a definite spring. But you very soon assure yourself that such springs are also fed by rain, which has percolated through the rocks or soil, and which, through some orifice that it has found or formed, comes to the light of day.

5. But we cannot end here. Whence comes the rain that forms the mountain streams? Observation enables you to answer the question. Rain does not come from a clear sky. It comes from clouds.

But what are clouds? Is there nothing you are acquainted with which they resemble? You discover at once a likeness between them and the condensed steam of a locomotive. At every puff of the engine a cloud is projected into the air. 6. Watch the cloud sharply. You notice that it first forms at a little distance from the top of the funnel. Give close attention and you will sometimes see a perfectly clear space between the funnel and the cloud. Through that clear space the thing which makes the cloud must pass. What, then, is this thing which at one moment is transparent and invisible, and at the next moment visible as a dense opaque cloud?

7. It is the *steam* or *vapour of water* from the boiler. Within the boiler this steam is transparent and invisible; but to keep it in this invisible state a heat would be required as great as that within the boiler. When the vapour mingles with the cold air above the hot funnel, it ceases to be vapour. 8. Every bit of steam shrinks, when chilled, to a much more minute particle of water. The liquid particles thus produced form a kind of *water dust* of exceeding fineness, which floats in the air, and is called a *cloud*.

9. Watch the cloud-banner from the funnel of a running locomotive: you see it growing gradually less dense. It

finally melts away altogether, and, if you continue your observations, you will not fail to notice that the speed of its disappearance depends on the character of the day. In moist weather the cloud hangs long and lazily in the air; in dry weather it is rapidly licked up.

10. What has become of it? It has been re-converted into true invisible vapour. The *drier* the air, and the *hotter* the air, the greater is the amount of cloud which can be thus dissolved in it.

Make the lid of a kettle air-tight, and permit the steam to issue from the pipe; a cloud is formed in all respects similar to that which issues from the funnel of the locomotive. 11. To produce the cloud, in the case of the locomotive and the kettle, *heat* is necessary. By heating the water we first convert it into steam, and then by chilling the steam we convert it into cloud. Is there any fire in nature which produces the clouds of our atmosphere? There is—the fire of the sun.

Thus, by tracing a river backwards from its end to its real beginning, we come at length to the sun.

*Lyndall.*

**EXERCISES.**—1. Write a short paper on 'The Origin of Rivers' from the following heads: (1) Trace a river from mouth to source. (2) Rain to supply it comes from clouds. (3) Clouds may be compared to steam from a locomotive. (4) Description of steam from funnel of an engine. (5) Heat is necessary to produce clouds. (6) Steps: *Sun; evaporation; clouds; condensation; rain; river; sea; evaporation by sun*, and back again.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) A brief residence among the mountains. (2) The rain which has percolated through the soil. (3) It comes back to the light of day through some orifice. (4) Rain is condensed steam. (5) The cloud has been re-converted into invisible vapour.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: **In moist weather the cloud hangs long and lazily in the air.**

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5.  
used  
whic  
6.  
in th  
7.  
noun  
ance,  
8.

9.

Vassal  
Dais,  
chief  
Tolera  
Strain  
Inspid  
Gourds  
Agates  
Jack, a

1. L  
on, an  
his gu  
the ha  
ground  
lord an  
coveri  
silk.  
vants  
widene

5. Select from sections 7 and 8 all the words which may be used both as nouns and as verbs, according to the function in which they are employed, such as *notice*, *cloud*, &c.

6. Write eight sentences in each of which the first four words in the above are used alternately as nouns and as verbs.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives connected with the following nouns: *Division*; *beginning*; *residence*; *observation*; *acquaintance*; *transparency*; *disappearance*; *conversion*; *similarity*.

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words:

|          |          |        |
|----------|----------|--------|
| Saucy    | Daisy    | Lazy   |
| Spicy    | Rosy     | Crazy  |
| Delicacy | Courtesy | Frenzy |
| Legacy   | Heresy   | Dizzy  |

9. Write down all the words you know that relate to a *river*.

## A DINNER IN AN OLD MANOR-HOUSE.

(TIME OF EDWARD I.)

**Vassals**, servants and tenants.

**Dais**, a raised floor, where the chief table was placed.

**Tolerably**, moderately.

**Strained**, passed through a filter.

**Inspidity**, tastelessness.

**Gourds**, kinds of pumpkins.

**Agates**, precious pebbles.

**Jack**, a kind of beer-jug.

**Principal**, chief (Lat. *princeps*, chief).

**Great bulk**, the greater part.

**Assemblage**, company gathered together.

**Repast**, meal (Lat. *pasco*, I feed).

**Spit**, large iron skewer.

**Trencher**, wooden plate; from

Fr. *trancher*, to cut.

1. Let us imagine ourselves in one of them, as lookers on, and that we see a lord sitting down to dinner with his guests and his vassals. All are gathered together in the hall. At the upper end, on the dais, where the ground is somewhat raised and boarded over, sit the lord and his chief guests. 2. They are protected by a covering, which, as our host is a great man, is made of silk. Below, in 'the marsh,' sit the vassals, farm-servants and others. The door, which has lately been widened to let in carts more easily, is closed, to keep out

the wind, a dim light is let in through the canvas windows, and 'the marsh' is made tolerably dry and clean by litter and rushes. 3. Fish in plenty is served up; cels and pike, and even whale, grampus, porpoise, and 'seawolves,' may be had. There is plenty of beef, and plenty of mutton, but it is nearly all salted; and the bread is rather black. Vegetables are plentiful enough; there are no potatoes, but there are peas, beans, onions, garlic and leeks, pot herbs and sweet herbs. 4. There is fruit enough, though not equal to what we now have. There are pears, and particularly one sort, grown by the monks of Wardon, in Bedfordshire, which are made into Wardon pies. There are apples, particularly of the sort called 'costard.' These cost 1s. per 100, or about 12s. of our money. Peaches and cherries, and mulberries too, are not wanting. 5. If we suppose the entertainment to be given in London, the garden of the Earl of Lincoln, in Holborn, would be ready to furnish a good supply, for the fruit out of it was sold for above £100 of our money in one year alone. There is plenty of claret, or *clairrets*—so called because the wine was sweetened with honey, and afterwards strained till it became clear—from our possessions in Gascony, and some other sort of sherry from Spain, for those who sit on the daïs; and beer and cider enough for those who sit in 'the marsh.' 6. But the beer is made of a mixture of barley, wheat, and oats, without hops, which have not yet been 'found out.' The insipidity of the beer is taken off by spices. There is wine, too, made from English vineyards, but it must be sour stuff, and fit only for 'the marsh.' Nobody but the king has glass to drink out of, and he has none to spare for his friends; but he has cups made of coconuts, of gourds, of buffalo horns, and of beautiful agates for his principal guests. 7. The wooden bowl, the earthen

ju  
gr  
fir  
No  
rep  
sen  
pu  
of  
for  
bur

E  
Din  
on  
fish  
win  
serv  
2.  
insi  
jack  
3.  
the  
4.  
5.  
used  
whic  
6.  
in th  
7.  
foll  
insip  
8.  
9.  
dinn

jug, and the leathern jack serve well enough for the great bulk of the assemblage. The tables are pretty firm, for their legs are well stuck into the mud floor. Now that the guests are seated, and ready for their repast, up comes the meat on a spit, served round by the servants, and each man cuts off a bit with his knife, and puts it into his wooden bowl or on his trencher. Most of the people have wooden spoons, but nobody has a fork. The pitchers and jugs are made of earthenware, but the plates or dishes are all of wood.

*History of England, by William Longman.*

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short account of 'An Old English Dinner' from the following heads: (1) The lord and his guests on the dais; the vassals and servants in the marsh. (2) The fish. (3) The beef and vegetables. (4) The fruit. (5) The wine and beer. (6) The cups and bowls. (7) How the meat is served. (8) The spoons, jugs, and plates.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) The insipidity of the beer is taken off by spices. (2) The leathern jack serves well enough for the great bulk of the assemblage.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The legs of the tables are well stuck into the mud floor.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 5 and 6 all the words which may be used either as nouns or as verbs, according to the function in which they are employed, such as *cost, want, &c.*

6. Write eight sentences in each of which the first four words in the above shall be used alternately as nouns and as verbs.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives which are connected with the following nouns: *Imagination; dinner; entertainment; mixture; insipidity; assemblage.*

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words:

|          |            |          |         |
|----------|------------|----------|---------|
| Variety  | Anxiety    | Servant  | Recent  |
| Imagine  | Margin     | Wooden   | Villain |
| Society  | Civility   | Sweeten  | Basin   |
| Sobriety | Insipidity | Medicine | Muslin  |

9. Write down all the words you can remember that relate to *dinner.*

## TROPICAL SCENERY.

Piece, plot of ground.

Squatted, 'sat down' or settled  
without asking leave.

Salubrity, healthfulness.

Circumference, measurement  
round.

Obdurate, obstinate, and not to  
be easily got rid of.

Indigenous, native.

Parasites (vegetable), properly,  
plants such as the mistletoe,  
which have their roots in, and  
live on, other plants. The  
word is here used in a popular  
sense for a clinging plant, such  
as ivy.

Profusion, plenty.

1. There is scenery in Jamaica which almost equals that of Switzerland and the Tyrol;<sup>1</sup> and there is also, which is more essential, a temperature among the mountains<sup>2</sup> in which a European can live comfortably.

It is, of course, known that the sugar-cane is the chief production of Jamaica; but one may travel for days in the island and only see a cane piece here and there. By far the greater portion of the island is covered with wild wood and jungle—what is there called bush.

2. Through this, on an occasional favourable spot, and very frequently on the roadsides, one sees the gardens or provision-grounds of the negroes. These are spots of land cultivated by them, for which they either pay rent, or on which, as is quite as common, they have squatted without payment of any kind.

3. These provision-grounds are very picturesque. They are not filled, as a peasant's garden in England or in Ireland is filled, with potatoes and cabbages, or other vegetables similarly uninteresting in their growth; but contain cocoa-trees, bread-fruit trees, oranges, mangoes, limes, plantains, jack fruits, avocado pears, and a score of others, all of which are luxuriant trees, some of considerable size, and all of them of great beauty. 4. The



bread-fruit tree and the mango are especially lovely, and I know nothing prettier than a grove of oranges in Jamaica. In addition to this they always have the yam, which is with the negro somewhat as the potato is with the Irishman; only that the Irishman has not much else, whereas the negro generally has either fish or meat, and has also a score of other fruits besides the yam.

5. The yam, too, is picturesque in its growth. As with the potato, the root alone is eaten, but the upper part is

fostered and cared for as a creeper, so that the ground may be unencumbered by its thick tendrils. Support is provided for it as for grapes or peas. Then one sees also in these provision-grounds patches of coffee and arrow-root, and occasionally also patches of sugar-cane.

6. One of the most remarkable characteristics of Jamaica is the copiousness of its rivers. It is said that its original name, Xaymaca, signifies a country of streams; and it certainly is not undeserved. This copiousness, though it adds to the beauty, as no doubt it does also to its salubrity and fertility, adds something, too, to the difficulty of locomotion. Bridges have not been built, or, sad to say, have been allowed to go to destruction. One hears that this river or that river is 'down,' whereby it is signified that the waters are swollen; and some of the rivers when so down are certainly not easy of passage.

7. It was here that I first saw the full effect of tropical vegetation, and I shall never forget it. Perhaps the most graceful of all the woodland productions is the bamboo. It grows either in clusters, like clumps of trees in an English park, or, as is more usual when found in its indigenous state, in long rows by the river-sides. 8. The trunk of the bamboo is a huge hollow cane, bearing no leaves except at its head. One such cane alone would be uninteresting enough. But their great height, the peculiarly graceful curve of their growth, and the excessive thickness of the drooping foliage of hundreds of them clustered together, produce an effect which nothing can surpass.

9. The cotton-tree is almost as beautiful when standing alone. The trunk of this tree grows to a magnificent height, and with magnificent proportions: it is

fre  
the  
gre  
in  
hug  
sup  
tru  
me  
tre  
fro  
lux  
gro  
10  
con  
env  
the  
para  
obd  
seen  
sigh  
ence  
cotte  
dest  
may  
its m  
12.  
full  
then  
bran  
of a  
droop  
and s  
leave



frequently straight; and those which are most beautiful throw out no branches till they have reached a height greater than that of any ordinary tree with us. Nature, in order to sustain so large a mass, supplies it with huge spurs at the foot, which act as buttresses for its support, connecting the roots immediately with the trunk as much as twenty feet above the ground. I measured more than one, which, including the buttresses, were over thirty feet in circumference. Then from its head the branches break forth in most luxurious profusion, covering an enormous extent of ground with their shade.

10. But the most striking peculiarity of these trees consists in the parasite plants by which they are enveloped, and which hang from their branches down to the ground with tendrils of wonderful strength. These parasites are of various kinds, the fig being the most obdurate with its embraces. 11. It frequently may be seen that the original tree has departed wholly out of sight, and I should imagine almost wholly from existence; and then the very name is changed, and the cotton-tree is called a fig-tree. In others the process of destruction may be observed, and the interior trunk may be seen to be stayed in its growth and stunted in its measure by the creepers which surround it.

12. But it often happens that the tree has reached its full growth before the parasites have fallen on it, and then, in place of being strangled, it is adorned. Every branch is covered with wondrous growth—with plants of a thousand colours and a thousand sorts. Some droop with long and graceful tendrils from the boughs, and so touch the ground; while others hang in a ball of leaves and flowers, which swings for years.

*Trollope.*

## NOTES.

1. **Switzerland and the Tyrol.**—These two countries lie among the Alps, the latter being a part of the empire of Austria. They have, therefore, Alpine scenery—that is, lofty sharp-peaked mountains, covered with eternal snow, dark forests of pine, rapid grass-covered slopes, and quiet, deep lakes at their feet.

2. **Temperature among the mountains.**—It is well known that the thermometer falls one degree for every 300 feet of ascent from the level of the sea. Now, it will be found that all, or almost all, the land within the tropics is very mountainous. The highest mountains and plateaux in the world are within the Torrid Zone, with the exception of the Himalayas, which are very near it. Thus, within the tropics, it is possible to find every kind of temperature and climate and productions. And, as a consequence, it is plain that—from the fact that the land upon the surface of the globe is very high within the tropics, and slopes down to the level of the sea as it approaches the Arctic Circle—we have two sets of temperate and frigid zones, climates, and productions.

**COMPOSITION.**—Write a short paper on JAMAICA from the following heads: 1. The sugar-cane. 2. Negroes' gardens. 3. The rivers. 4. The bamboo and the cotton-tree. 5. Parasite plants.

**EXERCISES.**—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) The negroes have squatted upon them without payment of any kind. (2) The upper part of the yam is fostered as a creeper, so that the ground may be unencumbered by its thick tendrils. (3) The copiousness of its rivers adds to the salubrity and fertility of Jamaica. (4) The bamboo, in its indigenous state, grows in long rows by the river-sides. (5) These trees produce an effect which nothing can surpass. (6) The branches break forth from the head of the cotton-tree in luxurious profusion. (7) Of all the parasites, the fig is the most obdurate with its embraces. (8) The original tree has departed wholly from sight.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The branch of the bamboo is a huge hollow cane, bearing no leaves except at its head.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. both  
&c.).

5. nouns  
paym  
ality;

6. l  
be use

7. V  
you k  
commo

8. C  
21, all

TH

Career,  
Ponder  
Cuirass  
drago  
Ruthles  
Havoc,  
Cohort,  
Harbing  
nounce  
Acclaim  
Shroud,

1. Or  
Bu

\* June  
power of

4. Select from the first two sections words which may be used both as nouns and as verbs (such, for example, as *equal*, *course*, &c.).
5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Production*; *traveller*; *favourite*; *frequency*; *payment*; *provision*; *luxuriance*; *consideration*; *remark*; *originality*; *copiousness*; *fertility*.
6. Make sentences in which each of the first six words shall be used.
7. Write out all the compounds of the following words that you know: *Equal*; *comfort*; *portion*; *cover*; *favour*; *pay*; *common*; *fill*.
8. Give in the same way as is described in Example 9, page 21, all the words that relate to *land* and *river*.

---

### THE LAST CHARGE OF THE FRENCH AT WATERLOO.\*

---

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Career, speed.<br/>Ponderous, heavy.<br/>Cuirassier, heavily - armoured<br/>dragoon.<br/>Ruthless, without pity.<br/>Havoc, slaughter, destruction.<br/>Cohort, body of men.<br/>Harbingered, their coming announced.<br/>Acclaim, shouting.<br/>Shroud, covering.</p> | <p>Fortitude, bravery.<br/>Serried, closely drawn up.<br/>Files, ranks.<br/>Revolving knell, firing in turn.<br/>Corslet, a piece of armour covering the body.<br/>Pennon, flag.<br/>Augment, to increase.<br/>Well-served, discharged steadily and quickly.<br/>Brand, weapon, sword.</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Recolled, fell back.

1. On came the whirlwind—like the last  
But fiercest sweep of tempest-blast—

\* June 18, 1815. Waterloo is near Brussels, in Belgium; the power of Napoleon was here completely overthrown.

On came the whirlwind—steel-gleams broke  
Like lightning through the rolling smoke;

The war was waked anew.

Three hundred cannon-mouths roared loud,  
And from their throats, with flash and cloud,

Their showers of iron threw.

Beneath their fire, in full career,  
Rushed on the ponderous cuirassier,  
The lancer couched his ruthless spear,  
And hurrying as to havoc near,

The cohorts' eagles\* flew.

In one dark torrent, broad and strong,  
The advancing onset rolled along,  
Forth harbingered by fierce acclaim,  
That, from the shroud of smoke and flame,  
Pealed wildly the imperial name!

2. But on the British heart were lost

The terrors of the charging host;  
For not an eye the storm that viewed  
Changed its proud glance of fortitude;  
Nor was one forward footstep stayed  
As dropped the dying and the dead.

Fast as their ranks the thunders tear,  
Fast they renewed each serried square;†

And on the wounded and the slain

Closed their diminished files again,

Till from their line scarce spears' lengths three,‡

Emerging from the smoke they see

Helmet, and plume, and panoply—

Then waked their fire at once!

\* The national standards of France.

† The British were formed in square, and, as their men fell, the gap was steadily closed up.

‡ The British reserved their fire till the French were quite close, almost touching them.

COM  
the fo  
ground  
dards.  
4. Wa  
6. Co  
flank.

\* Th  
side.

LAST CHARGE OF THE FRENCH AT WATERLOO. 137

3. Each musketeer's revolving knell  
As fast, as regularly fell,  
As when they practise to display  
Their discipline on festal day.  
Then down went helm and lance,  
Down were the eagle-banners sent,  
Down reeling steeds and riders went,  
Corslets were pierced, and pennons rent ;  
And to augment the fray,  
Wheeled full against their staggering flanks,  
The English horsemen's foaming ranks  
Forced their resistless way.\*
4. Then to the musket-knell succeeds  
The clash of swords—the neigh of steeds ;  
As plies the smith his clanging trade,  
Against the cuirass rang the blade ;  
And while amid their close array  
The well-served cannon rent their way,  
And while amid their scattered band  
Raged the fierce rider's bloody brand,  
Recoiled in common rout and fear  
Lancer and guard and cuirassier,  
Horsemen and foot—a mingled host !  
Their leaders fall'n—their standards lost.

*Sir W. Scott.*

COMPOSITION.—Write an account of the French charge from the following heads: 1. The British posted on a low rise of ground. 2. Charge of the French cuirassiers with their standards. 3. The British waiting in square, doing nothing. 4. Wait till the French almost touch them. 5. Then open fire. 6. Cool, steady aim. 7. English Guards attack the French flank. 8. French driven back.

\* The English Guards now attacked the Imperial Guard on each side.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Steelgleams broke like lightning. (2) Flash and cloud. (3) Forth harbingered by fierce acclaim. (4) The imperial name. (5) Fast as their ranks the thunders tear. (6) Each musketeer's revolving knell. (7) Common rout and fear.

2. Parse the following sentence: Blücher came up with his Prussians to the aid of Wellington.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Give the verbs or adjectives connected with the following nouns: *Tempest*; *gleam*; *war*; *terror*; *hand*; *fear*; *practice*.

5. Make sentences in which each of the first six of these words shall be used.

### THOROUGHNESS IN WORK.

**Mental labour**, labour with the head or mind; from Lat. *mens*, the mind.

**Manual**, by hand; from Lat. *manus*, the hand.

**Thrilled**, went through.

**Adage**, short pithy saying, or proverb.

**Associated**, bound up with.

**Counterpart**, something exactly corresponding to.

**Continuous**, going on without a break.

**Scamping**, doing it quickly and without sufficient care and interest in it.

**Dignified**, made worthy.

1. Thoroughness in work is the chief end of all education, whether that education is displayed in mental or in manual labour. 'Whatsoever thy hand findeth to do, do it with all thy might.' That is the golden rule which ought to be engraved on the heart of every man, whatever be his condition in life, and whatever the work he is called upon to do. 2. Nelson's last signal—'England expects every man to do his duty'—which thrilled the hearts of our British sailors before the victory of Trafalgar, does but express the idea which is the mainspring of all true greatness, whether national or private—namely, thoroughness in work.

Suppose, instead of that famous signal with which the name of Nelson will be for ever associated, the following had been presented to the eyes of our astonished seamen :

'He that fights and runs away,  
May live to fight another day;  
But he that is in battle slain,  
Will never live to fight again:'

And suppose our sailors had acted according to this advice, and fled from the fight, what disgrace would have fallen on the name of England!

3. The base and cowardly adage here quoted has its counterpart in the proverb of unfaithful workmen, who say that 'Good work is bad for trade;' and their meaning is, that, if they make good work, the articles will last too long, and they will get less to do. No greater mistake than this could be committed, as the following truthful history clearly proves.

4. Switzerland is a country famous for its education and its watches; yet neither knowledge nor skill will bring continuous prosperity without the exercise of that higher quality—thoroughness in work. As a rule, Swiss workmen are skilful in their various trades, and take an interest in their work; for, on account of their superior education, they fully understand the advantages, not only to their masters, but also to themselves, of never putting a bad piece of work out of their hands.

5. The consequences of scamping work, and making watches to sell rather than to keep time correctly, has lately been seen at St Imier, in the Bernese Jura, and has produced a deep impression. In this district, for some years past, a great falling off in the quality of the watches has taken place, owing to the inhabitants desiring to increase their profits by furnishing an in-

ferior article. 6. They prospered for a considerable time, but finally their watches got such a bad name that nobody would buy them, and the result is that the masters have become bankrupt, and the people have been thrown out of employment.

Workmen in every branch of industry should keep in mind that they have their own and their country's character to maintain for excellence. 7. No station is so high as to be exempt from this duty; none so low as not to be dignified by the faithful discharge of it. The works themselves upon which all this labour is bestowed will perish; but the qualities which have been gained by the faithful and honest discharge of the daily duties of life will endure for ever, and will find scope for their exercise in a higher and holier sphere.

*Inaugural Address by Mr Walter, M.P., at  
London Quebec Institute, November 1874.*

### I'LL FIND A WAY, OR MAKE IT.

**Aspiration**, what you aspire to or long to reach; from Lat. *ad*, to, and *spirare*, to breathe.

**Ambition**, what you go about to get or obtain; from Lat. *ambire*, to go about.

**Helicon**, the name of a clear crystal spring on the side of Mount Parnassus in Greece, at which Apollo and the Muses were said to drink.

1. It was a noble Roman,  
In Rome's imperial day,  
Who heard a coward croaker  
Before the castle say:  
'They're safe in such a fortress;  
There is no way to shake it!'  
'On! on!' exclaimed the hero;  
'I'll find a way, or make it!'



2. Is fame your aspiration ?  
*Her path* is steep and high ;  
 In vain he seeks her temple,  
 Content to gaze and sigh.  
 The shining throne is waiting,  
 But he alone can take it  
 Who says, with Roman firmness,  
 'I'll find a way, or make it!'

3. Is learning your ambition ?  
 There is *no* royal road ;  
 Alike the peer and peasant  
 Must climb to her abode :  
 Who feels the thirst for knowledge,  
 In Helicon may slake it,  
 If he has still the Roman will  
 'To find a way, or make it!'

4. Are riches worth the getting ?  
 They must be *bravely* sought ;  
 With wishing and with fretting  
 The boon cannot be bought :  
 To all the prize is open,  
 But only *he* can take it,  
 Who says, with Roman courage,  
 'I'll find a way, or make it!'

*Saxe.*






### THE CHARACTER OF NELSON.

**Career**, course of life.  
**Depressed**, sunk.  
**Surmount**, get over.  
**Confiding**, trusting.  
**Suspended**, hung up.  
**Aspirations**, high hopes.  
**Promotion**, moving on in rank.  
**Displayed**, shewed clearly.  
**Omission**, neglect.  
**Applauded**, praised highly.  
**Mortifying**, vexing, annoying.  
**Conquest**, complete putting down of an enemy.

**Realised**, made good.  
**Laurel**, bay tree (badge of a victor).  
**Cypress tree** (sign of mourning).  
**Lacerated**, torn.  
**Assured**, made certain.  
**Tidings**, news.  
**Peremptorily**, positively.  
**Cruise**, sailing to and fro.  
**Transport**, highest delight.  
**Achievement**, finishing stroke.

1. This darling hero of his country, when eighteen

year  
 of th  
 office  
 full e  
 spirit  
 of Ne  
 he sp  
 2. 'I  
 in my  
 of the  
 intere  
 reachi  
 gloom  
 board,  
 me, an  
 Well,  
 ing in  
 that h  
 radiant  
 urged l  
 tions o  
 divinity  
 from H  
 was as  
 his arde  
 when n  
 the Adm  
 your lon  
 cockle-b  
 5. Aft  
 which N  
 not have  
 donable  
 did not e



years of age, was obliged to return from sea on account of the bad state of his health, and leave his brother officers, then like himself beginning their career, in the full enjoyment of health and hope. This depressed his spirits very much; and long afterwards, when the fame of Nelson was known as widely as that of England itself, he spoke of the feelings which he at that time endured. 2. 'I felt impressed,' said he, 'that I should never rise in my profession. My mind was staggered with a view of the difficulties which I had to surmount, and the little interest I possessed; I could discover no means of reaching the object of my ambition. After a long and gloomy reverie, in which I almost wished myself overboard, a sudden glow of patriotism was kindled within me, and presented my king and country as my patrons. Well, then,' I exclaimed, 'I will be a hero; and confiding in Providence, I will brave every danger.' 3. From that hour, as he often declared to Captain Hardy, a radiant orb was suspended before his mind's eye, which urged him on to renown; and he spoke of these aspirations of his youth as if they had in them a character of divinity, as if 'the light which led him on was light from Heaven.' 4. Although the promotion of Nelson was as rapid as it could be, yet it was much too slow for his ardent ambition. He was never happy for a moment when not on actual service. In a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty in 1792, requesting a ship, he adds, 'If your lordships will only be pleased to appoint me to a cockle-boat, I shall feel grateful.'

5. After the sieges of Calvi and Bastia in 1793, in which Nelson displayed military talents which would not have disgraced a general, his services, by an unpardonable omission, were altogether overlooked; his name did not even appear in the list of wounded, although he

ge of a

urning).

r.

o.

ght.

stroke.

sighteen

had lost an eye. 'One hundred and ten days,' said he, 'I have been actually engaged at sea and on shore against the enemy; three actions against ships, two against Bastia in my own ship, four boat-actions, two villages taken and twelve vessels burnt. 6. I do not know that any one has done more. I have had the comfort to be always applauded by my commander-in-chief, but never to be rewarded; and what is more mortifying, for services in which I have been wounded others have been praised, who, at the same time, were actually in bed, far from the scene of action. They have not done me justice; but never mind, I'll have a Gazette of my own.' How amply was this second sight of glory realised!

7. Previous to his attack on Teneriffe, after having failed in an attempt to take it before, he wrote to his commander-in-chief: 'This night I command the whole force destined to land under the batteries of the town, and to-morrow my head will probably be crowned either with laurel or cypress.' Perfectly aware how desperate a service this was likely to prove, he called his step-son, Lieutenant Nisbet, into his cabin, that he might assist in arranging and burning his mother's letters. 8. Perceiving that the young man was armed, he earnestly begged him to remain behind. 'Should we both fall, Josiah,' said he, 'what will become of your poor mother? The care of the Theseus falls to you; stay, therefore, and take care of her.' Nisbet replied: 'Sir, the ship must take care of herself. I will go with you to-night, if I never go again.'

9. The boats landed amidst powerful discharges from forty or fifty pieces of cannon, with musketry from one end of the town to the other. Nelson, when in the act of stepping out of the boat, received a shot through the right elbow and fell; Nisbet, who was close to him,

pla  
am  
his  
sav  
int  
Nis  
sear  
to b  
whe  
had  
Nin  
were  
on  
dang  
boat  
noth  
was  
migh  
death  
her s  
of her  
These  
ting o  
return  
Fox.  
over t  
'Let r  
one ar  
know  
the bet  
13. I  
circum  
board  
done th

placed him at the bottom of the boat. He then examined the wound, and taking a silk handkerchief from his neck, bound it above the lacerated blood-vessels, which saved his life. 10. One of the bargemen tore his shirt into shreds and made a sling for the wounded arm; Nisbet took one of the oars, and collecting four or five seamen, rowed back towards the vessel. Nelson desired to be raised up, that he 'might look a little about him,' when a general shriek was heard from the Fox, which had received a shot under water and gone down. Ninety-seven men sank with her, and eighty-three were saved, many by Nelson himself, whose exertions on this occasion materially increased the pain and danger of the wound. 11. The first ship which the boat could reach happened to be the Seahorse; but nothing could induce him to go on board, though he was assured that the attempt to row to another ship might be at the risk of his life. 'I had rather suffer death,' said he, 'than alarm Mrs Fremantle, by letting her see me in this state, when I can give her no tidings of her husband.' 12. He was then rowed alongside the Theseus, and peremptorily refused all assistance in getting on board; so impatient was he that the boat should return, in hopes of saving a few more men from the Fox. He desired to have only a single rope thrown over the side, which he twisted round his left hand. 'Let me alone!' said he; 'I have yet my legs left and one arm. Tell the surgeon to get his instruments; I know I must lose my right arm, so the sooner it is off the better.'

13. It was Nelson's practice during a cruise, whenever circumstances would permit, to have his captains on board and fully explain to them his plans. He had done this previous to the battle of the Nile; and, when

Captain Berry, on comprehending the design of doubling on the enemy's ships, exclaimed with transport, 'If we succeed, what will the world say?' 'There is no *if* in the case,' replied Nelson; 'that we shall succeed is certain: who may live to tell the story is a very different question.'

14. In this battle the French had a superiority over the British of one hundred and eighty-four guns and three thousand and eighty-two men; yet they lost five sail taken, three sail burnt, one driven on shore and fired, and three frigates. 'A victory,' said the gallant Nelson, 'is not a word strong enough for such an achievement: it should be called a conquest.'

*Southey.*

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short paper on LORD NELSON from the following heads: (1) His weak health when young. (2) Slow promotion. (3) Never happy but when on service. (4) Wounded. (5) Orders to the surgeon. (6) His plan of the battle of the Nile.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) My mind was staggered with a view of the difficulties I had to surmount. (2) By an unpardonable omission. (3) My head will be crowned either with laurel or with cypress. (4) He peremptorily refused all assistance in getting on board. (5) Such an achievement.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: A victory is not a word strong enough for such an achievement.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 13 and 14 all the words which may be used both as nouns and as verbs, such as *practice* (*practise*, the verb), *cruise*, *board*, &c.

6. Write eight sentences in each of which the first four words in the above shall be used alternately as nouns and as verbs.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives which are connected with the following nouns: *Deerling* (= *dear-ling*); *obligation*; *enjoyment*; *health*; *hope*; *depression*; *fame*; *difficulty*; *possession*; *discovery*; *exclamation*; *confidence*; *divinity*; *pleasure*; *gratitude*; *omission*; *apppause*.

Monot  
Dolefu  
Exhau  
Stupor  
Autom  
chine  
movi  
Alterna  
one w  
alter,

1. T  
hibited  
partic  
stiff an  
death l  
sound  
feeble g  
to the v  
as had  
heart er  
from ex  
hand up  
vain dic  
numbe  
the pow  
few steps  
been int  
dened an  
by the wa  
flowed re  
heavy sig  
earth, wi

## THE RETREAT FROM MOSCOW.

**Monotonous**, never varying.

**Doleful**, sad (Lat. *doleo*, I grieve).

**Exhaustion**, being tired out.

**Stupor**, state of unconsciousness.

**Automatons**, self-moving machines (Gr. *automatos*, self-moving).

**Alternately**, by turns, first in one way, then in another (Lat. *alter*, one of two).

**Bivouac**, encampment of an army without tents.

**Agonising**, causing pain.

**Spectres**, ghosts (Lat. *spectrum*, an appearance).

**Diluted**, thinned by mixing with water.

**Attracting**, drawing to them (Lat. *ad*, to, and *traho*, I draw).

**Decomposed**, caused to decay.

1. The day after Napoleon's departure the sky exhibited a dreadful appearance. You might see icy particles floating in the air; the birds fell from it quite stiff and frozen. We flitted along in this empire of death like unhappy spirits. The dull and monotonous sound of our steps, the crackling of the snow, and the feeble groans of the dying, were the only interruptions to the vast and doleful silence. 2. Such of our soldiers as had hitherto been the most persevering here lost heart entirely. Whenever they stopped for a moment from exhaustion, the winter, laying his heavy and icy hand upon them, was ready to seize upon his prey. In vain did these poor unfortunates, feeling themselves benumbed, raise themselves, and, already deprived of the power of speech, and plunged in a stupor, proceed a few steps like automatons, and then stagger as if they had been intoxicated. 3. From their eyes, which were reddened and inflamed by the continual aspect of the snow, by the want of sleep, and the smoke of the bivouac, there flowed real tears of blood; their bosom heaved with heavy sighs; they looked at heaven, at us, and at the earth, with an eye dismayed, fixed, and wild; it ex-

pressed their farewell, and perhaps their reproaches, to the barbarous nature which had tortured them. 4. They were not long before they fell upon their knees, and then upon their hands; their heads still wavered for a few minutes alternately to the right and left, and from their open mouth some agonising sounds escaped; at last it fell, in its turn, upon the snow, which it reddened immediately with livid blood, and their sufferings were at an end. Their comrades passed them by without moving a step out of their way, for fear of prolonging their journey, or even turning their head; for their beards and their hair were stiffened with the ice, and every movement was pain.

5. Such were the last *days* of the Grand Army of France. Its last *nights* were still more dreadful. Those whom the night surprised marching together, far from every habitation, halted on the borders of the woods; there they lighted their fires, before which they remained during the whole night, erect and motionless, like spectres. They seemed as if they could never have enough of the heat; they kept so close to it as to burn their clothes, as well as the frozen parts of their bodies, which the fire decomposed. The most dreadful pain then compelled them to stretch themselves, and the next day they attempted in vain to rise. 6. In the meantime, such as the winter had almost wholly spared, and those who still retained some portion of courage, prepared their melancholy meal. It consisted, ever since they had left Smolensk, of some slices of horse-flesh broiled, and some rye-meal diluted into a thin soup with snow-water, or kneaded into muffins, which they seasoned, for want of salt, with the powder of their cartridges. The sight of these fires was constantly attracting fresh spectres, who were

dri  
selv  
com

E  
of th  
appe  
men.  
rise  
of th  
cann

2.

monc  
dolef  
auton  
dilute

3. I  
after  
ance.

4. A

5. S  
used e  
fulfil i  
march,

6. W  
in the

7. G  
nouns :  
sufferin

8. N

M

I

C

V

A

In

C

9. W  
snow-stor



driven back by the first comers. They then laid themselves down among the snow behind their more fortunate comrades, and there expired.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short composition on 'The Retreat of the French from Moscow' from the following heads: (1) The appearance of the sky. (2) The dull monotonous tread of the men. (3) A soldier stops, and then gradually sinks—never to rise again. (4) At night the soldiers lighted fires on the edge of the woods. (5) Their food. (6) The death of those who cannot get near the fires.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) The monotonous sound of our steps was the only interruption to this doleful silence. (2) The soldiers proceeded a few steps like automatons. (3) The night surprised them. (4) Rye-meal diluted into a thin soup.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: On the day after Napoleon's departure the sky exhibited a dreadful appearance.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 5 and 6 all the words which may be used either as nouns or as verbs, according to the function they fulfil in the sentences to which they may belong, as *surprise, march, halt, border, &c.*

6. Write eight sentences in each of which the first four words in the above are used alternately as nouns and as verbs.

7. Give the verbs or adjectives connected with the following nouns: *Departure; appearance; interruptions; exhaustion; sufferings; movement.*

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words:

|             |           |            |
|-------------|-----------|------------|
| Magnificent | Vacant    | Negligent  |
| Innocent    | Elegant   | Excellent  |
| Complacent  | Consonant | Consequent |
| Violent     | Brilliant | Patient    |
| Ancient     | Fragrant  | Different  |
| Insolent    | Pleasant  | Indolent   |
| Confident   | Abundant  | Sufficient |

9. Write down all the words you know that relate to a *snow-storm.*

## SPRING IS COME.

**Verdure**, green or greenery.

**Quire** = choir, a band of singers.

**Spray**, light twig.

**Ether**, air.

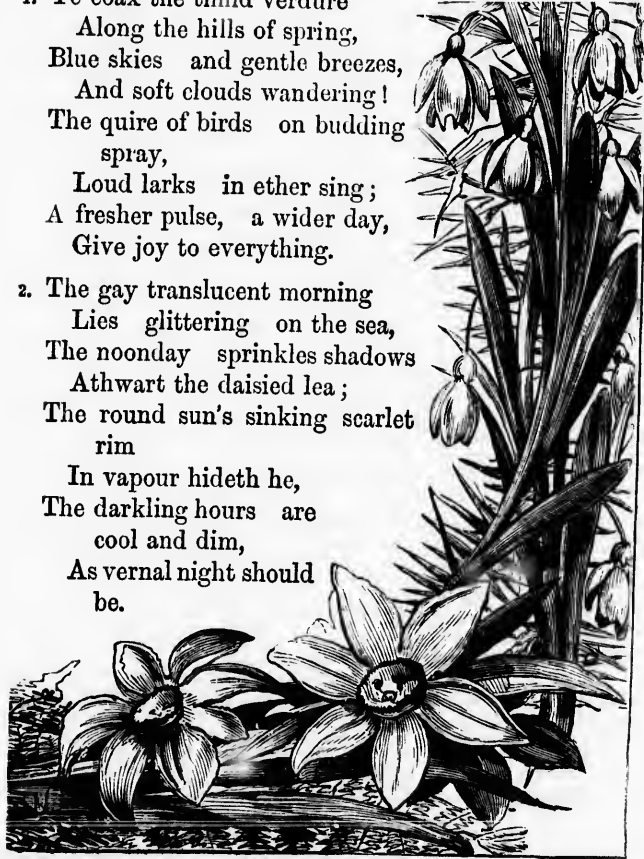
**Translucent**, full of clear light.

**Athwart**, across.

**Lea**, field or meadow.

**Vernal**, belonging to spring.

1. Ye coax the timid verdure  
 Along the hills of spring,  
 Blue skies and gentle breezes,  
 And soft clouds wandering!  
 The quire of birds on budding  
 spray,  
 Loud larks in ether sing;  
 A fresher pulse, a wider day,  
 Give joy to everything.
2. The gay translucent morning  
 Lies glittering on the sea,  
 The noonday sprinkles shadows  
 Athwart the daisied lea;  
 The round sun's sinking scarlet  
 rim  
 In vapour hideth he,  
 The darkling hours are  
 cool and dim,  
 As vernal night should  
 be.



CA  
 VERS  
 on-th

Huma  
 ough  
 hum  
 bein  
 Ascert  
 tain.  
 Badges  
 Sensat

1. I  
 fleet r  
 he ex  
 gave o  
 ing th  
 silent;  
 of ins  
 which  
 2. A b  
 situatio  
 yards f

3. Our earth has not grown agèd,  
 With all her countless years ;  
 She works and never wearies,  
 Is glad and nothing fears :  
 The glow of air, broad land and wave,  
 In season reappears,  
 And shall, when slumber in the grave  
 These human smiles and tears.

*William Allingham.*

CAUTIONS.—VERSE 1.—Line 8: No emphasis on *thing*.  
 VERSE 2.—Line 2: Avoid the verse-accent upon *on*, and make *on-the-sea* one word. Line 8: A light emphasis upon *should*.

THE DEATH OF NELSON.

|                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>Humanity, such kindness as ought to be expected from human beings to human beings.</p> <p>Ascertaining, finding out as certain.</p> <p>Badges, marks.</p> <p>Sensation, feeling.</p> | <p>Alleviate, to lighten or make more bearable; from Lat. <i>levis</i>, light.</p> <p>Intense, very keen.</p> <p>Sublimest, the highest that can be thought of.</p> <p>Ineffectually, without being able to do it.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. It had been part of Nelson's prayer that the British fleet might be distinguished by humanity in the victory he expected. Setting an example himself, he twice gave orders to cease firing upon the Redoubtable, supposing that she had struck because her great guns were silent; for, as she carried no flag, there was no means of instantly ascertaining the fact. From this ship, which he had thus twice spared, he received his death.

2. A ball, fired from her mizzen-top, which, in the then situation of the two vessels, was not more than fifteen yards from that part of the deck where he was standing,

lear light.

ppring.



struck the epaulette on his left shoulder, about a quarter after one, just in the heat of action. He fell upon his face, on the spot which was covered with his poor secretary's blood. Hardy (his captain), who was a few steps from him, turning round, saw three men raising him up. 'They have done for me at last, Hardy,' said he. 'I hope not,' cried Hardy. 'Yes,' he replied, 'my backbone is shot through.'

3. Yet even now, not for a moment losing his presence of mind, he observed, as they were carrying him down the ladder, that the tiller ropes, which had been shot away, were not yet replaced, and ordered that new ones should be rove immediately; then, that he might not be seen by the crew, he took out his handkerchief, and covered his face and his stars. Had he but concealed these badges of honour from the enemy, England, perhaps, would not have had cause to receive with sorrow the news of the battle of Trafalgar. 4. The cockpit was crowded with wounded and dying men, over whose bodies he was with some difficulty conveyed, and laid upon a pallet in the midshipmen's berth. It was soon perceived, upon examination, that the wound was mortal. This, however, was concealed from all except Captain Hardy, the chaplain, and the medical attendants. 5. He himself being certain, from the sensation in his back, and the gush of blood he felt momentarily within his breast, that no human care could avail him, insisted that the surgeon should leave him, and attend to those to whom he might be useful: 'For,' said he, 'you can do nothing for me.' All that could be done was to fan him with paper, and frequently to give him lemonade to alleviate his intense thirst. 6. He was in great pain, and expressed much anxiety for the event of the action, which now began to declare itself. As often as a ship

struck, the crew of the Victory hurrahed, and at every hurrah a visible expression of joy gleamed in the eyes and marked the countenance of the dying hero.

7. But he became impatient to see Captain Hardy; and as that officer, though often sent for, could not leave the deck, Nelson feared some fatal cause prevented him, and repeatedly cried, 'Will no one bring Hardy to me? He must be killed! He is surely dead!' An hour and ten minutes elapsed from the time when Nelson received his wound before Hardy could come to him. 8. They shook hands in silence, Hardy in vain struggling to suppress the feelings of that most painful yet sublimest moment. 'Well, Hardy,' said Nelson, 'how goes the day with us?' 'Very well,' replied Hardy; 'ten ships have struck, but five of the van have tacked, and shew an intention to bear down upon the Victory. I have called two or three of our fresh ships round, and have no doubt of giving them a drubbing.' 'I hope,' said Nelson, 'none of our ships have struck?' Hardy answered, 'There was no fear of that.' 9. Then, and not till then, Nelson spoke of himself. 'I am a dead man, Hardy,' said he; 'I am going fast; it will be all over with me soon; come nearer to me.' Hardy observed that he hoped Mr Beattie (the surgeon) could yet hold out some prospect of life. 'Oh no,' he replied, 'it is impossible; my back is shot through—Beattie will tell you so.' Captain Hardy then once more shook hands with him, and, with a heart almost bursting, hastened upon deck.

10. By this time all feeling below the breast was gone; and Nelson, having made the surgeon ascertain this, said to him, 'You know I am gone; I know it—I feel something rising in my breast (putting his hand on his left side) which tells me so.' And upon Beattie's

inquiring whether his pain was very great, he replied, 'So great, that he wished he were dead.' 'Yet,' said he, in a lower voice, 'one would like to live a little longer too!'

11. Captain Hardy, some fifty minutes after he had left the cockpit, returned, and again taking the hand of his dying friend and commander, congratulated him on having gained a complete victory. How many of the enemy were taken, he did not know, as it was impossible to perceive them distinctly, but fourteen or fifteen at least. 'That's well,' cried Nelson; 'but I bargained for twenty.' 12. And then, in a stronger voice, he said, 'Anchor, Hardy, anchor.' Hardy upon this hinted that Admiral Collingwood would take upon himself the direction of affairs. 'Not while I live, Hardy,' said the dying Nelson, ineffectually endeavouring to raise himself from the bed; 'do you anchor.' His previous order for preparing to anchor had shewn how clearly he foresaw the necessity of this. 13. Presently, calling Hardy back, he said to him in a low voice, 'Don't throw me overboard,' and he desired that he might be buried by his parents, unless it should please the king to order otherwise. 'Kiss me, Hardy,' said he. Hardy knelt down and kissed his cheek, and Nelson said, 'Now, I am satisfied. Thank God, I have done my duty.' Hardy stood over him in silence for a moment or two, then knelt again, and kissed his forehead. 'Who is that?' said Nelson; and being informed, he replied, 'God bless you, Hardy.' And Hardy then left him for ever.

*Southey.*

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short paper on 'The Death of Nelson' from the following heads: (1) A ball is fired from the French ship Redoubtable. (2) Nelson falls on his face. (3) He

is carried down into the cockpit. (4) No hope. (5) Hardy is sent for. (6) His news. (7) The number of ships taken. (8) His last moments.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) There was no means of instantly ascertaining the fact. (2) He ordered new ropes to be rove immediately. (3) To alleviate his intense thirst. (4) An hour and ten minutes elapsed. (5) The surgeon could not hold out any prospect of life. (6) Ineffectually endeavouring to raise himself from the bed. (7) He foresaw the necessity of anchoring.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: A ball struck the epanlette on his left shoulder, about a quarter after one, just in the heat of action.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from sections 1 and 2 all the words which may be used both as nouns and as verbs, according to the function in which they are employed, as *part, order, &c.*

6. Write eight sentences in each of which the first four words in the above are used alternately as nouns and as verbs.

7. Give the verbs and adjectives which are connected with the following nouns: *Humanity* (2); *supposition*; *action*; *situation*; *presence*; *reception*; *attendance*; *pain*; *congratulation*; *victory*; *necessity*; *information*; *intimacy*.

8. Note carefully the endings of the following words:

|            |             |           |          |
|------------|-------------|-----------|----------|
| Generous   | Generosity  | Ferocious | Ferocity |
| Necessary  | Necessity   | Veracious | Veracity |
| Reciprocal | Reciprocity | Sagacious | Sagacity |
| Curious    | Curiosity   | Tenacious | Tenacity |

9. Write down all the words you know that relate to *A Naval Battle*





### TRIAL AND EXECUTION OF MARIE-ANTOINETTE.

- Pending**, is being discussed and weighed. From Lat. *pendere*, to weigh. Hence also: *Expend*, *spend* (a shorter form), *expense*; *pension*.
- Tarnished**, stained. From Fr. *ternir*, to stain. (The broad pronunciation of the *e* before *r* has changed the spelling.)
- Indictment**, paper containing the charges against the accused. From Lat. *in*, against, and *dicto*, I keep saying. Hence also: *Dictate*, *dictation*, *dictatorial*.
- Adequate**, fully equal. From Lat. *ad*, to, and *æquus*, equal.
- Bulletin**, a kind of official report or newspaper. From Lat. *bulia*, a seal. Hence: The Pope's *bull*, of which *bulletin* is a diminutive.
- Laconic**, very short. The inhabitants of Laconia or Lacedæmon were celebrated for their little speaking; they were called *Lacōnes*; hence brief speech is called *laconic*.
- Dauphiness**, wife of the *Dauphin*—the title given to the eldest sons of the kings of France. *Dauphin* is a French form of the Latin *Delphin*, a dolphin—which was the crest of the eldest sons of the kings of France.



Extremities, ends. From Lat. *extrēmus*, extreme—the superlative degree of *extra*, without; through the Fr. *extrémité*.

Patrols, bodies of troops sent out to keep the streets clear. From Fr. *patrouiller*, to paddle.

Escorted by, attended by. From Fr. *escorte*; from Lat. *ex*, thoroughly, and *corrigerē*, to set right.

Whilom, formerly. (It is a word formed like *them* and *seldom*; and these are the only three old dative plurals in the language.)

1. On Monday, the 14th of October 1793, a cause is pending in the Palais de Justice, in the new revolutionary court, such as these old stone walls never witnessed—the trial of Marie-Antoinette. The once brightest of queens, now tarnished, now defaced, forsaken, stands here at Fouquier-Tinville's judgment-bar, answering for her life! The indictment was delivered to her last night. To such changes of human fortune, what words are adequate? Silence alone is adequate.
2. Marie-Antoinette, in this her utter abandonment and hour of extreme need, is not wanting to herself, the imperial woman. Her look, they say, as that hideous indictment was reading, continued calm; 'she was sometimes observed moving her fingers, as when one plays on the piano.' You discern, not without interest, across that dim revolutionary bulletin itself, how she bears herself queenlike. 3. Her answers are prompt, clear, often of laconic brevity; resolution, which has grown contemptuous without ceasing to be dignified, veils itself in calm words. 'You persist then in denial?'—'My plan is not denial: it is the truth I have said, and I persist in that.' Scandalous Hébert has borne his testimony as to many things—as to one thing, concerning Marie-Antoinette and her little son—wherewith human speech had better not further be soiled. 4. She has answered Hébert; a jurymen begs to observe that she has not answered as to this. 'I have not answered,'

she exclaims, with noble emotion, 'because Nature refuses to answer such a charge brought against a mother. I appeal to all the mothers that are here.' Robespierre, when he heard of it, broke out into something almost like swearing at the brutish blockheadism of this Hébert, on whose foul head his foul lie has recoiled.

5. At four o'clock on Wednesday morning, after two days and two nights of interrogating, jury-charging, and other darkening of counsel, the result comes out—sentence of death. 'Have you anything to say?' The accused shook her head, without speech. Night's candles are burning out, and with her, too, Time is finishing, and it will be Eternity and Day. This hall of Tinville's is dark, ill-lighted, except where she stands. Silently she withdraws from it to die.

6. Two processions, or royal progresses, three-and-twenty years apart, have often struck us with a strange feeling of contrast. The first is of a beautiful Archduchess and Dauphiness, quitting her mother's city, at the age of fifteen, towards hopes such as no other daughter of Eve then had. 'On the morrow,' says Weber, an eye-witness, 'the Dauphiness left Vienna. The whole city crowded out; at first with a sorrow which was silent. 7. She appeared: you saw her sunk back into her carriage; her face bathed in tears; hiding her eyes now with her handkerchief, now with her hand, several times putting out her head to see yet again this palace of her fathers, whither she was to return no more. She motioned her regret, her gratitude to the good nation, which was crowding here to bid her farewell. Then arose not only tears; but piercing cries, on all sides. Men and women alike abandoned themselves to such expression of their sorrow. It was an audible sound of wail in the streets and avenues of Vienna. The last

courier that followed her disappeared, and the crowd melted away.'

8. The young imperial maiden of fifteen has now become a worn discrowned widow of thirty-eight, gray before her time—this is the last procession: Few minutes after the trial ended, the drums were beating to arms in all sections; at sunrise the armed force was on foot, cannons getting placed at the extremities of the bridges, in the squares, cross-ways, all along from the Palais de Justice to the Place de la Révolution. By ten o'clock, numerous patrols were circulating in the streets; thirty thousand foot and horse drawn up under arms.

9. At eleven, Marie-Antoinette was brought out. She had on an undress of piqué blanc. She was led to the place of execution in the same manner as an ordinary criminal, bound on a cart, accompanied by a constitutional priest in lay dress, escorted by numerous detachments of infantry and cavalry. These, and the double row of troops all along her road, she appeared to regard with indifference. On her countenance there was visible neither abashment nor pride. To the cries of 'Vive la République!' and 'Down with Tyranny!' which attended her all the way, she seemed to pay no heed.

10. She spoke little to her confessor. The tricolor streamers on the house-tops occupied her attention, in the streets du Roule and Saint-Honoré; she also noticed the inscriptions on the house-fronts. On reaching the Place de la Révolution, her looks turned towards the Jardin National, whilom Tuileries; her face at that moment gave signs of lively emotion. She mounted the scaffold with courage enough. At a quarter past twelve her head fell—the executioner shewed it to the people, amid universal long-continued cries of 'Vive la République!'

*Carlyle.*

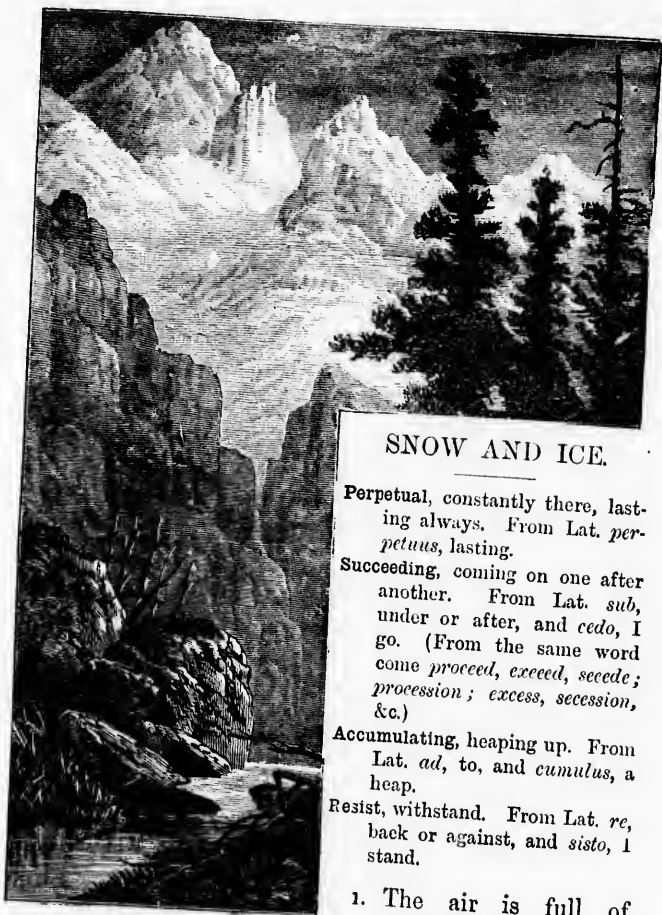
## NOTE.

Marie Antoinette (de Lorraine) was the youngest daughter of Francis I, Emperor of Germany. She was born at Vienna in 1755. She was married at the age of fifteen to the Dauphin, afterwards Louis XVI. Her mother was the famous Maria Theresa, Empress of Germany. She was condemned to death on false charges, and executed on the 16th of October 1793.

- EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 6-10 inclusive.
2. Write a paper on 'Two Processions' from your own summary.
3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) A cause is pending in the court. (2) Indictment. (3) What words are adequate? (4) Her answers are of laconic brevity. (5) His foul lie has recoiled on his foul head. (6) Interrogating. (7) It was an audible sound of wail in the streets of Vienna. (8) Patrols were circulating in the streets. (9) Escorted by. (10) The tricolor streamers occupied her attention.
4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'The last courier that followed her disappeared.'
5. Analyse the following sentence:
- Perceiv'st thou not the process of the year,  
How the four seasons in four forms appear,  
Resembling human life in every shape they wear?
6. Write down all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Man*; *shew*; *give*; *way*; *lead*; *long*; *whole*<sup>1</sup>; *die*; *hear*.
7. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Moveo*, I move (stem *mot*)—compound with *e*, *con* (*com*), etc.; *circulus*, a circle; *rogo*, I ask (stem *rogāt*)—compound with *inter*, etc.
8. Give all the words you know of the same sound as the following, but different spelling: *Ware*; *waste*; *wave*; *wait*. Write them in columns, with the meanings opposite.
9. Make sentences containing the following phrases: *Consists in*; *contend against*; *contend for*; *depend from*; *depend against*; *die by*; *die for*.

<sup>1</sup> *Heal*, *health*, *healthy*. The *w* in *whole* is an error.

the sun  
comes b  
of rain  
any par



### SNOW AND ICE.

**Perpetual**, constantly there, lasting always. From Lat. *perpetuus*, lasting.

**Succeeding**, coming on one after another. From Lat. *sub*, under or after, and *cedo*, I go. (From the same word come *proceed*, *exceed*, *secede*; *procession*; *excess*, *secession*, &c.)

**Accumulating**, heaping up. From Lat. *ad*, to, and *cumulus*, a heap.

**Resist**, withstand. From Lat. *re*, back or against, and *sisto*, I stand.

1. The air is full of moisture which the heat of the sun has sucked up from the sea; and all this moisture comes back again to the earth, sooner or later, in the form of rain and snow. If the air which covers the earth in any particular place be warm, then the moisture falls

from the air in the form of dew and rain. If the air be sufficiently cold, it falls as snow or hail. Snow, then, is frozen rain. 2. In some places, snow never falls all the year round; but the inhabitants of most countries are accustomed to see the ground covered with a white mantle during a greater or smaller portion of the year. There are only a very few places in which the ground is covered with snow all the year round; but this is the case with some countries which lie near the North and South Poles. There are also many countries in which the mountains are so high that their tops are always white with snow.

3. When we climb a mountain we find it gradually growing colder and colder, however hot it may be at the foot. If the mountain be a sufficiently high one, we always at last reach a point where it is so cold that the snow that falls during the winter does not melt in the summer. This point is called the 'line of perpetual snow.' Below this line the snow melts in the summer, but above it the ground is always white. 4. In some countries, like Spitzbergen, it is so cold that the whole land is above this line, and therefore the ground is never free from snow. In Britain, again, it is much warmer, and we do not come to the line of perpetual snow till we have climbed about five thousand feet above the level of the sea. We have, however, no mountains which are five thousand feet high, and consequently there is no part of Britain which is covered with snow all the year round. 5. Travelling from Britain to the warmer countries of Central Europe, we find that the height of the line of perpetual snow has risen to about eight thousand feet. The lofty peaks of the great mountain-chain of the Alps in Switzerland are from fourteen to fifteen thousand feet in height, so that they are clad in

perpetual snow for six or seven thousand feet below their summits. 6. Lastly, if we go to really hot countries, such as South America and India, we find that it is not cold enough for the snow to lie always on the ground, till we have climbed to a height of fifteen or twenty thousand feet above the level of the sea. It is therefore only the tops of the highest peaks of the Andes and Himalayas which lie above the line of perpetual snow.

7. All the parts of a mountain which lie above the line of perpetual snow are, of course, covered every winter with fresh falls. As the snow does not melt above this line, it is clear that the thickness of snow ought to become greater and greater every succeeding year. The mountain, therefore, should always be getting higher and higher. 8. As a matter of fact, however, the snow does not go on accumulating in this way above the line of perpetual snow, and consequently the mountain does not grow any higher. What, then, becomes of the snow which falls every winter, seeing that it does not melt? 9. If the top of the mountain were a flat level plain, it is quite clear that the snow would become deeper and deeper every year, and so the mountain get higher and higher. But no mountain has a flat level top like this. The top of a mountain is always very uneven, and always slopes away into the valleys, which, in turn, lead into the low country below. 10. The snow which falls on the top of the mountain is thus unable to rest in the place where it fell. It is constantly slipping off the slanting sides of the mountain into the heads of the valleys, which in this way get choked with snow.

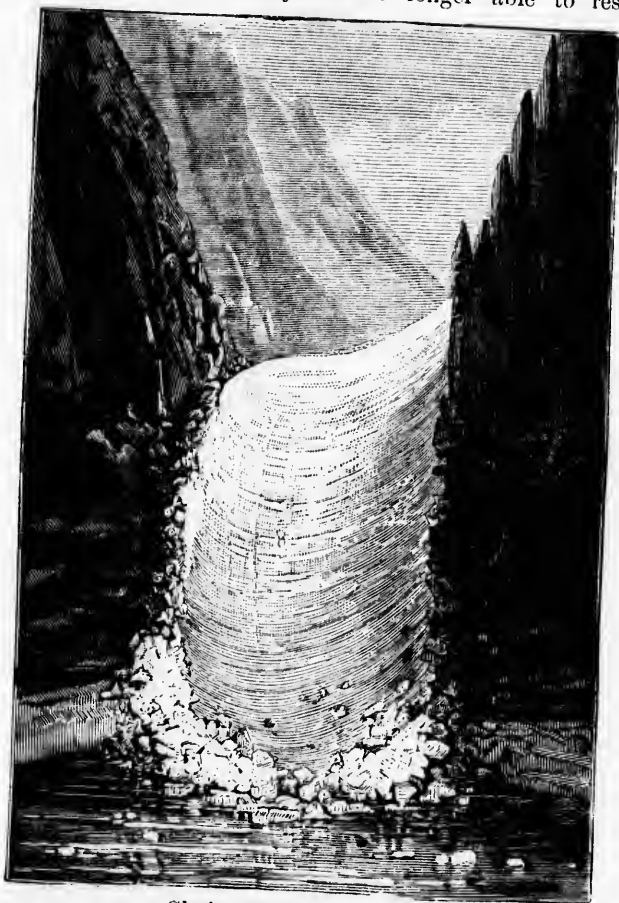
11. When a great thickness of snow is gathered together in the higher valleys, the lower layers of it are

pressed upon by the upper layers, as well as by the fresh snow which is always pushing itself down from the mountain-top. Now every schoolboy knows that if snow is squeezed into the hand it becomes quite hard; and if you were to squeeze it hard enough you can really turn *snow* into *ice*. 12. Our hands are not strong enough to do this, but it can easily be done by putting snow into a machine, where it can be powerfully squeezed and pressed together. What happens, then, is this. The snow pressing down from the lofty summit of the mountain chokes the higher parts of the valleys, and by its own weight it becomes so squeezed together that it ceases to be *snow*, and it now becomes clear blue solid *ice*.

13. If we were to go to any great range of mountains, like the Alps in Switzerland, we should see this at once. We should see that the tops of the higher mountains are covered with great fields of eternal snow, and the valleys leading away from these are occupied by vast masses of solid ice. These rivers of ice are called 'glaciers,' from the French word *glace*, which means ice, and they are *really* 'rivers of ice,' because they are always moving slowly down their valleys. 14. The only difference, in fact, between one of these ice-streams and an ordinary river is, that the former moves very slowly. It is only by watching a glacier, and by measuring its progress with proper instruments, that its movement can be found out. It only moves a few inches every day, and you consequently would not think it was moving at all if you simply looked at it. 15. Still, these great ice-streams, sometimes ten or twenty miles long, and hundreds of feet in thickness, are always moving slowly downwards, and hence they carry off year by year the snow which falls upon the mountain above the line of perpetual snow. Slowly but surely they push themselves down



the sides of the mountain, till they get into the lower country, and then they are no longer able to resist



Glacier melting into a River.

the heat of the sun and the warmth of the air. 16. They now melt, and from the end of each of them proceeds a

larger or smaller streams of water, icy-cold, and thick with the mud formed by the ice, as it grinds its way down the rocky valley which imprisons it. Some of the most famous rivers in the world, such as the Rhine and the Ganges, begin as streams which issue from icy caverns at the end of great glaciers, high amongst the frozen mountains.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 11 to 16 inclusive.

2. Write an account of 'A Glacier' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) The snow does not go on accumulating in this way above the line of perpetual snow. (2) The thickness of snow ought to become greater every succeeding year. (3) Summit. (4) Progress. (5) Occupied by masses of solid ice.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: 'The air is full of moisture which the heat of the sun has sucked up from the sea.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

When I am forgotten, as I shall be,  
And sleep in dull cold marble, where no mention  
Of me must more be heard of, say I taught thee.

6. Write down all the words you know which are connected with the following English words: *Full*; *come*<sup>1</sup>; *rain*; *snow*; *air*; *ear*<sup>2</sup>; *fall*<sup>3</sup>; *all*<sup>4</sup>; *while*.

7. Write down all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Habit-āre*, to dwell; *gradus*, a step; *cumulus*, a heap; *progredior* (past part. *progressus*), I go forward; *fama*, fame.

8. Make sentences which shall contain the following phrases: *To make good*; *to piece out*; *to eke out*; *to be resolved into*; *to break up*; *to merge in*.

<sup>1</sup> *Income, newcomer, welcome, etc.*    <sup>2</sup> *To plough. Hence, earth = the ploughed.*

<sup>3</sup> *Befal; fell (= to make to fall).*

<sup>4</sup> *Withal, alone (= all one), although, etc.*

## BOILING WATER, HOT SPRINGS, AND GEYSERS.

**Thermometer**, a measurer of heat. From Gr. *thermos*, heat, and *metron*, a measure.

Consequently, following; or, it therefore follows. From Lat. *sequi*, to follow. Hence also: *Sequel*; *sequent*; *persecute*, and others.

**Volcano**, an Italian word for a burning mountain. The word comes from the Latin *Fulcānus*, the god of fire and of smiths.

**Discharge**, throw out. To *charge*, was to place in a *carrus*, Lat. for *car*. To *discharge*, was to take out of the *car*.

**Geyser**, the Icelandic name for a *boiling spring*. (The word is said to be connected with *gush*, *gust*; and with the German *giessen*, to pour; *Guss*, a gush, etc.)

**In succession**, after one another.

From Lat. *sub*, under or after, and *cedo*, I go. *Sub* becomes *suc* before a *c*; and *cess* is another part of the root *ced*. From the same root come *intercession*, a going *between*; *procession*, a going *forth*; *concession*, a going *together*; *secession*, a going *away from*, and others.

1. If we take a pan of water and put it upon the fire, we at first observe nothing particular. The heat turns some of the water into vapour, but this escapes from the surface quite quietly. After a while, however, we see that the water is being rapidly turned into steam, and this change takes place at the bottom and sides of the pan, where the water is most highly heated. Little bubbles of steam are formed at the bottom of the pan, and rush up through the water, in order to make their escape into the air. The water in the pan now bubbles, moves rapidly, and is disturbed, and then we say that it 'boils.' 2. If we were to put a thermometer—that is to say, an instrument for measuring heat—into the water, we should find that the water has a certain heat, and that it never gets any hotter than this so long as the water continues to boil, however strong the fire underneath it may be. The reason for this is that, as long as the water

goes on boiling, the steam which is formed carries off all the fresh heat which is passing into the water. The heat at which water boils is called the 'boiling-point,' and it is always about the same at the same place. 3. The boiling-point of water is not, however, always the same at different places. In some places it takes more heat to make water boil and in others it takes less. Let us try to understand how this curious fact is to be explained.

We have seen that what we call the 'boiling' of water is caused by the rapid turning of the water into steam, and the quick escape of this steam from the surface of the water. It is the heat which is constantly turning the water into steam that drives this steam upwards. 4. But, while the heat is forcing the steam upwards, *the weight of the air* is keeping the steam down, and the water cannot boil till the heat is able to overcome the resistance of the air. It follows from this that the boiling-point of water—or the heat necessary to make water boil—is greater when the weight of the air is increased, and less when the weight of the air is less. If we stand at the level of the sea, we have *all* the air above us, and consequently it takes more heat to boil water by the sea-shore than it does in any other place, unless, indeed, we go down into a deep mine in the earth. 5. If, on the other hand, we go up to the top of a high mountain, a great deal of the air is below us, and only part of it is above us and able to press upon us; so that the weight of the air is much less for this reason in such a situation. Consequently, it takes much less heat to boil water on the top of a hill than it does on the shore, for there is not so much weight of air pressing upon the water and keeping it from passing into steam.

6.  
the  
the  
sea,  
mak  
know  
there  
pan  
the  
that  
If we  
needs  
so so  
cook  
we p  
const  
increa  
oppos  
heat t  
been  
ordina  
9. T  
water  
springs  
Most s  
some s  
ground  
they ar  
mounta  
celebrat  
Somerse  
volcano.  
who bui  
the grou

6. This fact has been turned to account in measuring the height of mountains. We know precisely what is the heat required to make water boil at the level of the sea, so that if we notice how much less heat is needed to make water boil on the top of a mountain, we shall know how much of the air we have left below us, and therefore, how high the mountain is. 7. If we put a pan of water into a chamber from which we pump out the air by proper machinery, we can leave so little air that there is hardly any weight resting upon its surface. If we now apply heat to the pan, we shall find that it needs very little heat to make it boil. Indeed, it boils so soon, that it hardly becomes warm, and you could not cook an egg or a potato in it. 8. If, on the other hand, we put water into a vessel of iron, of very strong construction, and pump air into it by force, so as to increase the weight of air pressing upon the water, the opposite of this happens. We now find, on applying heat to the vessel, that the water will not boil till it has been raised to a heat very much greater than its ordinary boiling-point.

9. There are a great many cases in which springs of water burst forth from the earth, and some of these springs are large enough to form regular rivers at once. Most springs throw out cold water only, but there are some springs in which hot water gushes out from the ground. Many of these 'hot springs' are known, and they are especially frequent in countries where burning mountains, or volcanoes, exist. There are, however, some celebrated hot springs in England, such as those at Bath in Somersetshire, which are hundreds of miles away from any volcano. 10. These springs were known to the Romans, who built baths there. The water which comes out of the ground is as hot as it is possible to bear without



Great Geyser, Iceland.

1  
c  
i  
t  
2  
w  
T  
N  
sp  
ba  
vo  
w  
th  
  
the  
2  
the  
fire  
boi  
(5)  
me  
3  
syn  
dist  
spr  
wat  
dist  
4.  
soor  
egg  
5.  
6.  
conn  
from

burning one's self; and the springs discharge about two hundred thousand gallons of this heated water every day. There are some hot springs in which the water is quite boiling when it bursts out at the surface of the ground. These springs often throw out in succession great spouts or jets of steam mixed with boiling water. 11. Springs of this kind are called 'geysers.' The most celebrated geysers are found in Iceland, in North America, and in New Zealand. The geysers or spouting hot springs of Iceland occur in a desolate and barren district about thirty miles from the famous volcano of Hekla. There are about one hundred of them within two miles of each other; but one is much bigger than the others, and is called the Great Geyser.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short SUMMARY of paragraphs 7 to the end.

2. Write a short paper on 'The Boiling-point of Water' from the following heads: (1) What we see in a pot of water on the fire. (2) A thermometer placed in the water. (3) How the boiling is caused. (4) Boiling-point varies with weight of air. (5) Varies with height. (6) Application of this fact to the measuring of mountains.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) The water in the pan is disturbed. (2) This fact has been turned to account. (3) The springs discharge about two hundred thousand gallons of water every day. (4) At intervals. (5) A desolate and barren district.

4. Parse every word in the following sentence: 'It boils so soon, that it hardly becomes warm, and you could not cook an egg or a potato in it.'

5. Analyse the above sentence.

6. Write down all the words you know which are in any way connected with the following English words: or are derived from *No*; *heat*; *rise*<sup>1</sup>; *turn*<sup>2</sup>; *high*; *nigh*<sup>3</sup>; *say*; *long*.

<sup>1</sup> *Raise, rouse, rear.*    <sup>2</sup> *Trundle, etc.*    <sup>3</sup> *Neighbour, etc.*



## GREAT CITIES.

LONDON.



St Paul's and Old Blackfriars Bridge.

**Estimate**, judge, guess of. From Lat. *estimāre*, to value; from *aes*, brass or money.

**Contributes**, pays or gives as *tribute*. From Lat. *tribuo*, I give. Hence also: *Tribute*; *tributary*; *distribute*, etc.

**Connections**, binding ties. From Lat. *con*, together, and *necto*, I fasten.

**Radiate**, spread out in all directions like rays. From Lat. *radius*, a ray.

**Telegraph**, from Gr. *tēle*, at a distance, and *grapho*, I write. Cognates: *Photograph* (something written with light);

*caligraphy* (beautiful writing); *autograph* (something written by one's self).

**Conglomerate**, something made up of many other things. From Lat. *con*, together, and *glomerō*, I roll as a ball.

**Colossal**, very large, like a *Colossus*—a Latin name (from the Gr. *Kolosos*) given to a gigantic statue. The statue of Apollo, under which, as the story goes, ships sailed into the harbour of Rhodes, was called the *Colossus of Rhodes*.

**Markt**, a contracted form of the word *market*.

Convey

Fr.

con

to

Irresistible

From

and

con

l, a

1. L.

say, it

as we

length,

contrib

city by

its hous

stretche

London

has onl

Englan

that is,

connecti

town on

and stea

its ceatr

every di

3. Lon

province

overflow

in Midd

stretches

about six

It contain

many str

women w

houses.



**Conveyance, carriage.** From O. Fr. *conveier*, to carry; Lat. *con*, together, and *vehere*, to carry. Cognate: *Vehicle*. Irresistible, not to be withstood. From Lat. *in*, not, *re*, against, and *sisto*, I stand. (*In* becomes *ir* before *r*; *il* before *l*; as in *illiterate*; and *im*

before *p*, as in *impentable*.)

**Canopy, covering.** From Gr. *kônō-peion*, a covering to keep away the *kônōps* (mosquito).

**Cupola, a cup-shaped vault or dome.** An Italian diminutive of the Low Lat. *cupa* (Fr. *coupe*), a cup.

1. LONDON is the largest city in the world. That is to say, it contains more people than any other city. Just as we estimate the importance of a river—not by its length, nor by its breadth, but by the amount of water it contributes to the ocean—so we estimate the size of a city by the number of people it contains. Paris builds its houses higher into the air than London; but London stretches over a very much larger extent of ground. London has nearly four millions of inhabitants; Paris has only two millions. 2. London is the capital of England; but it is indeed also the capital of the world—that is, of the world of commerce. It has commercial connections with every country, and with every important town on the face of the globe. It sends out sailing-ships and steamers to all the countries of the world; and from its centre, railway lines and telegraph wires radiate in every direction.

3. London is, in fact, not so much a city, as a large province covered with houses. Its houses and streets overflow into four counties. The largest part of it stands in Middlesex; the next largest in Surrey; a large part stretches into Kent; and another into Essex. It is about sixteen miles long, and more than twelve broad. It contains eight thousand miles of street; and there are many streets entirely unknown to grown-up men and women who have lived all their lives in this wilderness of houses. 4. Every four minutes a birth takes place in

Beautiful writ-  
/k (something  
s self).

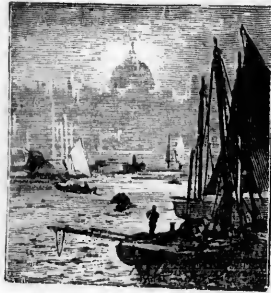
thing made up  
things. From  
ther, and glo-  
a ball.

like a Colossus  
(from the Gr.  
to a gigantic  
tue of Apollo,  
as the story  
led into the  
les, was called  
Rhodes.

form of the

London, and every six minutes, a death. Thus there are about three hundred and sixty children born into the metropolis every day; and about two hundred and forty persons die every twenty-four hours. But thirty-seven per cent. of its population are born in the country; and it contains more country-born persons than the counties of Devon and Gloucester put together. A town as large as Edinburgh is built every year and added to the maze and crowded population of London; and Edinburgh is a city of two hundred thousand souls. About thirty miles of new streets are opened every year. In fact, London is not one town, but a vast conglomerate of cities, towns, boroughs, and villages—all swallowed up by the yearly overgrowth of this colossal hive of human beings.

5. London was a flourishing little British town before the Romans came over here in the year 55 B.C.; it continued to grow from that time till the present, with hardly a check to its prosperity. In the fourteenth century—the time of the poet Chaucer, it was a prosperous city—‘small, and white, and clean’—a famous mart of wool and wine; and ships from Italy and Greece and other countries of the Mediterranean lay below bridge. 6. For it had then only one bridge; whereas fourteen railway and passenger bridges now span the current of Old Father Thames. It is, in truth, the river Thames that laid the foundation of the fortune of London. For the Thames is not merely one river; it is two rivers. The tide flows gently up



twice  
vessel  
and a  
own s  
of ca  
with g  
7.  
in the  
of per  
till ni  
in the  
ways  
and in  
to cro  
sands  
other  
suburb  
with h  
are co  
Steam  
and mi  
sixteen  
walls, a  
country  
country  
said, b  
market-  
Towns  
Highgat  
wich an  
is visibl  
London  
9. Bu  
in the

twice in every twenty-four hours; and thus barges and vessels of burden are carried up to London by the tide, and are borne away from London by the power of its own stream. Thus this river provides a large quantity of carrying power for nothing, and the barges laden with goods need only guidance.

7. The streets of London are the most crowded streets in the world. Thousands and hundreds of thousands of persons stream along its main arteries from morning till night; in the morning generally from west to east; in the evening with their faces to the west. The roadways are crowded with carriages, cabs, and omnibuses; and in many parts it is difficult, if not dangerous, to cross the streets. Within the town there are thousands of cabs, omnibuses, and tram-cars, and every other kind of conveyance; but without, through the suburbs, round the whole of the vast province covered with houses and buildings, and also underground, there are countless railways running in every direction. Steamers, too, run up and down the river at all hours and minutes of the day. 8. Down to the end of the sixteenth century, London was a city surrounded by walls, and connected with the city of Westminster by a country road; but now it has spread itself into the country in every direction—swallowing up, as has been said, boroughs, townships, villages, hamlets, fields, and market-gardens in its silent but irresistible progress. Towns like Lambeth, Chelsea, Hammersmith, Islington, Highgate, and—in the extreme east and west—Woolwich and Richmond, have all been absorbed. This fact is visible in the large numbers of *High Streets* which London contains.

9. But, not only is its own population the vastest in the world: a large population is poured into it

every morning by railway and by steamer from all parts of England and from every continent and country on the globe. It is reckoned that a population of more than two hundred thousand (not counting those who live in the suburbs and come in for business) enter London every morning; and that the same number of people leave it every evening. But a population of two hundred thousand is a population nearly as large as that of Edinburgh or Bristol, and larger than that of Newcastle-upon-Tyne. It is then as if a city nearly as large as Edinburgh or Bristol were left empty and deserted all night, and were visited and crowded all day by its thronging population. 10. And the population of London contains contributions from all the races and nationalities of the world. There are Chinese, Hindus, Persians, and Armenians from Asia; there are Peruvians and Chilians from the west of South America; there are Americans from San Francisco and the other cities of the Pacific slope; and there are, from every large town on the continent of Europe, Russians, Poles, Hungarians, Germans, Swedes, Norwegians, Finns, Frenchmen, Spaniards, and Portuguese. There are in London more Scotsmen than in Edinburgh; more Irish than in Belfast; more Welshmen than in Cardiff; more Jews than in Jerusalem; more Greeks than in Athens; and more Germans than in Frankfort. London draws to itself people of all tongues, races, and nationalities. It has paupers enough to fill all the houses in Brighton.

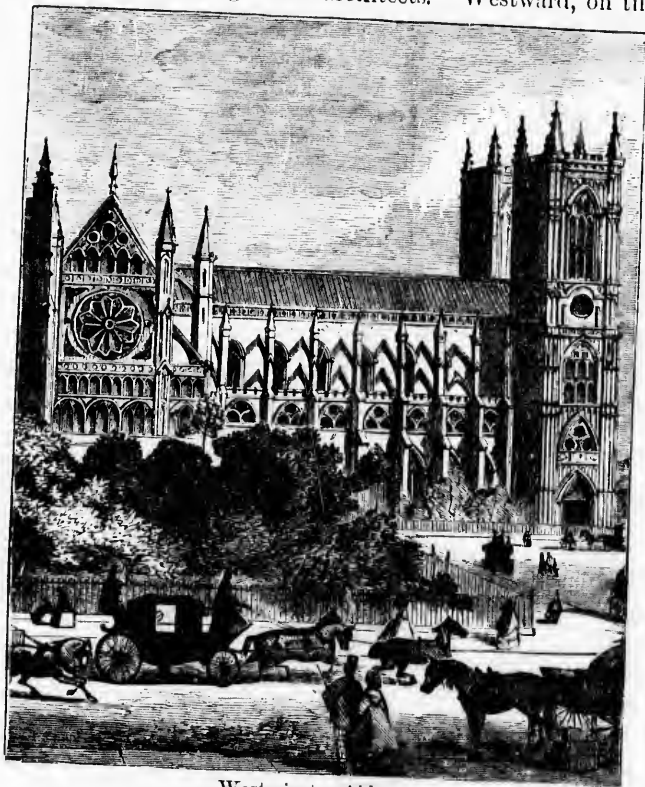
11. London is a wilderness of brick—with hundreds of miles of hideous streets, composed of insignificant and unsightly buildings; but it also contains some of the noblest edifices in the world. On a gently rising ground

in  
lar  
W



banks  
stand  
men v  
in art.

in the heart of the city rises St Paul's, one of the largest churches in the world, and a master-piece of Wren, one of the greatest architects. Westward, on the



Westminster Abbey.

banks of the Thames, the towers of Westminster Abbey stand, guarding the ashes of England's greatest men—men who have made her name famous by sea and land, in art, in science, and in letters.

12. Lord Byron, standing below London Bridge, on

the Surrey side of the river, looked across and described the great city in the following lines :

A mighty mass of brick, and smoke, and shipping,  
 Dirty and dusty, but as wide as eye  
 Could reach, with here and there a sail just skipping  
 In sight—then lost amidst a forestry  
 Of masts ; a wilderness of steeples peeping  
 On tiptoe through their sea-coal canopy ;  
 A huge, dim cupola, like a foolscap crown  
 On a fool's head—and this is London town.

13. But a poet with a truer eye and a more feeling heart—the poet Wordsworth, standing on Westminster Bridge in early morning in summer, when the level sun lighted up the houses, and the air was clear and free from smoke, thus described the scene that met his eye :

Earth has not anything to shew more fair :  
 Dull would he be of soul who could pass by  
 A sight so touching in its majesty.  
 The city now doth like a garland wear  
 The beauty of the morning ; silent, bare,  
 Ships, towers, domes, theatres, and temples lie  
 Open unto the fields and to the sky,  
 All bright and glittering in the smokeless air.

14. Every large and crowded city abounds in contrasts of various kinds ; but London is emphatically the *city of contrasts*. Trees and brick ; portions of the country clasped within the town, parts of the town running out into the country ; wide streets, open parks, and the narrowest and foulest lanes ; palaces and hovels ; splendour and squalor ; rich and poor ; virtuous and criminal ; learned and ignorant ; thoughtful consideration and the most wicked recklessness ; hideousness and beauty—all these contrasts may be perceived by the open-eyed spectator within the compass of a few minutes' walk.

EXE  
 inclusi  
 2. R  
 3. E  
 synony  
 of a ri  
 radiate  
 (5) Fou  
 (7) Lon  
 4. Pa  
 river Th  
 5. An

6. Giv  
 English  
 7. Giv  
 Latin w  
*tento*, I  
 carry (co  
 8. Mal  
*alight fro*  
 9. Wri  
 but spelt

The eye of  
 Purchase,  
 (its or  
 Fr. *p*  
 after c

1. All pla  
 Are, to  
 Teach  
 There :

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 4 to 8 inclusive.

2. Rewrite these paragraphs from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give a synonym for the single word: (1) We estimate the importance of a river by its contributions to the ocean. (2) Railway lines radiate from its centre. (3) Conglomerate. (4) A colossal hive. (5) Fourteen bridges span the current. (6) Irresistible progress. (7) London is emphatically the city of contrasts.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: It is the river Thames that laid the foundation of the fortune of London.

5. Analyse the following sentence:

Is all the counsel that we two have shared,  
The sisters' vows, the hours that we have spent,  
When we have chid the hasty-footed Time  
For parting us—oh! and is all forgot?

6. Give as many derivatives as you can from the following English words: *Say*; *long*; *nigh*; *year*; *grow*; *ship*; *lay*.

7. Give as many derivatives as you can from the following Latin words: *Porto*, I carry (combine with *in*, *sub*, *re*, *ex*); *tendo*, I stretch (combine with *ad*, *in*, *ex*, *pre*); and *veho*, I carry (combine with *con* and *in*).

8. Make three sentences containing the phrases: *Alight at*; *alight from*; and *alight on*.

9. Write, in columns, with their meanings, words sounded like, but spelt unlike: *Cite*; *climb*; *creak*.

### ABROAD AT HOME.

The eye of Heaven, the sun.

Purchase, pursue or hunt after (its original meaning). From

Fr. *pourchasser*, to follow after or prosecute.

The presence, the immediate presence of the king.

Measure, a slow movement to music.

1. All places that the eye of Heaven visits,  
Are, to a wise man, ports and happy havens:  
Teach thy necessity to reason thus;  
There is *no* virtue like necessity.

- Think not the king did banish thee ;  
 But thou the king. Woe doth the heavier sit  
 Where it perceives it is but faintly borne.
2. Go, say I sent thee forth to purchase honour,  
 And not the king exiled thee ; or suppose  
 Devouring pestilence hangs in our air,  
 And thou art flying to a fresher clime.  
 Look ; what thy soul holds dear, imagine it  
 To lie that way thou goest, not whence thou comest.  
 Suppose the singing birds musicians ;  
 The grass whereon thou tread'st the presence strewed ;  
 The flowers fair ladies ; and thy steps no more  
 Than a delightful measure or a dance ;  
 For gnarling sorrow hath less power to bite  
 The man that mocks at it, and sets it light.

SHAKSPEARE'S *King Richard II.*

CAUTIONS AND DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1.—Line 1 : Avoid the verse-accent upon *that*.—Line 5 :  
 The emphatic word is *the king*.—Line 7 : No accent upon *it*.

VERSE 2.—Line 7 : *Musicians* is a quadrisyllable.—Line 11 :  
 Avoid the verse-accent upon *hath*. The emphatic words are  
*less power*.

- EXERCISES.—1. Paraphrase the first part of the above poem.  
 2. Parse the words in the first two lines.  
 3. Analyse the sentence beginning : 'Woe doth the heavier  
 sit.'



Inex  
 Redr  
 Retar  
 Tum  
 Men  
 Inter  
 b  
 be  
 I  
 ra  
 Sentin  
 se  
 Se  
 Remor  
 wi  
 La  
 (m  
 it  
 1. A  
 momen  
 was fu  
 all ran  
 The  
 the inj  
 for no  
 comma

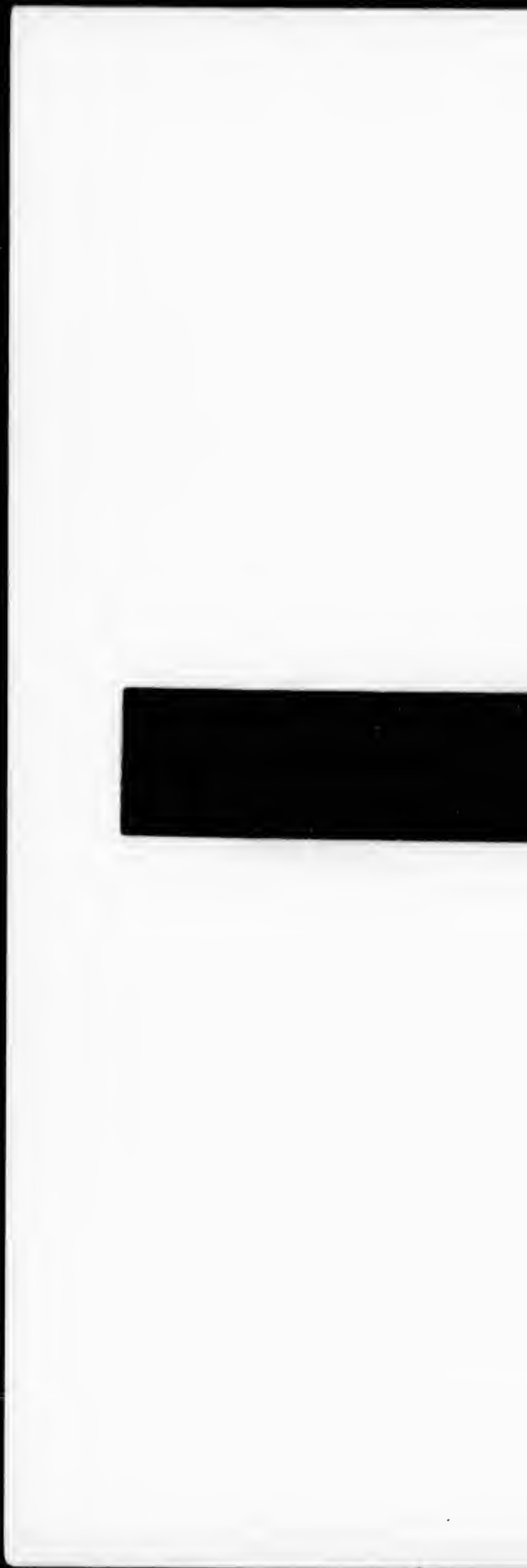


## 'YOU WILL REPENT IT.'

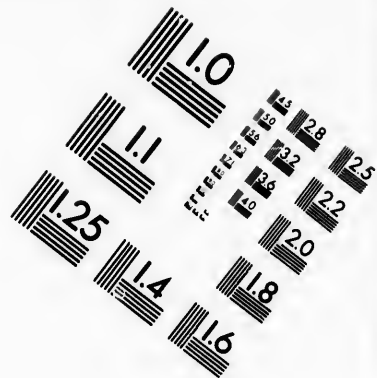
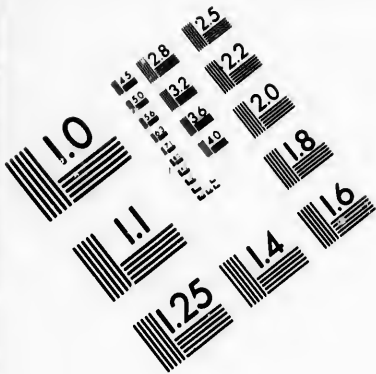
- Inexorable**, not to be turned away by entreaty or prayer. From Lat. *in*, not, and *exoro*, I beg from.
- Redress**, amends, or something to make up for.
- Retaliation**, revenge. From Lat. *retalio* (*retaliat-um*), I do like for like.
- Tumult**, violent agitation and confusion of spirits. From Lat. *tumultus*, confusion. Cognates: *Tumultuous*, *tumultuary*.
- Menace**, threat.
- Intercepted**, stopped by coming between. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *capio* (*capt-um*), I take. Cognates: *Reception*, *receptive*.
- Sentiment**, feeling. From Lat. *sentire*, to feel. Cognates: *Sentient*; *sentimental*.
- Remorse**, repentance accompanied with great pain. From Lat. *re*, again, and *mordeo* (*mors-um*), I bite. (In O. E. it was called *Agenbite*.)
- Martial**, warlike or relating to war. From *Mars*, the Roman god of war.
- Redoubt**, a work which is part of a large fortification—generally retired, for the purpose of affording the garrison a means of retreat.
- Hieroglyphic**, by means of signs, not words. From Gr. *hieros*, sacred, and *glyphē*, a mark.
- Ransomed**, bought back. From Fr. *rançon*, a shortened form of Lat. *redemptio*, a buying back. Hence *ransom* and *redemption* are the same word in different forms.
- Mutual**, of each other. From Lat. *mutuus*, in turn, reciprocal.
- Recognition**, knowledge. From Lat. *re*, again, and *cognosco* (*cognit-um*), I know. (The French form of the word is *reconnaitre*.) Cognates: *Recognise*, *recognisance*; *cognisable*, *cognition*; *cognisant*, *cognisance*.

1. A young officer had so far forgotten himself, in a moment of irritation, as to strike a private soldier who was full of personal dignity (as sometimes happens in all ranks), and distinguished for his courage.

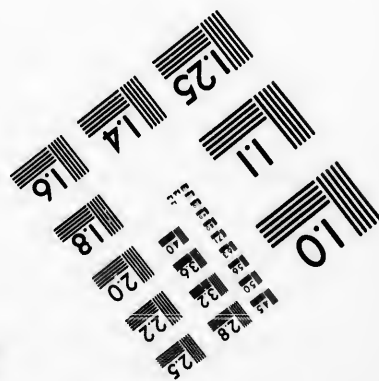
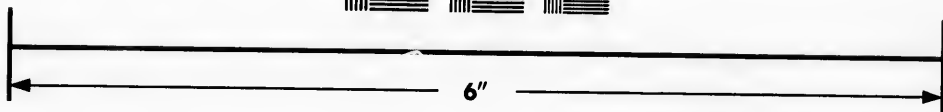
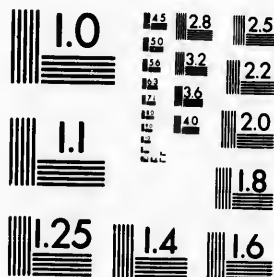
The inexorable laws of military discipline forbade to the injured soldier any practical redress. He could look for no retaliation by acts. 2. Words only were at his command; and, in a tumult of indignation, as he turned







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

10  
15  
12.8  
13.2  
13.6  
14  
18  
20  
22  
25

11  
1.0  
1.2  
1.5

away, the soldier said to his officer that he would 'make him repent it.'

This, wearing the shape of a menace, naturally rekindled the officer's anger, and intercepted any disposition which might be rising within him towards a sentiment of remorse; and thus the irritation between the two young men grew hotter than before.

3. Some weeks after this a partial action took place with the enemy. Suppose yourself a spectator, and looking down into a valley occupied by two armies. They are facing each other, you see, in martial array. But it is no more than a skirmish which is going on; in the course of which, however, an occasion suddenly arises for a desperate service. 4. A redoubt, which has fallen into the enemy's hand, must be recaptured at any price, and under circumstances of all but hopeless difficulty.

A strong party has volunteered for the service; there is a cry for somebody to head them; you see a soldier step out from the ranks to assume this dangerous leadership; the party moves rapidly forward; in a few minutes it is swallowed up from your eyes in clouds of smoke. 5. For one half-hour from behind these clouds you receive hieroglyphic reports of bloody strife—fierce repeating signals, flashes from the guns, rolling musketry, and exulting hurrahs, advancing or receding, slackening or redoubling.

At length all is over; the redoubt has been recovered; that which was lost is found again; the jewel which had been made captive is ransomed with blood. Crimsoned with blood, the wreck of the conquering party is relieved, and at liberty to return.

6. From the river you see it ascending. The plume-crested officer in command rushes forward, with his

left  
frag  
right  
than  
7.  
than  
four  
and  
the  
brav  
they  
paus  
O. re  
the s  
struc  
of arr  
If  
the d  
them  
9. A  
accoun  
arms  
as if  
death  
the so  
throug  
makes  
up for  
even w  
he said  
repent  
EXERC  
2. Wri  
summary

left hand raising his hat in homage to the blackened fragments of what was once a flag; whilst with his right hand he seizes that of the leader, though no more than a private from the ranks.

7. *That* perplexes you not: mystery you see none in *that*. For distinctions of order perish, ranks are confounded, 'high and low' are words without a meaning, and to wreck goes every notion or feeling that divides the noble from the noble, or the brave man from the brave. But wherefore is it that now, when suddenly they wheel into mutual recognition, suddenly they pause? 8. This soldier, this officer—who are they? O reader! once before they had stood face to face—the soldier it is that was struck; the officer it is that struck him. Once again they are meeting; and the gaze of armies is upon them.

If for a moment a doubt divides them, in a moment the doubt has perished. One glance exchanged between them publishes the forgiveness that is sealed for ever.

9. As one who recovers a brother whom he had accounted dead, the officer sprang forward, threw his arms around the neck of the soldier, and kissed him, as if he were some martyr glorified by that shadow of death from which he was returning; whilst on *his* part the soldier, stepping back, and carrying his open hand through the motions of the military salute to a superior, makes this immortal answer—that answer which shut up for ever the memory of the indignity offered to him, even whilst for the last time alluding to it: 'Sir,' he said, 'I told you before, that I would *make you repent it*.'

*De Quincey (1786-1859).*

- EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of the above story.  
2. Write a short paper on 'A Noble Revenge,' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases: (1) A moment of irritation. (2) The inexorable laws of military discipline forbade redress. (3) No retaliation. (4) Wearing the shape of a menace. (5) A redoubt must be recaptured at any price. (6) Hieroglyphic reports of bloody strife. (7) Distinctions of order perish. (8) They wheel into mutual recognition. (9) The memory of the indignity. (10) Alluding to it.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'One glance exchanged between them publishes the forgiveness that is sealed for ever.'

5. Analyse the following sentence :

I dreamed that, as I wandered by the way,  
Bare winter was changed suddenly to spring,  
And gentle odours led my steps astray,  
Mixed with the sound of waters murmuring.

6. Write down in columns all the words you know connected with the following English words: *No*; *far*; *bid*; *word*; *one*; *wear*; *rise*; *man*; *hot*; *fore*; *fall*; *all*.

7. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Oro*, I beg (root *ōr*, stem *orat*); *miles*, a soldier (root *milit*); *specto*, I behold (root *spect*, stem *spectat*); *sto*, I stand (root *stā*, stem *stāt*), compound with *circum*, *con*; *mors*, death (root *mort*); *memor*, mindful.

8. Write sentences containing the following words: *Scene* and *seen*; *seam* and *seem*; *some* and *sum*.

9. Write sentences containing the following phrases: *To give place to*; *to take the place of*; *to serve as a substitute*.



Proco  
P  
F  
co  
m  
th  
Comme  
F  
m  
M  
ric  
Stacua  
ste  
a  
sta  
fro  
Sto  
Trophie  
ria  
the  
Lat  
inflict  
con  
tog  
aft  
Arēna,  
san  
Lat  
Martyrs  
with  
mar  
Cog  
Corridors  
1. Ro  
world.  
754 be  
gradual  
ficent c



## GREAT CITIES.

## ROME.

- Proconsuls**, chief governors of a province, like our viceroys. From Lat. *pro*, for, and *consul*, one of the two chief magistrates or presidents of the Republic of Rome.
- Commemorate**, keep in memory. From Lat. *con*, together, and *memor*, mindful. Cognates: *Memory*, *memorable*, *memorial*; *commemoration*.
- Statuary**, the collective noun for *statues*. From Lat. *statua*, a standing image; from *statuo*, I cause to stand; from *sto*, I stand. Cognates: *Statute*; *station*, *stationary*.
- Trophies**, signs of triumph, memorials of victory taken from the enemy. From Fr. *trophée*; Lat. *tropæum*; Gr. *tropaion*.
- Inflicts**, combats or fights. From *confligo* (*conflictum*), I dash together. Cognates: *Afflict*, *affliction*.
- Arēna**, the space strewn with sand for combatants. From Lat. *arena*, sand.
- Martyrs**, witnesses to truth even with their lives. From Gr. *martyrs*, *martyros*, a witness. Cognate: *Martyrdom*.
- Corridors**, galleries or passageways. From It. *corridore*, a runner; from Lat. *curro*, I run.
- Pathetic**, awakening pity or deep feeling. From Gr. *pathos*, feeling.
- Squalor**, filthiness. A Latin word.
- Débris** (pronounced *daybree*), fragments. From Fr. *briser*, to break.
- Colonnades**, covered walks supported by columns. From Lat. *columna*, a column.
- Monotony**, sameness. From Gr. *monos*, alone or single, and *tonos*, tone. Cognates: *Monarch*, *monologue*.
- Catacombs**, underground caves used as burial-places. From Gr. *kata*, down, and *kymbē*, a hollow.
- Subterranean**, underground. From Lat. *sub*, under, and *terra*, the earth. Cognates: *Mediterranean*; *terrestrial*.
- Aqueducts**, long bridges for carrying water. From Lat. *aqua*, water, and *duco* (*duct-um*), I lead. Cognates: *Duct*, *ductile*; *viaduct*.
- Gondōla**, a long narrow pleasure-boat used in Venice.

1. ROME was once the mistress of the whole known world. Its foundation is generally placed in the year 754 before Christ. From a small square town, it gradually grew to be the largest and most magnificent city in the world—to be, in fact, the capital

of all the known countries of the earth. It sent out armies to subdue the then known world; it had its governors or proconsuls in three different continents; and it was visited by people of every nation and of every tribe. 2. The earliest Rome stood on the left bank of the 'yellow Tiber,' about sixteen miles from the sea. At first a very small place, it by degrees spread itself over the Seven Hills on which ancient Rome stood. At its highest pitch of prosperity, in the time of the Emperor *Vespasian*,<sup>1</sup> the population was as large as that of Paris is now—it reached the height of two millions of souls. Of these, more than one-third were slaves. It was a city abounding in splendid temples to the heathen gods, in vast palaces, in monuments of every kind—to commemorate private feelings for the dead, and to tell of glorious victories over distant nations; and all round the city were public gardens and parks, full of beautiful groups of trees, elegant public buildings, and fine specimens of statuary. It contained more than seventeen thousand palaces, above thirteen thousand fountains, nearly four thousand bronze statues of emperors and generals, twenty-two equestrian statues, nearly ten thousand baths, and more than thirty theatres. 3. The largest building in Rome was the *Coliseum*, a vast oval, more than a third of a mile in circuit, and one hundred and fifty-seven feet high.

Arches on arches! as it were that Rome,  
Collecting the chief trophies of her line,  
Would build up all her triumphs in one dome.

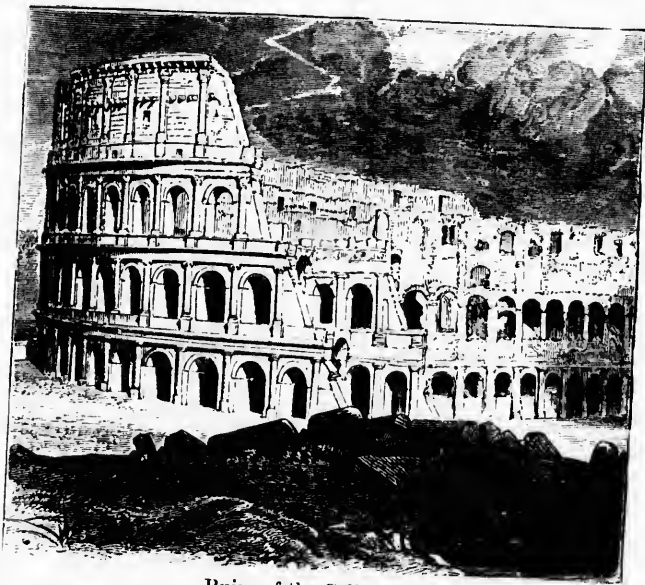
It was built for the purpose of exhibiting conflicts of Roman gladiators with each other or with wild beasts. It inclosed an area of five acres; and sloping gradually up from the arena were tiers upon tiers of seats, capable of containing more than eighty thousand spectators.

4.  
rela  
the  
in h  
ing  
to d  
man



went on  
named  
horrified  
and bes  
He was  
never af  
5. Th

4. At the first exhibition in the Coliseum, it is related that five thousand animals were slaughtered in the arena. When Hadrian<sup>2</sup> gave an entertainment there in honour of his birthday, a thousand animals—including a hundred lions and a hundred lionesses—were put to death in combat. The gladiatorial conflicts between man and man, and the fight between men and beasts,



Ruins of the Coliseum.

went on till the year 403, when a monk from the East, named Telemæchus, happening to be present, was so horrified, that he rushed into the midst of the arena and besought the spectators to put an end to them. He was stoned to death; but such exhibitions were never afterwards presented to the people.

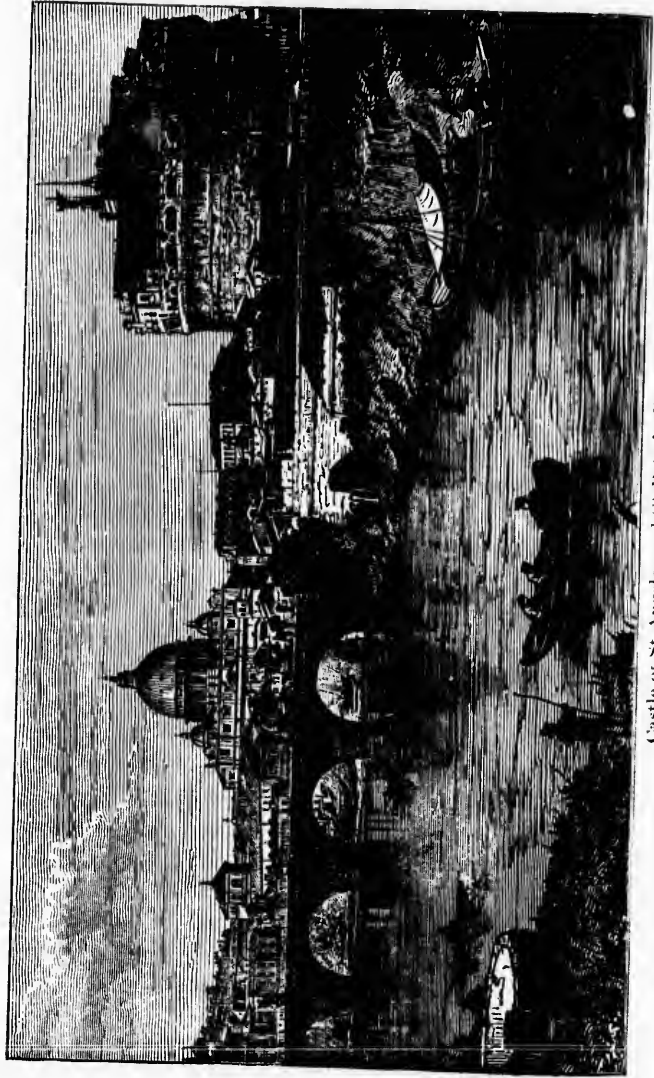
5. The ruins themselves fill the beholder with a

mixture of admiration, awe, and terror ; but what would our feelings be if we could view this vast crowd of eighty thousand eager faces staring down into the arena, and following the varying fortunes of two men fighting for their lives—following them with an unceasing storm of yells and shouts and roars ; while such a whirl of strife and blood and dust went on as no modern mind can even imagine ! Wild beasts were often introduced ; and martyrs and other offenders against Roman law were thrown to them, to gratify the cruel lust for blood which had grown up amongst the Romans.

6. But now, the Coliseum is a scene of the deepest peace. The vast building goes on crumbling year by year ; its walls and arches are overgrown with grass and wild-flowers, its corridors open to the sky ; young trees spring up on the parapets ; a cross stands in the middle of the arena, birds build their nests under the seats ; and, if one thinks of its past and contrasts it with its present state, it is the most impressive, the most solemn, the most pathetic, the most mournful sight that the human mind can conceive.

7. During the Middle Ages, Rome dwindled in size and population to an immense extent. It sank to the size of a fifth-rate English town. When the popes forsook it in the fourteenth century, and removed to Avignon,<sup>3</sup> in the south of France, the population fell to seventeen thousand. Even now it is not so large a city as Naples, though it is a thousand times more interesting. In fact, the greatness of Rome is to be looked for in the past, not in the present. If we compare Rome as it is with Rome as it was under the emperors, it is rather a tomb than a city. The ruins are more important than the modern buildings ; its history greater than its present life.

8. Modern Rome is inclosed by a wall twelve miles in circumference, which is pierced with sixteen gates. But not more than one-third of this vast space is inhabited; the rest lies desert, or is filled with market-gardens, vineyards, and public walks. The principal street, which is called the Corso, is about a mile in length. Most of the other streets are winding, narrow, dirty, and unpaved—'indescribably ugly, cold, and alley-like.' Miserable tumble-down huts stand close beside or lean against the walls of the finest palaces; and the dirt and squalor, the ruins and the débris—the mouldering remains of bygone grandeur, render many parts peculiarly sad and desolate. 9. And yet there is no part of Rome that does not possess a special interest of its own. Churches, palaces, convents, libraries, colonnades, theatres, fountains, statues—and all kinds of public buildings, meet the eye at every turn. There is no monotony, no distressing sameness, no tiresome uniformity. Almost every building and house is different in style and form from every other. 10. There are more than three hundred churches in Rome, many of them of great beauty, of striking architecture, rich in paintings, statuary, fine carvings, and beautiful stained glass. Here and there the eye falls upon the enormous mansions of the Roman nobility. A wonderful brightness and cheerfulness is given to many of the streets by fountains, which send up their silvery columns into the blue sun-steeped air. The two largest buildings in Rome are the Vatican<sup>4</sup> and St Peter's. 11. The Vatican—which is the winter residence of the Pope—is probably the largest house in the world. It contains eleven thousand rooms—many of which are halls and galleries—and eight grand staircases; and within the building itself are twenty courts and numerous gardens, with trees and



Castle of St. Angelo, and St Peter's, Rome.

flo  
 of  
 wo  
 tho  
 ma  
 12.  
 dom  
 Mic  
 sec  
 seve  
 enor  
 deco  
 of a  
 color  
 great  
 Mod  
 13.  
 and  
 which  
 grou  
 subte  
 stones  
 south  
 the sa  
 numb  
 the Ea  
 to disa  
 spend  
 14. And  
 splend  
 neighb  
 are no  
 in thei  
 of their

flowers and fountains. It contains the richest collection of works of art—both ancient and modern—in the world; and possesses a library of more than a hundred thousand volumes, and nearly twenty-five thousand manuscripts in almost all the languages of the globe.

12. St Peter's is the largest church in the world. The dome was designed by the great painter and poet, Michael Angelo Buonarrotti,<sup>5</sup> who was then in his seventy-second year. The whole church took one hundred and seventy-six years to build, at a cost equivalent to the enormous sum of ten millions sterling. The internal decorations are richer and more beautiful than those of any church in the world; and the wide-spreading colonnades and high-springing fountains in front of the great dome add to the majesty of its appearance.

Modern Rome contains more than eighty palaces.

13. But besides the Rome that stands above ground and is seen, there is a Rome—once a populous city—which is under ground, and which is not seen. Underground Rome consists of the catacombs. These are subterranean galleries which were formed by quarrying stones for the building of the ancient city; and the south side of Paris stands upon numerous catacombs of the same nature. The catacombs of Rome are fifty in number. They were the refuge and abode of thousands of the Early Christians, who were compelled by persecution to disappear from the sunlight and the upper air, and to spend their lives in dark caves and galleries of stone.

14. Ancient Rome was well supplied with water. Nine splendid aqueducts brought clear crystal water from the neighbouring mountains and hills; but of these there are now only three in use. The ancient Romans were in their time the greatest road-makers in the world; and of their strongly-made, or rather strongly-built roads, the



Castle of St. Angelo, and St Peter's, Rome.

best example is the *Appian Way*,<sup>6</sup> which still survives, and is constructed of square blocks of stone.

15. When the new kingdom of Italy was founded in 1859, FLORENCE was selected as the capital. Florence the Fair, or, as the Italians call it, *Firenze la Bella*, stands on the Arno, about fifty miles from the coast, and surrounded by beautiful hills. Its church of the Holy Cross is the Westminster Abbey of Italy; and within its walls lie the bones of Dante,<sup>7</sup> Michael Angelo, Galileo,<sup>8</sup> and other great men. But, since 1870, the seat of the capital has been removed to Rome.

16. Another of the great cities of Italy is VENICE, one of the most curious and remarkable towns in the world. It may be said to stand in the sea; its streets are canals; its cabs are gondōlas; and there is an eternal silence over the city.

The sea is in the broad, the narrow streets,  
Ebbing and flowing; and the salt sea-weed  
Clings to the marble of her palaces.  
No track of men, no footsteps to and fro,  
Lead to her gates. The path lies o'er the sea,  
Invincible; and from the land we went  
As to a floating city—steering in,  
And gliding up her streets as in a dream.

17. Venice was once the capital of a proud and powerful republic, which was Queen of the Adriatic,<sup>9</sup> and which held Cyprus<sup>10</sup> and the Morea<sup>11</sup> in her hands. The president was called *Doge*, or Duke; and, in a splendid and glittering ceremony, he 'married the Adriatic' once a year. The first Doge was created in 809; and he was followed by seventy-nine successors, the last of whom disappeared in 1797.

18. Rome was once the centre of the known world; the most powerful military state—in comparison with the others of her time—that ever the world saw;

an  
th  
m  
to  
ce  
by  
th  
no  
sh  
arc  
sid

1 V

2 Ha

3 Av

4 Vati

5 Mich

(1  
sin  
gr  
an  
we



and all known nations paid tribute to her. That was the time when all power was based upon arms and military skill, and when the Mediterranean was believed to be the only great sea in the world, and to stand in the centre of the earth. Now, however, power is wielded by commerce; and the new Mediterranean of nations is the Atlantic Ocean. The great tide of commerce does not come near Rome; she is stranded upon the deserted shores of ancient times; and the currents of power sweep around England and that Newer England on the other side of the Atlantic which is called the United States.

## NOTES.

- <sup>1</sup> **Vespasian**, a Roman emperor from 69 to 79 A.D. He built the Coliseum, and was the father of Titus, who took Jerusalem, 70 A.D.
- <sup>2</sup> **Hadrian** or **Adrian**, a Roman emperor from 117 to 138. In 121 he built the wall which extends from the Tyne to the Solway Firth.
- <sup>3</sup> **Avignon**, a beautiful city in the south of France, on the left bank of the Rhone, about 76 miles from Marseilles. It belonged to the Papal States till 1791. It was the residence of the Popes from 1309 to 1394.
- <sup>4</sup> **Vatican**, begun by Pope Eugenius III. in 1146; and Gregory XI. fixed his permanent residence there in 1376.
- <sup>5</sup> **Michael Angelo Buonarotti** (1474-1563), commonly called simply *Michael Angelo*, a great Italian sculptor, painter, and architect. His remains were buried in the church of Santa Croce (Holy Cross), in Florence.
- <sup>6</sup> **Applan Way**, the most important road out of the city of Rome. It ran from Rome to Capua and Brundisium (*Brindisi*), and was constructed of large blocks of stone. It was built by Appius Claudius, 312 B.C.
- <sup>7</sup> **Dante Alighieri**, commonly called *Dantë* (1265-1321), was the greatest of Italian poets. His chief work was *La Divina Commedia*, which consists of three parts — the *Inferno*, *Purgatorio*, and *Paradiso*.
- <sup>8</sup> **Gallëo Gallëi**, a great Italian astronomer (born 1564, the same year as Shakspeare; died 1642, twenty-six years after Shakspeare), who was imprisoned by the Inquisition for declaring that the earth moved round the sun. After signing a recantation, he whispered to a friend: 'It moves, for all that.'

<sup>9</sup> **Adriatic**, the name of the long narrow sea which lies between Italy and Austria and Greece. It took its name from the town of Adria, which was in pre-Christian times on the sea-shore at the mouth of the river Po, but is now fourteen miles inland. This is due to the vast amount of mud and stones brought down by its tributaries from the Alps.

<sup>10</sup> **Cyprus**, an island in the eastern corner of the Mediterranean.

It belonged to the Turks, who took it in 1571, but is now in the keeping of Great Britain. It is a beautiful and fertile island, but in some parts has a bad climate.

<sup>11</sup> **Morëa**, the peninsula at the south of Greece, with which it is connected by the Isthmus of Corinth. It was formerly called *Peloponnesus*. (The word *Morëa* is said to be derived from the Gr. *moron*, a *mulberry-leaf*; that being the shape of the peninsula.)

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 8 to 12 inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on 'Modern Rome' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) At its highest pitch of prosperity. (2) Proconsuls. (3) To commemorate private feelings. (4) Collecting the chief trophies of her line. (5) Hadrian gave an entertainment in honour of his birthday. (6) Following the varying fortunes of two men fighting for their lives. (7) The most pathetic sight that the human mind can conceive. (8) A wall pierced with sixteen gates. (9) Squalor. (10) Débris. (11) There is no monotony. (12) The internal decorations. (13) Subterranean galleries. (14) Its cabs are gondolas. (15) Power is now wielded by commerce. (16) Rome is stranded upon the deserted shores of ancient times.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'That was the time when all power was based upon arms and military skill.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

Most sweet it is with unuplifted eyes  
To pace the ground, if path there be or none,  
While a fair region round the traveller lies  
Which he forbears again to look upon.

6. Give all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Five*; *land*; *call*; *hill*; *town*; *sea*; *clip*<sup>1</sup>; *sweep*<sup>2</sup>; *all*; *follow*; *heal*.

<sup>1</sup> *Cleave*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Swoop*, etc.

## A MANLY LIFE.

[Felix Holt's election speech to the working-men of Treby Magna.]

Voting, giving formally and officially an opinion.

Political power, power over the policy followed in a country. From Gr. *pólis*, a city, and *politeia*, the mode of governing a state or city. Cognates: *Politics*, *politician*; *police*, *policy*.

Idiot, a person without sense. From Gr. *idiōtes*, a private person who took no share in the government of the state, and was hence looked down upon. Cognates: *Idiotic*; *idiocy*; *idiom* (a phrase peculiar or private to a country).

Parliaments, meetings of national representatives to discuss national business. From Fr. *parler*, to speak. Cognates: *Parliamentary*; *parley*; *parlance*; *parlour*.

Defile, make foul. From O. E. *fylan*, to pollute. Cognates: *Foul*, *filth*.

Corruption, bribery. From Lat. *corrumpo* (*corrupt-um*), I break down, corrupt. Cognates: *Corrupt*, *corruptible*; *disrupt*, *disruption*; *eruption*.

Scheme, plan or device. From Gr. *schema*, a plan.

Pilfer, steal. A strengthened form of *pill*, to strip bare. From Lat. *pilāre*, to plunder or take away the hair; from *pilus*, a hair. Cognates: *Pilferer*; *pillage*; *pile* (the nap on cloth).

Cant, insincere talk. From Lat. *canto*, I sing. Cognates: *Canto*; *canticle*; *incantation* (through Fr. *chant*, *enchant*).

Cranny, a secret corner or chink. From Fr. *cran*.

Majority, the larger number. From Lat. *major*, larger. Cognates: *Major*; (through Fr.) *mayor*, *mayoralty*. (The opposite is minority.)

1. 'In my opinion, that was a true word spoken by your friend when he said the great question was how to give every man a man's share in life. But I think he expects voting to do more towards it than I do. I want the working-men to have power. I'm a working-man myself, and I don't want to be anything else. But there are two sorts of power. There's a power to do mischief—to undo what has been done with great expense and labour, to waste and destroy, to be cruel to the weak, to

lie and quarrel, and to talk poisonous nonsense. 2. That's the sort of power that ignorant numbers have. It never made a joint-stool, or planted a potato. Do you think it's likely to do much towards governing a great country, and making wise laws, and giving shelter, food, and clothes to millions of men? Ignorant power comes in the end to the same thing as wicked power; it makes misery. 3. It's another sort of power that I want us working-men to have, and I can see plainly enough that our all having votes will do little towards it at present. I hope we, or the children that come after us, will get plenty of political power some time. I tell everybody plainly, I hope there will be great changes, and that some time, whether we live to see it or not, men will have come to be ashamed of things they're proud of now. 4. But I should like to convince you that votes would never give you political power worth having while things are as they are now; and that if you go the right way to work, you may get power sooner without votes. Perhaps all you who hear me are sober men, who try to learn as much of the nature of things as you can, and to be as little like fools as possible. A fool or idiot is one who expects things to happen that never can happen; he pours milk into a can without a bottom, and expects the milk to stay there. The more of such vain expectations a man has, the more he is of a fool or idiot. 5. And if any working-man expects a vote to do for him what it never can do, he's foolish to that amount, if no more.

'The way to get rid of folly, is to get rid of vain expectations, and of thoughts that don't agree with the nature of things. The men who have had true thoughts about water, and what it will do when it is turned into steam, and under all sorts of circumstances, have made

themselves a great power in the world: they are turning the wheels of engines that will help to change most things.\* 6. But no engines would have done, if there had been false notions about the way water would act. Now, all the schemes about voting, and districts, and annual parliaments, and the rest, are engines, and the water or steam—the force that is to work them—must come out of human nature—out of men's passions, feelings, desires. 7. Whether the engines will do good work or bad, depends on these feelings; and if we have false expectations about men's characters, we are very much like the idiot who thinks he'll carry milk in a can without a bottom. In my opinion, the notions about what mere voting will do, are very much of that sort.'

'That's very fine,' said a man in dirty fustian, with a scornful laugh. 'But how are we to get the power without votes?'

8. 'I'll tell you what's the greatest power under heaven,' said Felix, 'and that is public opinion, the ruling belief in society about what is right and what is wrong, what is honourable and what is shameful. That's the steam that is to work the engines. How can political freedom make us better, any more than a religion we don't believe in, if people laugh and wink when they see men abuse and defile it? 9. And while public opinion is what it is—while men have no better beliefs about public duty—while corruption is not felt to be a disgrace—while men are not ashamed in parliament and out of it to make public questions which concern the welfare of millions a mere screen for their own petty private ends—I say, no fresh scheme of voting will much mend

\* This was said about the time in which the great Reform Bill (of 1832) was passed.

our condition. For, take us working-men of all sorts. Suppose out of every hundred who had a vote there were thirty who had some soberness, some sense to choose with, some good feeling to make them wish the right thing for all. 10. And suppose there were seventy out of the hundred who were, half of them, not sober, who had no sense to choose one thing in politics more than another, and who had so little good feeling in them that they wasted on their own drinking the money that should have helped to feed and clothe their wives and children ; and another half of them who, if they didn't drink, were too ignorant or mean or stupid to see any good for themselves better than pocketing a five-shilling piece when it was offered them. Where would be the political power of the thirty sober men ? The power would lie with the seventy drunken and stupid votes ; and I'll tell you what sort of men would get the power—what sort of men would end by returning whom they pleased to parliament.

11. 'They would be men who would undertake to do the business for a candidate, and return him ; men who have no real opinions, but who pilfer the words of every opinion, and turn them into a cant which will serve their purpose at the moment ; men who look out for dirty work to make their fortunes by, because dirty work wants little talent and no conscience ; men who know all the ins and outs of bribery, because there is not a cranny in their own souls where a bribe can't enter. Such men as these will be the masters wherever there's a majority of voters who care more for money, more for drink, more for some mean little end which is their own and nobody else's, than for anything that has ever been called Right in the world.'

*George Eliot, 'Feiz Holt.'*

EXERCISES.—1. Make a short SUMMARY of the above lesson.

2. Write a short paper on 'Clean Politics,' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) Plenty of political power. (2) Annual parliaments. (3) We ought not to have false expectations about men's characters. (4) Public opinion. (5) Men abuse and defile both politics and religion. (6) Corruption. (7) Scheme. (8) Pilfer. (9) Cant. (10) Dirty work wants little talent and no conscience. (11) Cranny. (12) A majority of voters.

4. Parse the following sentence: 'A fool or idiot is one who expects things to happen that never can happen.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

O indefatigable labourer

In the paths of men! when thou shalt die, 'twill be

A mark of thy surpassing industry,

That of the monument which men shall rear

Over thy most inestimable bone,

Thou didst thy very self lay the first stone!

(Addressed by T. Hood to Mr Macadam, the inventor of Macadamised roads.)

6. Give all the words you know connected with the following English words: *True*<sup>1</sup>; *say*; *share*; *wane*<sup>2</sup>; *make*; *other*<sup>3</sup>; *can*; *fool*; *man*; *turn*; *good*; *bit*<sup>4</sup>; *clothe*; *half*.

7. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Canlidus*, white; *canto*, I sing (root *cant*, stem *cantāt*); *scio*, I know, compound with *con* and *ne*; *majior*, greater; *minor*, less; *sto*, I stand (root *stā*, stem *stat*), compound with *con*, *in*, *circum*, and *dis*; *guberno*, I steer (through Fr.).

8. Make sentences containing the following words: *Abstract*; *compact*; *concert*; *convoy*; *digest*.

9. Make sentences containing the following phrases: *To get rid of vain expectations*; *to occupy one's self with*; *to serve the purpose of the moment*; *to know all the ins and outs of a subject*.

<sup>1</sup> *Trow, troth, etc.*

<sup>3</sup> *Or, either, etc.*

<sup>2</sup> *Want, etc.*

<sup>4</sup> *Bite, bitter, etc.*

## GREAT CITIES.

## PARIS.

- Untainted**, pure, unblemished. From Fr. *teindre*, to dye; from Lat. *tingo* (*tinctum*), to moisten. Cognates: *Tinge*; *tincture*.
- Aspect**, appearance. From Lat. *aspicio* (*aspectum*), I look on.
- Preoccupation**, occupation of the mind with something else than what is going on around. From Lat. *præ*, before, and *occupo*, I seize.
- Record, account**—generally written account. From Lat. *re*, again, and *cor* (*cord-is*), the heart or mind.
- Ambassadors**, officials who represent their sovereigns or states at a foreign court.
- Vicissitudes**, changes from good to bad and from bad to good. From Lat. *vices*, turns; *vicissim*, by turns.
- Marvel**, wonder. From Fr. *merveille*; from Lat. *mirabilis*, wonderful. (The *b* and *v* being both labials, are interchangeable.)
- Bastion**, a mass of earth or masonry, built at the angles of a fortification. From O. Fr. *bastir*, to build.
- Exterior** (a Latin word), outside; opposed to Lat. *interior*, inside.
- Fortifications**, long mounds, ditches, and fortresses for the protection of a town or country against war. From Lat. *fortis*, strong, and *facio*, I make.
- Boulevards**, wide streets generally planted with trees. (In Paris, they were originally the old walls thrown down; from *bouleverser*, to throw down.)
- Avenues**, a name for a wide approach, or street. From Fr. *à*, to, and *venir*, to come.
- Arcade**, a walk arched over. From Lat. *arcus*, a bow.
- Enterprise**, courageous and *undertaking* character. From Fr. *entreprendre*, to undertake.
- Energy**, great and steady activity. From Gr. *energeia*; from *en*, in, and *eryon*, a work.
- Suites**, sets of rooms connected with and *following* each other. From Fr. *suivre*, to follow; from Low Lat. *sequere*; from Lat. *sequi*. Cognates: *Suit* (of clothes, or suit at law); *suitable*; and (straight from Latin) *sequel*, *sequent*; *consequence*; *prosecute*; *persecute*, etc.
- Pestilent**, harbouring disease. From Lat. *pestis*, plague or severe disease.
- Bookeries**, a name here given to low and crowded quarters of

Org

Em

1

If I

the

part

plea

man

poin

brick

murk

with

and r

noble

hard

Paris

occup

3. I

Gauls,

any re

refuge-

trees, t

hard p

protect

at the

la Cité,

the cap

upon t

St Lou

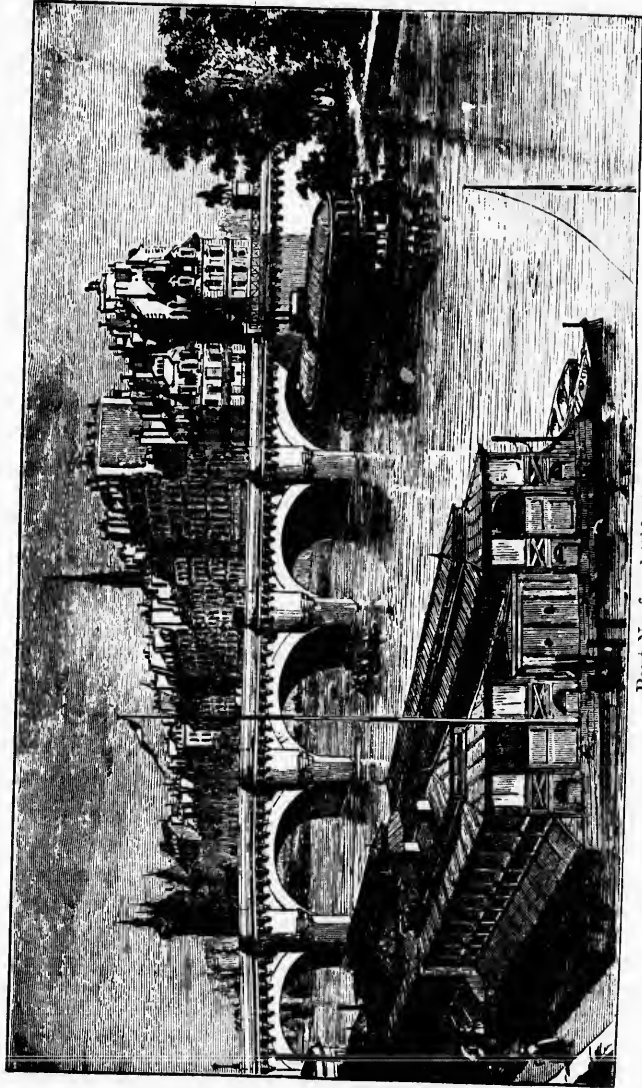


a town, frequented by thieves and bad characters.  
**Organised**, planned and arranged. From Gr. *organon*, an instrument; from *ergo*, I do or make.  
**Embellishment**, making beautiful. From Fr. *embellir*; from Lat. *bellus*, pretty.

**Diversity**, variety. From Lat. *diversus*, different. Cognate: *Diverse*.  
**Translucent**, with light shining through it. From Lat. *trans*, through, and *lucco*, I lighten; from *lux* (*luc-is*), light.

1. PARIS is the largest city on the continent of Europe. If London is the business capital of the world, Paris is the pleasure capital. To Paris come people from all parts of this globe to enjoy themselves, to spend a pleasant holiday, and to spend also in the most agreeable manner any money they may have made. 2. It has other points of contrast with London. London is built of brick; Paris of beautiful white stone. London has a dull murky sky; the sky of Paris is clear blue, untainted with smoke. The streets of London are often narrow and mean; those of Paris are for the most part wide and noble. There is in London a general aspect of business, hard work, and preoccupation; the best-known parts of Paris are filled with people who seem to have no other occupation than that of enjoying themselves.

3. Paris received its name from a small tribe of the Gauls, called the *Parisii*. In the earliest times we have any record of, the spot was a rude fortress and place of refuge—with huts built of mud, reeds, and branches of trees, to which this wild tribe betook themselves when hard pressed by their enemies, and where they were protected by the two branches of the river, which parted at the island—now called the Island of the City (*Ile de la Cité*). In the year 507, the town built here became the capital of the north of France; and it then stood upon two islands—the *Ile de la Cité* and the *Ile de St Louis*. It was then but a small village; it is now,



Pont-Neuf and Old City, Paris.

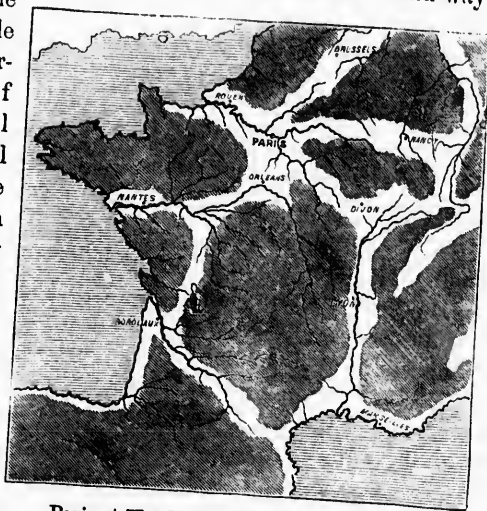
as  
th  
th  
up  
sta  
and  
and  
cen  
—o  
mos  
allu  
vall  
Fran  
the  
roads  
coun  
take  
throu  
centr  
great  
valley  
at Pa  
Just a  
don st  
the ce  
the  
water-v  
merce  
great l  
country  
500 m  
650 fr  
Railway

as has been said, the largest and most beautiful city on the continent.

4. Paris stands upon both banks of the Seine—two-thirds of it upon the north or right bank ; and one-third upon the south or left bank of the river. It does not stand in the centre of France ; but, as Paris is the head and the brain of that great country, it is indeed its moral and intellectual centre. But though Paris is not in the centre of France, it stands at the head of all the land-ways

—of all the most fertile alluvial river-valleys of France. All the natural roads of the country which take their way through the centre of the great river-valleys, meet at Paris. 5.

Just as London stands at the centre of the great



Paris at Head of the Land-ways of France.

water-ways of the world, and thus commands the commerce of the world, so Paris stands at the centre of the great land-ways of France—the richest and most fertile country in Europe. It is about 250 miles from London ; 500 miles from the Mediterranean ; 750 from Rome ; 650 from Madrid ; and 1300 from Constantinople. Railways unite it with all these towns (except the last),



Pont-Neuf and Old City, Paris.

and indeed with every town of the smallest importance in Europe. 6. Paris is the seat of the government of France, the place where all the ambassadors from foreign countries reside, the centre of all the banking branches of the country, the home of law, learning, and science. It has seen the most terrible vicissitudes ; it has gone through the most fearful experiences of war—through the most terrible scenes of blood and fire ; but it has emerged with little injury from them all.

7. The city itself is a marvel of architectural beauty and of ever-wonderful variety. It is surrounded by a strong wall of stone with ninety-four bastions, and with a deep exterior ditch, and a broad military road outside. The hills and rising grounds around Paris are also crowned with very strong fortifications. Paris has always been surrounded by walls ; but the present system of fortifications was begun in the year 1840. 8. Despite the wars and sieges she has had to undergo, Paris has grown steadily in size, in beauty, and in population. Four centuries ago—in the year 1474, the year when the first English printed book was published in London—Paris had a population of only 150,000 ; in the year 1802 it had slowly grown to 670,000 ; but, from the beginning of this century, it has shot up with marvellous rapidity, until now—in the year 1880—Paris numbers about two millions of inhabitants. 9. The wealth and industry of the inhabitants have changed the whole appearance of this splendid city within the last quarter of a century. Magnificent streets of palaces, broad boulevards and avenues, buildings of wonderful beauty, strike the newcomer with amazement as he enters this modern Babylon. 10. Broad boulevards and avenues, lined with trees, and commanded by lofty houses built of fine white stone—houses which are seven or eight stories high,

with  
with  
wh  
the  
and  
sun  
and  
and  
cove  
brill  
vari  
of th  
walk  
Paris  
with  
flowe  
marb  
spray  
and q  
fall o  
line t  
energy  
desert  
they a  
enough  
splendi  
the wh  
twenty-  
stone,  
arches,  
also ma  
flowers ;  
as can b  
13. TH

with balconies ornamented by light ironwork and filled with flowers of various colours, run for miles round the whole town. Some of these boulevards run also through the heart of Paris, and are crowded with carriages, cabs, and foot-passengers, who stream along in the afternoon sunshine in one unbroken current of pleasure-seeking men and women. The shops are the most beautiful, varied, and striking in Europe. 11. The Passages, which are covered streets, and which are also lined with gay and brilliant shops of every kind, form a special feature in the varied world of Paris. There are one hundred and sixty of them; and thus the Parisian and the foreigner may walk for miles under a covering of glass in any weather. Paris has her squares too, with arcades round the sides, with gardens in the middle of them—gardens gay with flowers and green with trees, while often a beautiful marble fountain will send up its column of glittering spray into the bright sunshine, and give a sense of hush and quiet and coolness by the gentle plash and perpetual fall of its waters. 12. The magnificent quays, which line the river for miles, are due to the enterprise and energy of Napoleon I. But, as commerce has nearly deserted the Seine and prefers the land-road of railways, they are not lined by forests of masts, but—oddly enough—by lines of old-book stalls. Still they are splendid promenades, and add to the finished beauty of the whole river scene. The river itself is crossed by twenty-six light and elegant bridges, mostly built of stone, but some consisting of wide sweeps of iron arches, as strong as they are graceful. The city contains also many gardens and parks, gay with vari-coloured flowers; though they are not so numerous nor so large as can be seen in London.

13. The whole city contains about seventy thousand

houses ; but, as these are much higher than most of the houses in London, and contain different families living in separate suites of rooms upon each story, the population is much more dense than in London. The greatest improvements in the city have been made since the year 1854, when Napoleon III. invited Baron Hausmann to Paris, and ordered him to set to work. Hausmann quickly cleared out the dark and narrow streets, pulled down the picturesque but pestilent old houses, drove splendid boulevards and streets through the crowded rookeries, and let in light and air upon all the old parts of Paris.

14. The Museums, under which head the French include galleries of painting and sculpture, form a remarkable feature of this remarkable city. Museums of antiquities, of natural history, of war, of geography, of art, of science—all are open free of expense to the intelligent and inquiring visitor. The National Library of Paris has itself nearly two million books—almost double the number of the books in the British Museum ; and it has scores of miles of shelves. 15. Fine buildings meet the eye everywhere—churches of every age and in every style, palaces, spacious markets, hospitals and colleges, theatres and magnificent barracks. The International Exhibitions of Paris have always been famous for the scale upon which they have been organised, as well as for the results achieved. 16. There are in Paris industries of almost every kind. Jewellery, clock-making ; working in gold, silver, and iron ; furniture, chemicals, printing—all these exercise the patient and cheerful ingenuity of the Parisian workman. It has also long been noted for beautiful porcelain and rich carpets.

17. The first attempts at the embellishment of Paris

on  
Lo  
we  
Na  
stri  
18.  
—a  
buil  
of v  
over  
mist  
  
En  
inclus  
2.  
summ  
3. P  
synon  
contra  
centre  
has se  
of pala  
quays  
(7) Cor  
suites  
(11) En  
4. Pa  
greatest  
when M  
5. Au  
  
6. Wri  
the follow  
give ; self  
1 St

on a large scale were made by Louis XIV., called also Louis the Great. Enormous changes and improvements were also due to the practical and active brain of Napoleon I.; but by far the vastest changes and most striking improvements were made by Napoleon III. All this variety of street and square and boulevard—all this splendour of church and palace and public building—all this perpetual movement of people and of vehicles—all this gay diversity of colour, is arched over by a sky of clear translucent blue, untainted by mist, untouched by cloud, and untinged by smoke.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 9 to 12 inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on 'Open-Air Paris' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) Paris has other points of contrast with London. (2) Alluvial river-valleys. (3) The centre of all the banking branches of the country. (4) It has seen the most terrible vicissitudes. (5) Magnificent streets of palaces strike the new-comer with amazement. (6) The quays are due to the enterprise and energy of Napoleon I. (7) Commerce has nearly deserted the Seine. (8) Separate suites of rooms. (9) Pestilent old houses. (10) Rookeries. (11) Embellishment. (12) This gay diversity of colour.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence: 'The greatest improvements have been made since the year 1854, when Napoleon III. invited Baron Hausmann to Paris.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

Haroun, who felt that on a soul like this  
The mightiest vengeance could but fall amiss,  
Now deigned to smile, as one great lord of fate  
Might smile upon another half as great.

6. Write in columns all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Name*; *stand*<sup>1</sup>; *town*; *fire*; *glow*; *give*; *self*; *strong*; *high*; *up*<sup>2</sup>; *meet*<sup>3</sup>; *kin*<sup>4</sup>; *live*.

<sup>1</sup> *Stead*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Op-en*.

<sup>3</sup> *Mate*, etc.

<sup>4</sup> *Kind*, etc.

## A FOREST SCENE.



Peered, peeped. From N. Fr. *perer*; Lat. *parēre*, to appear. Dingles, deep little hollows between hills. (It is a by-form of an old word *dimple*, used in a like sense; and both are only variations of *dimple*.)

Palfrey, a lady's horse. From Low Lat. *parafredus*, a spare horse.

1. They came to where the brushwood ceased, and day  
Peered 'twixt the stems; and the ground broke away

2.  
3.  
T  
W  
A  
5. U  
TH  
A  
St  
Ra  
No  
'H  
No

VER:  
'twixt-t-  
VERS  
VERS  
VERS



- In a sloped sward down to a brawling brook,  
 And up as high as where they stood to look  
 On the brook's further side was clear; but then  
 The underwood and trees began again.
2. This open glen was studded thick with thorns,  
 Then white with blossom; and you saw the horns,  
 Through the green fern, of the shy fallow-deer  
 Which come at noon down to the water here.
3. You saw the bright-eyed squirrels dart along  
 Under the thorns on the green sward; and strong  
 The blackbird whistled from the dingles near,  
 And the weird chipping of the woodpecker  
 Rang lonelily and sharp; the sky was fair,  
 And a fresh breath of spring stirred everywhere.

4. Merlin and Vivian stopped on the slope's brow  
 To gaze on the green sea of leaf and bough  
 Which glittering lay all round them, lone and mild,  
 As if to itself the quiet forest smiled.
5. Upon the brow-top grew a thorn, and here  
 The grass was dry and mossed, and you saw clear  
 Across the hollow; white anemonës  
 Starred the cool turf, and clumps of primroses  
 Ran out from the dark underwood behind.  
 No fairer resting-place a man could find.  
 'Here let us halt,' said Merlin then; and she  
 Nodded, and tied her palfrey to a tree.

Matthew Arnold.

CAUTIONS AND DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

- VERSE 1.—Line 2: Avoid the verse-accent upon *'twixt*. Read *'twixt-the-stems* as one word.
- VERSE 2.—Line 3: Read *Through-the-green-fern* as one word.
- VERSE 3.—Line 4: Avoid the verse-accent upon *the*.
- VERSE 4.—Line 2: Read *on-the-green-sea* as one word.



### CHARACTER OF SIR WALTER SCOTT.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Audible</b>, to be heard. From Lat. <i>audio</i>, I hear. Cognates: <i>Auditor</i>, <i>audience</i>, <i>inaudible</i>.</p> <p><b>Modelled</b>, moulded or fashioned. From Fr. <i>modèle</i>, a model; from Lat. <i>modulus</i>, a diminutive of <i>modus</i>, a measure. Cognates: <i>Mode</i>, <i>moderate</i>, <i>moderation</i>.</p> <p><b>Texture</b>, woven fibre. From Lat.</p> | <p><i>texo</i> (<i>textum</i>), I weave. Cognates: <i>Text</i>, <i>textile</i>.</p> <p><b>Fortitude</b>, quiet courage or bravery. From Lat. <i>fortis</i>, strong or brave. Cognates: <i>Fort</i>, <i>fortress</i>.</p> <p><b>Tincture</b>, that which tinges. From Lat. <i>tingo</i> (<i>tinctum</i>), I stain. Cognate: <i>Tinge</i>.</p> <p><b>Incarnated</b>, clothed in flesh. From</p> |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Im

Disc

Inter

Repos

a

a

C

d

1.

1832,

of all

that

still, t

ear—t

was di

his eld

ever m

2 It

acter, v

equal

texture.

all othe

than in

Lat. *caro* (*carn-is*), flesh. Cognates: *Carnation* (a flesh-coloured flower); *carnivor-ous*; *incarnation*.

Imperceptibly, without any one noticing it. From Lat. *in*, not, and *percipio*, I perceive. Cognates: *Perception*, *perceptible*; (through Fr.) *perceive*.

Discipline, training. From Lat. *discipulus*, a scholar; from *disco*, I learn. Cognates: *Disciple*, *disciplinarian*.

Intercourse, coming together. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *curro* (*curs-um*), I run. Cognates: *Current*; *cursor*; (through Fr.) *course*.

Repositories, places in which things are kept. From Lat. *re*, back, and *pono* (*posit-um*), I place. Cognates: *Repose*; *depose*, *deposit*, *depository*.

Testament, will. From Lat. *testis*, a witness. Cognates: *Testator*, *testatrix*; *testify*, *testimony*.

Appurtenances, belongings. From Lat. *ad*, to, and *pertineo*. I belong. Cognates: *Appertain*; *impertinent*, *impertinence*.

Scrupulous, very careful. From Lat. *scrupulus*, a small sharp stone. Cognates: *Scrupulosity*; *unscrupulous*.

Indefatigable, not to be wearied out. From Lat. *in*, not, and *defatigo*, I tire out. Cognate: *Fatigue* (through Fr. The ending *ue* is of Fr. origin).

Extension, a widening out. From Lat. *ex*, out of, and *tendo* (*tens-um*), I stretch. Cognates: *Extend*, *extensive*; *tense* (= stretched); *intend*, *intention*.

1. About half-past one P.M. on the 21st of September 1832, Sir Walter Scott breathed his last, in the presence of all his children. It was a beautiful day—so warm, that every window was wide open; and so perfectly still, that the sound of all others most delicious to his ear—the gentle ripple of the Tweed over its pebbles—was distinctly audible as we knelt around the bed, and his eldest son kissed and closed his eyes. No sculptor ever modelled a more majestic image of repose.

2 It will, I presume, be allowed that no human character, which we have the opportunity of studying with equal minuteness, had fewer faults mixed up in its texture. The grand virtue of fortitude, the basis of all others, was never displayed in higher perfection than in him; and it was, as perhaps true courage always



OTT.

leave. Cog-  
e.

or bravery.  
strong or  
Fort, fort-

ages. From  
e), I stain.

esh. From

is, combined with an equally admirable spirit of kindness and humanity. His pride, if we must call it so, undebased by the least tincture of mere vanity, was intertwined with a most exquisite charity, and was not inconsistent with true humility. 3. If ever the principle of kindness was incarnated in a mere man, it was in him; and real kindness can never be but modest. In the social relations of life, where men are most effectually tried, no spot can be detected in him. He was a patient, dutiful, reverent son; a generous, compassionate, tender husband; an honest, careful, and most affectionate father. Never was a more virtuous or a happier fireside than his. The influence of his mighty genius shadowed it imperceptibly; his calm good sense, and his angelic sweetness of heart and temper, regulated and softened a strict but paternal discipline. 4. His children, as they grew up, understood by degrees the high privilege of their birth; but the profoundest sense of his greatness never disturbed their confidence in his goodness. The buoyant play of his spirits made him sit young among the young; parent and son seemed to live in brotherhood together; and the chivalry of his imagination threw a certain air of courteous gallantry into his relations with his daughters, which gave a very peculiar grace to the fondness of their intercourse.

5. Perhaps the most touching evidence of the lasting tenderness of his early domestic feelings was exhibited to his executors, when they opened his repositories in search of his testament, the evening after his burial. On lifting up his desk, we found arranged in careful order a series of little objects, which had obviously been so placed there that his eye might rest on them every morning before he began his tasks. These were the old-fashioned boxes that had garnished his mother's

toilet when he, a sickly child, slept in her dressing-room; the silver taper-stand which the young advocate had bought for her with his first five-guinea fee; a row of small packets inscribed with her hand, and containing the hair of those of her offspring that had died before her; his father's snuff-box and pencil-case; and more things of the like sort, recalling the 'old familiar faces.'

c. The same feeling was apparent in all the arrangements of his private apartment. Pictures of his father and mother were the only ones in his dressing-room. The clumsy antique cabinets that stood there—things of a very different class from the beautiful and costly productions in the public rooms below—had all belonged to the furniture of George's Square. Even his father's rickety washing-stand, with all its cramped appurtenances, though exceedingly unlike what a man of his very scrupulous habits would have selected in these days, kept its ground.

7. Such a son and parent could hardly fail in any of the other social relations. No man was a firmer or more indefatigable friend. I know not that he ever lost one; and a few with whom, during the energetic middle stage of life, from political differences or other accidental circumstances, he lived less familiarly, had all gathered round him, and renewed the full warmth of early affection in his later days. There was enough to dignify the connection in their eyes; but nothing to chill it on either side.

8. The imagination that so completely mastered him when he chose to give her the rein, was kept under most determined control when any of the positive obligations of active life came into question. A high and pure sense of duty presided over whatever he had to do as a citizen and a magistrate; and, as a landlord, he considered his estate as an extension of his hearth.

*Lockhart (1794-1854).*

EXERCISES.—1. Make a SUMMARY of paragraphs 2 to 6 inclusive.

2. Write 'The Character of Sir Walter Scott,' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) A more majestic image of repose. (2) Fortitude is the basis of all other virtues. (3) Undebased by the least tincture of vanity. (4) Incarnated. (5) His angelic sweetness softened a strict discipline. (6) Intercourse. (7) Repositories. (8) Garnished. (9) Cramped appurtenances. (10) More indefatigable friend. (11) Energetic middle stage of life. (12) He considered his estate as an extension of his hearth.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'In the social relations of life, where men are most effectually tried, no spot can be detected in him.'

5. Analyse the following sentence: 'I'm truly sorry man's dominion has broken nature's social union, and justifies that ill opinion which makes thee startle at me, thy poor earth-born companion and fellow-mortal.'

6. Give all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Late*<sup>1</sup>; *day*<sup>2</sup>; *wide*; *knee*<sup>3</sup>; *true*; *rue*<sup>4</sup>; *live*; *give*; *begin*; *slow*<sup>5</sup>; *know*; *no*.

7. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Tendo*, I stretch (root *tend*, stem *tens*), compound with *con*, *ex*, *in*; *ligo*, I bind (root *lig*, stem *ligāt*), compound with *ob*; *quæro*, I seek (root *quær*, stem *quæsit*), compound with *ex*, *in*, and *con*; *imago* (*imagin-is*), an image; *socius*, a companion; *pater*, a father; *frater*, a brother.

8. Make sentences containing the following words: *Fortitude*; *courage*; *equanimity*; *contentment*; *deep*; *profound*.

9. Make sentences containing the following phrases: *Display in perfection*; *not inconsistent with*; *shake confidence*; *insinuate a doubt*.

<sup>1</sup> Lateness, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Ruth, ruthless.

<sup>2</sup> Dawn, etc.

<sup>5</sup> Sluggard, slack, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Kneel, etc.



## THE SPANISH ARMADA (1588).

- Mustering**, assembling. From O. Fr. *mustrer*; Fr. *montrer*, to shew; Lat. *monstrāre*. (The idea is that of *shewing one's self*; like the O. E. *wapenschaw* = a shewing of weapons.) Cognates: *Demonstrate, demonstration*.
- Militia**, a body of soldiers for the internal defence of the country. From Lat. *miles (milit-is)*, a soldier. Cognate: *Military*.
- Descent, landing**. From Lat. *de*, down, and *scando (scans-um)*, I climb. Cognates: *Descend; ascend, ascent*.
- Detachments**, separate bodies of men. From Fr. *détacher*. Its opposite is *attach*; and it is connected with the English word *tack*.
- Communications**, connections. From Lat. *communis*, common or joined.
- Heretics**, persons who do not belong to the 'true faith,' and *separate* themselves from believers. From Gr. *haireo*, I take or choose.
- Notable, considerable**. From Lat. *nota*, a mark; hence *notabilis*. *Notable* is contracted into *noble*. Cognates: *Ignoble; nobility*.
- Patriotism**, love of one's country. From Lat. *pater*, a father; *patria*, the fatherland. Cognates: *Patriot; expatriate*.
- Fanaticism**, too strong attachment to a *fane* or *temple*. From Lat. *fanum*. Cognates: *Fanatic; profane, profanity*.
- Rear**, hinder part. From Fr. *arrière*, behind; from Lat. *ad*, to, and *retro*, behind. (This word has nothing to do with the English *rear*, which is a by-form of *rise, raise, and rouse*.)
- Galleons**, great galleys. From Spanish *galeon*.
- Demoralised**, disheartened. From Fr. *démoraliser*, to bring down from a *moral* or upright condition. Cognates: *Moral, morality, immorality*.
- Concert**, action together. From Lat. *con*, together, and *certo*, I strive.
- Kerns**, Irish foot-soldiers.

1. It was on the last day of July that the sails of the Armada were seen from the Lizard,<sup>1</sup> and the English beacons flared out their alarm along the coast. The news found England ready. An army was mustering under Leicester at Tilbury,<sup>2</sup> the militia of the inland counties were gathering to London, while those of the south and east were held in readiness to meet a descent on either shore. 2. Had Parma<sup>3</sup> landed on the earliest

day he purposed, he would have found his way to London barred by a force stronger than his own—a force, too, of men who had already crossed pikes on equal terms with his best infantry in Flanders. ‘When I shall have landed,’ he warned his master, ‘I must fight battle after battle; I shall lose men by wounds and disease; I must leave detachments behind me to keep open my communications; and in a short time the body of my army will become so weak, that not only I may be unable to advance in the face of the enemy, and time may be given to the heretics and your Majesty’s other enemies to interfere, but there may fall out some notable inconveniences, with the loss of everything, and I be unable to remedy it.’

3. Even had the Prince landed, in fact, the only real chance of Spanish success lay in a Catholic rising; and at this crisis patriotism proved stronger than religious fanaticism in the hearts of the English Catholics. Catholic gentry brought their vessels up alongside of Drake<sup>4</sup> and Lord Howard.<sup>5</sup> and Catholic lords led their tenantry to the muster at Tilbury. But to secure a landing at all, the Spaniards had to be masters of the Channel; and in the Channel lay an English fleet, resolved to struggle hard for the mastery. 4. As the Armada sailed on in a broad crescent past Plymouth, moving towards its point of junction with Parma at Dunkirk, the vessels which had gathered under Lord Howard of Effingham slipped out of the bay, and hung with the wind upon their rear. In numbers, the two forces were strangely unequal; the English fleet counted only eighty vessels against the one hundred and thirty which composed the Armada. In size of ships the disproportion was even greater. 5. Fifty of the English vessels, including the squadron of Lord Howard and the craft of the volun-



teers, were little bigger than yachts of the present day. Even of the thirty Queen's ships which formed its main body, there were only four which equalled in tonnage the smallest of the Spanish galleons. Sixty-five of these galleons formed the most formidable half of the Spanish fleet; and four galliasses, or gigantic galleys, armed with fifty guns apiece, fifty-six armed merchantmen, and twenty pinnaces, made up the rest.

c. The Armada was provided with two thousand five hundred cannon and a vast store of provisions; it had on board eight thousand seamen and twenty thousand soldiers; and if a court-favourite, the Duke of Medina Sidonia, had been placed at its head, he was supported by the ablest staff of naval officers which Spain possessed. Small, however, as the English ships were, they were in perfect trim; they sailed two feet for the Spaniards' one, they were manned with nine thousand hardy seamen, and their admiral was backed by a crowd of captains who had won fame in the Spanish seas. With him was Hawkins,<sup>6</sup> who had been the first to break into the charmed circle of the Indies; Frobisher,<sup>7</sup> the hero of the North-west Passage; and above all Drake, who held command of the privateers. 7. They had won too the advantage of the wind; and, closing in or drawing off as they would, the lightly-handled English vessels, which fired four shots to the Spaniards' one, hung boldly on the rear of the great fleet as it moved along the Channel. 'The feathers of the Spaniard,' in the phrase of the English seamen, were 'plucked one by one.' Galleon after galleon was sunk, boarded, driven on shore, and yet Medina Sidonia failed in bringing his pursuers to a close engagement. 8. Now halting, now moving slowly on, the running fight between the two fleets lasted throughout the week, till the Armada

dropped anchor in Calais roads. The time had now come for sharper work if the junction of the Armada with Parma was to be prevented; for, demoralised as the Spaniards had been by the merciless chase, their loss in ships had not been great, while the English supplies of food and ammunition were fast running out. Howard resolved to force an engagement; and, lighting eight fire-ships at midnight, sent them down with the tide upon the Spanish line. The galleons at once cut their cables and stood out in panic to sea, drifting with the wind in a long line off Gravelines.<sup>8</sup>

a. Drake resolved at all costs to prevent their return. At dawn the English ships closed fairly in, and almost their last cartridge was spent ere the sun went down. Three great galleons were sunk, three had drifted helplessly on to the Flemish coast; but the bulk of the Spanish vessels remained, and even to Drake the fleet seemed 'wonderful great and strong.' 10. Within the Armada itself, however, all hope was gone. Huddled together by the wind and the deadly English fire, their sails torn, their masts shot away, the crowded galleons had become mere slaughter-houses. Four thousand men had fallen, and, bravely as the seamen fought, they were cowed by the terrible butchery. Medina himself was in despair. 'We are lost, Señor Oquenda,' he cried to his bravest captain; 'what are we to do?' 'Let others talk of being lost,' replied Oquenda; 'your Excellency has only to order up fresh cartridge.' 11. But Oquenda stood alone, and a council of war resolved on retreat to Spain by the one course open, that of a circuit round the Orkneys. 'Never anything pleased me better,' wrote Drake, 'than seeing the enemy fly with a southerly wind to the northwards. Have a good eye to the Prince of Parma, for, with the grace of God, if we like, I doubt

reserve  
short,  
the ch

not ere it be long so to handle the matter with the Duke of Sidonia, as he shall wish himself home again among his orange trees.' 12. But the work of destruction was



reserved for a mightier foe than Drake. Supplies fell short, and the English vessels were forced to give up the chase; but the Spanish ships which remained had

no sooner reached the Orkneys than the storms of the northern seas broke on them with a fury before which all concert and union disappeared.

13. Fifty reached Corunna,<sup>9</sup> bearing ten thousand men stricken with pestilence and death; of the rest some were sunk, some dashed to pieces against the Irish cliffs. The wreckers of the Orkneys<sup>10</sup> and the Faroes,<sup>11</sup> the clansmen of the Scottish Isles, the kerns of Donegal and Galway, all had their part in the work of murder and robbery. Eight thousand Spaniards perished between the Giants' Causeway<sup>12</sup> and the Blaskets.<sup>13</sup> 14. On a strand near Sligo,<sup>14</sup> an English captain numbered eleven hundred corpses which had been cast up by the sea. The flower of the Spanish nobility, who had been sent on the new crusade under Alonzo da Leyva, after twice suffering shipwreck, put a third time to sea to founder on a reef near Dunluce,<sup>15</sup> on the coast of Ireland.

*J. R. Green.*

NOTES.

<sup>1</sup> **Lizard Point**, the most southern promontory of England. The word is a corruption of *Lazar Point*. A *lazar* (so called from *Lazarus*) was the name in the Middle Ages for a *leper*. A house for lepers and other sick people was a *Lazar House* or *Lazaretto*. There was a house erected on this point for the reception of persons stricken or supposed to be stricken with plague. Hence the name. (The *d* is an excrescence, like the *d* in *sound*, *thunder*, etc.)

<sup>2</sup> **Tilbury**, a fort in Essex, near the mouth of the Thames, opposite Gravesend.

<sup>3</sup> **Parma**, the Duke of Parma, who was in command of the Spanish army stationed near Drukirk, and prepared for the invasion of England.

<sup>4</sup> **Drake**, Sir Francis (1545-1595), one of the great sailors of England. He was for many years the plague of Spain, the Spanish possessions, and the Spanish fleet—both naval and commercial.

<sup>5</sup> **Lord Howard of Effingham** (1536-1624) was Lord High Admiral of England; and he commanded, in 1588, the fleet which destroyed the invincible Armada.

<sup>6</sup> **Hawkins**, Sir John (1520-1590),

a gallant English admiral, who served under Drake, and also on many expeditions. His adventures are described in Hakluyt's *Voyages*.

<sup>7</sup> Frobisher, Sir Martin (died 1594), a great sailor, who served under Drake in the West Indies, etc. The discovery of the North-west Passage was his most besetting thought, and he made three attempts. Frobisher's Strait is named after him.

<sup>8</sup> Gravelines, a town on the coast of France, about twelve miles from Calais.

<sup>9</sup> Corunna, a town in the north-west of Spain, now famous as the spot where Sir John Moore shipped off his troops, after effecting one of the most masterly retreats in

history, and where he met his death in January 1809.

<sup>10</sup> Orkneys, the islands between Scotland and the Shetland Isles.

<sup>11</sup> Faroes (more correctly the *Far*, or *Sheep Islands*), a set of islands lying between the Shetland Isles and Iceland. (*Oe* is a Norwegian word meaning *island*; and the correct name is: Far Oër.)

<sup>12</sup> Giants' Causeway, a promontory of basaltic rock, in Antrim, which runs a long way out into the sea. It is about 122 miles from Dublin.

<sup>13</sup> Blaskets, a set of islands on the west coast of Ireland.

<sup>14</sup> Sligo, the capital of county Sligo, on the west coast of Ireland.

<sup>15</sup> Dunluce, a small town on the north coast of Ireland.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 6 to 12 inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on 'The Spanish Armada' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases: (1) An army was mustering at Tilbury. (2) To meet a descent on either shore. (3) I must leave detachments behind me to keep open my communications. (4) Notable inconveniences. (5) Patriotism proved stronger than fanaticism. (6) The English hung with the wind upon their rear. (7) Closing in or drawing off as they would. (8) Demoralised by the merciless chase. (9) A council of war resolved on retreat. (10) All concert and union disappeared. (11) The flower of the Spanish nobility. (12) To founder on a reef.

4. Parse the following sentence: 'Even had the Prince landed, in fact, the only real chance of Spanish success lay in a Catholic rising.'

5. Analyse the following sentence :

There is a flower, the lesser celandine,  
That shrinks like many more from cold and rain ;  
And the first moment that the sun may shine,  
Bright as the sun himself, 'tis out again !

6. Write down all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Late*; *while*; *meet*<sup>1</sup>; *lose*<sup>2</sup>; *body*; *fall*; *land*; *lie*; *heart*; *hard*; *hang*; *wind*.

7. Write down in columns all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Scando*, I climb (root *scand*, stem *scans*), compound with *ad* and *de*; *fero*, I carry, compound with *con*, *de*, *re*, and *inter*; *patria*, one's country; *volo*, I wish (root *vol*, noun *voluntas*, will); *jungo*, I join (root *jung*, stem *junct*), compound with *ad*, *con*, and *dis*.

8. Write sentences which contain the following words: *Straight* and *strait*; *suite* and *sweet*; *tare* and *tear*.

9. Write sentences which contain the following phrases: *To get the upper hand*; *to hold the reins*; *to wield the power*.

<sup>1</sup> *Mate*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Forlorn*, etc.

## THE SPANISH ARMADA.

List, care or please.

Castile, the part of Spain which occupied the central table-land of the Peninsula—here used for Spain.

Halberdiers, soldiers with halberts or long battle-axes. From Fr. *hallebarde*; from O. Ger. *helmbarte*. (*Helm* is a pole, and *barte* an axe or beard, the hanging-down appearance of the iron giving it the look of a beard.)

Her Grace, Queen Elizabeth.

Blazon, the heraldic 'fields' or divisions *blazoned* on a flag.

The lion, the English lion on the flag.

Lilies, the blazon of France.

Semper eadem, Ever the same.

Alarum, call to arms. From the Italian *all' arme* = to arms! from Lat. *ad arma*!

Wards, divisions of a town or city. The City of London is divided into wards, each of which is represented by an Alderman.

1. Attend all ye who list to hear our noble England's praise;  
I tell of the thrice-famous deeds she wrought in ancient days,

When that great fleet invincible against her bore in  
vain  
The richest spoils of Mexico, the stoutest hearts of  
Spain.

2. It was about the lovely close of a warm summer  
day,

There came a gallant merchant-ship full sail to  
Plymouth Bay;

Her crew hath seen Castile's black fleet beyond  
Aurigny's<sup>1</sup> isle,

At earliest twilight, on the waves lie heaving many a  
mile;

At sunrise she escaped their van, by God's especial  
grace;

And the tall *Pinta*,<sup>2</sup> till the noon, had held her close  
in chase.

3. Forthwith a guard at every gun was placed along the  
wall;

The beacon blazed upon the roof of Edgecumbe's<sup>3</sup> lofty  
hall;

Many a light fishing-bark put out to pry along the  
coast;

And with loose rein and bloody spur rode inland  
many a post.

With his white hair unbonneted the stout old sheriff  
comes;

Behind him march the halberdiers, before him sound  
the drums;

His yeomen, round the market-cross, make clear an  
ample space,

For there behoves him to set up the standard of Her  
Grace.

4. And haughtily the trumpets peal, and gaily dance the bells,  
As slow upon the labouring wind the royal blazon swells.  
Look how the lion of the sea lifts up his ancient crown,  
And underneath his deadly paw treads the gay lilies down.  
So stalked he when he turned to flight, on that famed Picard field,<sup>4</sup>  
Bohemia's plume, and Genoa's bow, and Caesar's eagle shield :  
So glared he when at Agincourt<sup>5</sup> in wrath he turned to bay,  
And crushed and torn beneath his claws the princely hunters lay.  
Ho ! strike the flag-staff deep, Sir Knight ; ho ! scatter flowers, fair maids :  
Ho ! gunners, fire a loud salute : ho ! gallants, draw your blades ;  
Thou sun, shine on her joyously—ye breezes, waft her wide ;  
Our glorious 'SEMPER EADEM'—the banner of our pride.
5. The freshening breeze of eve unfurled that banner's massive fold,  
The parting gleam of sunshine kissed that haughty scroll of gold ;  
Night sank upon the dusky beach, and on the purple sea—  
Such night in England ne'er had been, nor e'er again shall be !



From Eddystone<sup>6</sup> to Berwick<sup>7</sup> bounds, from Lynn<sup>8</sup> to  
 Milford Bay,<sup>9</sup>  
 That time of slumber was as bright and busy as the  
 day ;  
 For swift to east and swift to west the ghastly war-  
 flame spread ;  
 High on Saint Michael's Mount<sup>10</sup> it shone—it shone  
 on Beachy Head.<sup>11</sup>

6. Far on the deep the Spaniard saw, along each southern  
 shire,  
 Cape beyond cape, in endless range, those twinkling  
 points of fire ;  
 The fisher left his skiff to rock on Tamar's<sup>12</sup> glittering  
 waves,  
 The rugged miners poured to war from Mendip's<sup>13</sup>  
 sunless caves.  
 O'er Longleat's<sup>14</sup> towers, o'er Cranbourne's<sup>15</sup> oaks, the  
 fiery herald flew ;  
 He roused the shepherds of Stonehenge,<sup>16</sup> the rangers  
 of Beaulieu.<sup>17</sup>  
 Right sharp and quick the bells all night rang out  
 from Bristol town,  
 And ere the day three hundred horse had met on  
 Clifton down<sup>18</sup> ;  
 The sentinel on Whitehall-gate<sup>19</sup> looked forth into the  
 night,  
 And saw o'erhanging Richmond Hill,<sup>20</sup> the streak of  
 blood-red light.

7. Then bugle's note and cannon's roar the death-like  
 silence broke,  
 And with one start, and with one cry, the royal city  
 woke.

At once on all her stately gates arose the answering  
 fires ;  
 At once the wild alarm clashed from all her reeling  
 spires ;  
 From all the batteries of the Tower pealed loud the  
 voice of fear ;  
 And all the thousand masts of Thames sent back a  
 louder cheer :  
 And from the furthest wards was heard the rush of  
 hurrying feet,  
 And the broad streams of pikes and flags rushed down  
 each roaring street :  
 And broader still became the blaze, and louder still  
 the din,  
 As fast from every village round the horse came  
 spurring in :  
 And eastward straight, from wild Blackheath,<sup>21</sup> the  
 warlike errand went,  
 And roused in many an ancient hall the gallant  
 squires of Kent.

8. Southward, from Surrey's pleasant hills flew those  
 bright couriers forth ;  
 High on bleak Hampstead's<sup>22</sup> swarthy moor they  
 started for the north ;  
 And on, and on, without a pause, untired they  
 bounded still,  
 All night from tower to tower they sprang ; they  
 sprang from hill to hill :  
 Till the proud Peak<sup>23</sup> unfurled the flag o'er Darwin's<sup>24</sup>  
 rocky dales,  
 Till like volcanoes flared to heaven the stormy hills  
 of Wales ;

4 An  
 2 Pin  
 l  
 S  
 3 Edg  
 s  
 c  
 P  
 4 Pica  
 P  
 A  
 ba  
 in  
 Fr  
 th  
 wa

Till twelve fair counties saw the blaze on Malvern's<sup>25</sup>  
 lonely height,  
 Till streamed in crimson on the wind the Wrekin's<sup>26</sup>  
 crest of light,  
 Till broad and fierce the star came forth on Ely's<sup>27</sup>  
 stately fane,  
 And tower and hamlet rose in arms o'er all the  
 boundless plain ;  
 Till Belvoir's<sup>28</sup> lordly terraces the sign to Lincoln  
 sent,  
 And Lincoln sped the message on o'er the wide vale  
 of Trent ;  
 Till Skiddaw<sup>29</sup> saw the fire that burned on Gaunt's<sup>30</sup>  
 embattled pile,  
 And the red glare on Skiddaw roused the burghers of  
 Carlisle.<sup>31</sup>

*Lord Macaulay (1800-1859).*

## NOTES.

- <sup>1</sup> Aurigny, another name for Alderney, one of the Channel Islands, about seven miles from Cape La Hogue, in Normandy.
- <sup>2</sup> Pinta, the name of one of the high-built vessels of the Spanish Armada.
- <sup>3</sup> Edgecumbe or *Edgecombe*, the seat of Lord Mount Edgecombe, opposite the town of Plymouth.
- <sup>4</sup> Picard field, Creçy, a village in Picardy, about ten miles from Abbeville—near which the battle of Creçy was fought in 1346. In that battle the French were completely overthrown; the king of Bohemia was killed; his son—here
- called *Cæsar*—emperor-elect of Germany, shared in the defeat; and the Genoese bowmen were 'turned to flight.'
- <sup>5</sup> Agincourt, a village in the north of France, about seven miles from Hesdin. Here Henry V. gained a great victory over the French in 1415.
- <sup>6</sup> Eddystone (where there is now a lighthouse), a reef of rocks in the English Channel, about fourteen miles from Plymouth breakwater; and
- <sup>7</sup> Berwick-upon-Tweed. Respectively the S.W. and N.E. extreme points of England.
- <sup>8</sup> Lynn, commonly called *Lynn*

- Regis* or *King's Lynn*, a borough in the east of Norfolk, on the Ouse; and
- <sup>9</sup> *Milford Bay*, in Pembrokeshire, in the west of Wales. These two points represent the extreme east and west.
- <sup>10</sup> *Saint Michael's Mount*, a granite rock in Mount's Bay, in Cornwall, opposite Marazion.
- <sup>11</sup> *Beachy Head*, farther east along the coast, in Sussex—the highest promontory on the south coast of England.
- <sup>12</sup> *Tamar*, the river which flows into the sea near Plymouth, and forms at its mouth the harbour of the Hamoaze.
- <sup>13</sup> *Mendip*, the Mendip Hills, a mineral range in Somersetshire.
- <sup>14</sup> *Longleat*, in Wiltshire, the seat of the Marquis of Bath.
- <sup>15</sup> *Cranbourne*, an old town in Dorsetshire.
- <sup>16</sup> *Stonehenge*, the remains of the ancient Druidical temple in the middle of Salisbury Plain, about three miles from Amesbury.
- <sup>17</sup> *Beaulieu* (pronounced *Bōlū*), a parish at the mouth of the river Exe, six miles from Lymington. It was an ancient place of refuge.
- <sup>18</sup> *Clifton down*, a well-known watering-place about a mile from Bristol, on the opposite side of the Avon.
- <sup>19</sup> *Whitehall*, an ancient palace in Westminster. Only a part of it is still standing. The name is now, however, given to the seat of the Education Department for Great Britain.
- <sup>20</sup> *Richmond Hill*, a beautiful hill overlooking the valley of the Thames, in Surrey, about ten miles from London.
- <sup>21</sup> *Blackheath*, now a suburb of London, near Woolwich, in Kent.
- <sup>22</sup> *Hampstead*, a heath to the north of London, in Middlesex.
- <sup>23</sup> *Peak*, the *High Peak* of Derbyshire.
- <sup>24</sup> *Darwin*, a district in Derbyshire.
- <sup>25</sup> *Malvern Hills*—a range in the counties of Worcester and Hereford.
- <sup>26</sup> *Wrekin*, a solitary conical mountain in Shropshire.
- <sup>27</sup> *Ely's stately fane*, the cathedral of Ely, about sixteen miles from Cambridge. (Ely is the only city in England which is unrepresented in the House of Commons.)
- <sup>28</sup> *Belvoir Castle* (pronounced *Beevor*), the seat of the Dukes of Rutland.
- <sup>29</sup> *Skiddaw*, one of the highest mountains in England, in Cumberland, about four miles from Keswick.
- <sup>30</sup> *Gaunt's pile*. Lancaster Castle, from which John of Gaunt took the title of Duke of Lancaster.
- <sup>31</sup> *Carlisle*, the county town of Cumberland. It here represents the extreme N.W. point of England.—All the places mentioned are *representative*, and mark prominent points in England.

## CAUTIONS AND DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 2.—Line 1: Avoid the verse-accent on *was*, and read the first six words rapidly in one group, and the last five as a second group.—Line 4: No accent upon *on*.—Line 5: Avoid the verse-accent on *she*, and make a slight pause after *sunrise*.

VERSE 3.—Line 2: Read *upon-the-roof* as one word.—Line 4: A slight pause after *And*; and read *with-loose-rein* as one word.—Line 8: Avoid the accent upon *to*.

VERSE 4.—Line 2: No accent on *upon*.—Line 3: Avoid the verse-accent on *how*; make a pause after *Look*, and hasten on to *ancient crown*.—Line 5: A slight pause after *So*.—Line 11: No accent upon *on*.—Line 12: Read *of-our-pride* as one word.

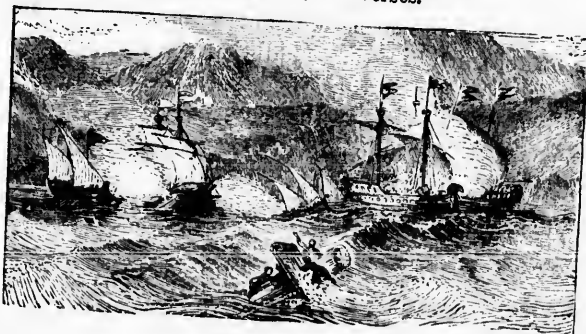
VERSE 5.—Line 3: A slight pause after *and*.—Line 4: A pause after *Such night*.—Line 6: No emphasis on *was*; a pause after *slumber*.—Line 7: A pause after *For, east, and west*.

VERSE 6.—Line 1: A pause after *Far*.—Line 8: A pause after *And*, and after *day*.

VERSE 7.—Line 1: A pause after *Then*.—Line 2: A pause after *And*; avoid the verse-accent on *with* and *with*; the emphatic word is *one*.—Line 5: No accent upon *of*.—Line 7: A slight pause after *And*.

VERSE 8.—Line 5: Read *Till-the-proud-Peak* as one word.—Line 6: A pause after *Till* and *volcanoes*.—Line 9: A pause after *Till* and *fierce*.

- EXERCISES.—1. Parse the first four lines.  
2. Analyse the first four lines.  
3. Paraphrase the third and fourth verses.



## GREAT CITIES.

## BERLIN.

**Middle Ages**, a term variously applied to a period between the fifth and the fifteenth centuries. In France it is generally placed between Clovis and Louis XI.—from 481 to 1461. In England, from 409 to Henry VII. in 1485. In general European history, from the overthrow of the Roman Empire in the fifth, down to the Revival of Learning in the fifteenth century.

**Enterprise**, 'undertaking nature' (to use an expression of Shakespeare's). From Fr. *entreprendre*, to undertake.

**Unter** (a German word, pronounced *oonter*), under; among.

**Academy**, a place for education. The *Akademia* was the gar-

den near Athens where Plato taught.

**Ambassadors**, persons sent by one power to another, as representatives. From Gothic *andbahts*, a servant.

**Gymnasia**, in Athens, schools for wrestling; in Germany, classical schools, for the teaching of Latin and Greek. From Gr. *gymnos*, naked; as the Greek wrestlers fought stripped.

**Discussion**, talk for, against, and about. From Lat. *dis*, apart, and *quatio* (*quassum*), I shake. Cognates: *Discuss*; *concus*; *concussion*.

**Equestrian**, on horseback. From Lat. *equestris*, relating to horses; from *equus*, a horse. Cognate: *Equine*.

1. BERLIN, the capital of the German Empire, stands upon a little muddy stream called the Spree, which flows into the Havel, a tributary of the noble Elbe. It is situated in the middle of a flat sandy plain, dry, dusty, and dreary, and so level, that drainage is hardly possible for the city. It was for a long time in the Middle Ages a mere fishing village on some islands in the Spree. In 1688, the year of our own Revolution, it was a small town of only 18,000 inhabitants; at the death of Frederick the Great, in 1786, the population had increased to 145,000; in 1858 its population numbered less than half a million;

while now, in the year 1880, it has risen to nearly a million inhabitants. 2. The climate of Berlin is a climate of extremes—very hot in summer, chiefly from the heat reflected from the hard dry soil; and extremely cold in winter, because no range of mountains shelters it from the cold north-east blasts which sweep in an almost unbroken current from the Arctic Ocean down upon its streets. But, in spite both of the soil and the climate, the enterprise and perseverance of its people have made it one of the finest and largest cities of the Continent. As the centre, moreover, of a vast network of railways which stretch in every direction throughout the Continent, Berlin has grown rapidly in wealth and in population. It contains more than five hundred streets, forty squares, and about thirty bridges. 3. The widest and finest street is called *Unter den Linden* (a name which means *Under the Limes*). This street is as broad as five ordinary streets placed side by side. It is adorned by four rows of lime-trees, chestnuts, aspens, acacias, and plantains; and between these rows of trees run four roads—two for carriages and two for horsemen, while the middle is occupied by a broad shady walk for foot-passengers. On both sides of this magnificent street stand large buildings of every kind—palaces, a university, an opera-house, an academy of arts, and the residences of the ambassadors of powerful foreign states. Splendid hotels and large shops add to the gay appearance of the street. 4. Besides the university, there are in the city institutions of all kinds, such as an academy of science and the fine arts, an academy of the mechanical sciences and of architecture, military schools, large gymnasia, numerous elementary schools, and twenty-seven public libraries, which are open to any and to

all readers. All kinds of activity fill the town—manufactures, fine arts, political discussion; and there is perpetual movement both of mind and of energies. Besides the active, busy, stirring population of the city, there is a silent fixed population of statues of military heroes. The most splendid of these military statues is the equestrian statue of Frederick the Great. For Prussia is essentially a military state. It was founded in war, and it has grown by war. And yet, though Berlin reminds the observer of war and of military glory at every corner, the town has neither rampart nor fortress; it is surrounded by an ordinary stone wall, for the simple purpose of collecting local taxes on all country produce that is carried into the town. 5. Near the heart of the town is the large and attractive park called the Thiergarten. Its walks are much frequented in the summer evenings by the citizens, who come with their wives and families to saunter, or to sit in the open air, over a cup of coffee, or an ice, or a glass of cool German beer. Near the town is also a splendid botanical garden, which contains more than twenty thousand different kinds of trees. 6. The university is one of the most modern of the great German universities. It was founded in 1810, and now numbers more than three thousand students. Of these, most are students of law. Berlin is, in fact, the intellectual capital of Germany. The Royal Library contains more than half a million of volumes. Berlin has long been famous for artistic iron castings; and it also produces a beautiful variety of porcelain. Standing almost in the heart of the continent of Europe, it is evidently destined to grow larger and larger; to grow not only with the growth of Germany, but with the growth of its powerful and wealthy neighbours.

sy  
a  
al  
of  
sta  
(10  
4  
of  
pec  
Co  
5

6.  
Eng  
har  
7.  
wor  
(root  
flu, s  
or gi  
is co  
8.  
tear  
9.  
disap

<sup>1</sup> D  
<sup>3</sup> F  
<sup>5</sup> N



- EXERCISES.**—1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 1 to 4 inclusive.
2. Write a short paper on 'Berlin' from your own summary.
3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) The climate of Berlin is a climate of extremes. (2) The north-east blasts sweep in an almost unbroken current. (3) Large gymnasia. (4) All kinds of activity fill the town. (5) Discussion. (6) An equestrian statue. (7) Local taxes. (8) Intellectual capital. (9) Porcelain. (10) It is evidently destined to grow larger and larger.
4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'In spite both of the soil and the climate, the enterprise and perseverance of its people have made it one of the finest and largest cities of the Continent.'
5. Analyse the following sentence:

How happy is he born and taught,  
That serveth not another's will;  
Whose armour is his honest thought,  
And simple truth his utmost skill!

6. Give all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Look*; *great*; *name*; *dry*<sup>1</sup>; *stand*<sup>2</sup>; *slow*<sup>3</sup>; *hard*; *grow*; *shield*<sup>4</sup>; *rise*; *nigh*<sup>5</sup>.
7. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Caput*, the head (root *cap*, stem *capit*); *dirigo*, I guide (root *dirig*, stem *direct*); *terra*, the earth; *fluo*, I flow (root *flu*, stem *flux*), compound with *con*, *de*, *in*, and *sub*; *tribuo*, I pay or give (root *tribu*, stem *tribut*); *populus*, the people (*populicus* is contracted into *publicus*).
8. Write sentences containing the following words: *Tier* and *tear*; *their* and *there*; *told* and *tolled*.
9. Write sentences containing the following phrases: *To be disappointed*; *to have one's hopes dashed*; *to miss his aim*.

<sup>1</sup> Drought (compare *sly* and *sleight*).

<sup>3</sup> Flood, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Stead, instead, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Shelter; North Shields; shieling, etc.

<sup>5</sup> Neighbour; near, etc.



## A VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD.

## PART I.

- Century**, a period of a hundred years; from Lat. *centum*, a hundred. (Compare *per cent*.)
- Hurricane**, a sudden and terrible storm; from the Spanish *huracan*, a word brought originally from the natives of the Antilles.
- Plague**, an epidemic or prevalent disease; from the Lat. *plaga*, a stroke.
- Famine**, a state of the greatest scarcity; from the Lat. *fames*, hunger.
- Excursion**, a running out or 'outing'; from the Lat. *ex*, out, and *curro*, I run.
- Appliance**, something applied or added; from the Lat. *applicare*, to fold to, through the Fr. *appliquer*.
- Imagination**, the power of making images (Lat. *imagines*), of things that are absent.
- Explore**, to search; from the Lat. *explorare*, to search.
- Launch**, to let go into the sea; properly, *to throw*. From Lat. *lancea*, lance; through the Fr. *lancer*, to throw.
- Emblem**, a sign, token, or symbol.
- Expanse**, wide stretch; from Lat. *expando*, I stretch out.
- Bight**, a form of the word *bay*; the old guttural appearing in the one case as a *y*, in the other as a *gh*.
- Flord**, a Norse form of the word *firth*, a long arm of the sea.
- Vegetation**, growth of plants; from Lat. *vegetare*, to grow, to be lively.
- Glacier**, a large slow-moving river of ice; from Lat. *glacies*, ice.
- Interior**, a Latin word meaning *inner* (*part*).
- Compressed**, pressed together.
- Sub-tropical**, under or next to the tropical.
- Primeval**, original, or, existing at the earliest times; from the Lat. *primus*, first, and *ævum*, an age.
- Exiled**, driven out of, or banished, from Lat. *exul*, a person out of his own country.
- Wrested**, taken by force. (A form of the noun *wrist*; the continuative verb is *wrestle*.)
- Twilight**, from the Eng. *two*, and *light*. (The word *two* appears in different forms in *twi*, *twai*, *twain*, and *twen*—in *twenty*.)
- Hesperides**, the name of the famous sisters who guarded the golden apples which Hera (Juno) received from Gē (the Earth), on her marriage with Zeus (Jupiter). The garden which contained the trees lay north of the Caucasus.
- Parallel**, always at exactly the same distance from.
- Appal**, to terrify.

**Lianas**, binding or tying weeds or shrubs—a Spanish word, from the Lat. *ligare*, to bind.

**Colonise**, to settle; from the Lat. *colonia*, a settlement. (This word is also found in *Cologne*, the Roman colony on the Rhine; and in *Lincoln*, the Roman colony on the river or pool.)

**Vertical**, right overhead; from the Lat. *vertex*, the top.

**Pacific**, peaceful or peace-making; from Lat. *pax* (= *pacs*), peace, and *facio*, I make.

**Polynesia**, from Gr. *polus*, many, and *nesos*, an island.

**Develop**, to bring out or unfold. (The opposite of this word is *envelop*.)

1. Let us make a voyage round the world. This is a very easy thing nowadays. But, three centuries ago, it was not an easy thing. Three centuries ago, it was full of dangers—known and unknown, dangers from hurricanes, from ignorance of coast lines, from plague and famine, and from cruel and savage races of men. Magellan, a Portuguese sailor, who was born in Oporto in 1470, was the first man to sail round the world; and the task took him three years. 2. He set sail on the 20th of September 1519, kept his course to the west, discovered and sailed through the Strait that now bears his name, and his fleet reached home only on the 6th of September 1522. He had only five small vessels—so small that no one would nowadays think of risking his life in them for a long voyage. His largest vessel was a miserable little ship of 130 tons; and his smallest amounted to only 60. About half a century later, the great Englishman, Sir Francis Drake, also sailed round the world; and his fleet also numbered only five vessels—of from 15 to 100 tons. The vessels that cross the Atlantic to-day are from 3000 to 4000 tons burden. 3. Magellan, as has been said, took three years to sail round the world (he himself never reached home, as he fell in a scuffle with the natives of the Philippine Islands, the second year out); Sir Francis Drake took also three years; and the last voyage of Captain Cook (who was

killed at the Sandwich Islands in 1779) occupied four full years. Now, the voyage is a mere holiday excursion; it can be made, by the aid of steam, with ease and comfort, and with every appliance of interest and amusement; and it may be made in almost as many months as Magellan took years.

4. But *we* have neither time enough nor money enough to go round the world. We can, however, do so in imagination; we can do so by the help of books of travels, and we can see with the eyes and hear with the ears of famous sailors and of daring travellers who have been exploring the different seas, continents, islands, and countries of this planet for many hundred years. The sea encircles the land of the world; and the land lies in it like a number of islands. The sea has neither beginning nor end; and, as the old adventurous sailors launched their ships upon it, trusting in God and in their own stout hearts, so let us launch our thoughts on the boundless and limitless ocean, and survey the different countries that we cross in our imaginary voyage. Let us suppose ourselves at the North Pole; and let us start from there.

Emblem of Eternity,  
 Unbeginning, endless sea!  
 Let me launch my soul on thee,  
 Sail, nor keel, nor helm, nor oar  
 Need I, ask I, to explore  
 Thine expanse from shore to shore.

Eager fancy, unconfined,  
 In a voyage of the mind,  
 Sweeps along thee like the wind,  
 Where the billows cease to roll,  
 Round the silence of the pole,  
 Thence set out, my ventures soul!

e. And first we come to Greenland—a land of frost and

sno  
 bro  
 flor  
 wit  
 on  
 part  
 brea

with a  
 we bid  
 land, w  
 see the  
 course,

snow, of rugged and barren mountains, of a coast-line broken by innumerable bays, inlets, creeks, bights, and fiords, without trees, almost without vegetation, and with only a few Danes and Esquimaux scattered about on its outer fringe. The interior is one vast glacier, parts of which creep slowly down to the coast, and then break off on the edges of the cliffs and fall into the sea



Scene in Greenland.

with a mighty splash and a noise like thunder. 7. If we bid good-bye to the southernmost point of Greenland, which was called by some sailor, who was glad to see the last of it, Cape Farewell, and hold a south-west course, we shall come to Labrador. This, too, is a

terribly cold country. The interior is a wilderness of pine forests; and the coast is bleak and barren, and blocked up with ice for nine months in the year. There are fisheries; and there is a great deal of seal-hunting. 8. Large herds are found on the sheets of floating field-ice, which are called 'seal-meadows;' and they are surprised while sleeping and knocked on the head with bludgeons. Labrador is in the same latitude as England; yet it has a winter of nine months, and the other seasons are compressed into three. This is due to the two facts that its coasts are washed by a cold current, full of icebergs, from Baffin's Bay; while the shores of England are bathed by the warm waters of the great Gulf Stream from the sub-tropical climates of the Gulf of Mexico.

See o'er Greenland, cold and wild,  
Rocks of ice eternal piled;  
Yet the mother loves her child.  
Next, on lonely Labrador  
Let me hear the snow-storm roar,  
Blinding, burying all before.

9. Coming farther south, we light upon the Dominion of Canada—the name for the chief part of British North America. It is a splendid country, covered with vast primeval forests, with land as fertile as any on the globe, and with a dry and healthy climate. It abounds in mighty lakes and clear rivers, whose waters teem with salmon and other kinds of fish. The five great lakes which discharge their waters into the St Lawrence form the largest body of fresh water in the world. 10. Striking south-east, we come to New England—which received its name from the English Puritans who left their country in the seventeenth century in order to have full possession of their

religious liberty. It consists of five States, which are among the most industrious and prosperous of the United States of America.

But a brighter vision breaks  
O'er Canadian woods and lakes;  
These my spirit soon forsakes.  
Land of exiled Liberty  
Where our fathers once were free,  
Brave New England, hail to thee!

11. Winging our imaginary way still farther to the south, we pass the prosperous State of Pennsylvania. This State was not wrested from the American Indians by force, but was peacefully purchased from them by William Penn, a Quaker, who founded and settled the State. Penn wanted to call the country, which is now nearly as large as England, *Sylvania*, because it was so well wooded; but Charles II., when granting him a charter to hold the land, insisted, in mere fun, on adding the word *Penn* to it, and the name remains *Pennsylvania* to this day. 12. Still farther and farther south—when the rich clusters of the West Indian Islands break upon our view! Here is eternal summer; here the day is flooded with sunlight, and the deep black nights, which come without any twilight, are brilliant with stars; here are the most delicious fruits in the world; here are landscapes with high and rugged mountains, rapid rivers, graceful cocoa-nut trees, breadths of sugar-cane and maize, and all kinds of spice plants grow in profusion.

Pennsylvania!—while thy flood  
Waters fields unbought with blood,  
Stand for peace as thou hast stood!  
The West Indies I behold,  
Like the Hesperides of old—  
Trees of life, with fruits of gold!

13. On to South America, with the largest forests and the largest river in the world! The north-east trade-



winds, laden with moisture from the North Atlantic, strike at a right angle on the north coast of this continent, carry their burden of moisture across hill and valley, dropping showers as they go, till at last they give up the last drop of rain to the cold, snow-covered sides of the Andes, and cross that range as a perfectly dry wind. The south-east trades blow upon the southern coast of South America, also at a right angle, carry even more moisture than the north-east trade-winds, and also penetrate to and cross the Andes, having left behind them every drop of moisture they bore away from the broad Atlantic. It is the north-east trades that make the northern tributaries of the Amazon, and the south-east trades that make the southern tributaries. 14. More rain falls here than in any other part of the world, and hence we have the largest river, which flows exactly in the middle between the two sets of rain-bearing winds,

result  
forest  
it cov  
highes  
long r  
growth



and is almost parallel with the Equator. With the largest amount of rain in the world and the immense tropical and vertical heat of the sun, we have, as a necessary



result, the most luxuriant vegetation and the largest forest in the world. This forest is called the Selvas, and it covers millions of square miles of country. 15. The highest and thickest trees, tied together with countless long ropes of lianas and tree-creepers, with a ground-growth of underwood that only fire could penetrate,

forests and  
ast trade-



Atlantic,  
his con-  
hill and  
st they  
covered  
perfectly  
uthern  
y even  
d also  
behind  
m the  
make  
south-  
More  
l, and  
tly in  
rinds,

with a population in the upper branches of infinite numbers of brilliantly-coloured birds, of monkeys, apes, and other animals, the middle air filled with butterflies, bats, and winged creatures of all kinds. There is everything here that the world of nature can shew to appal, to astonish, and to strike with admiration. So strong is the power of vegetation that it would in a few months cover a stone house with overgrowth, or tear it to pieces by the aid of the numberless plants that would find homes everywhere in the chinks. 16. The whole continent demands a nobler people; and it may be that the Anglo-Saxon race will yet colonise this, as they already have colonised the sister continent of North America.

South America expands  
 Mountain forests, river lands,  
 And a nobler race demands;  
 And a nobler race arise,  
 Stretch their limbs, unclose their eyes,  
 Claim the earth, and seek the skies.

17. Steering still south in our voyage of thought, imagination, and memory, we pass the Falkland Islands on the left and come to the Straits of Magellan. The great sailor from whom the straits are named took a month to go through them; and then he reached a mighty ocean of unknown extent, sailed north and west till he came to the Ladrões (or *Thieves' Islands*, 'a haunt of wiles,' because the inhabitants stole from the Spanish and Portuguese sailors whenever they had an opportunity), and then held on his way to the Philippines, 'a haunt of violence,' where he lost his life in a skirmish with the natives on the 26th of April 1521. Magellan had very fine weather and regular breezes when crossing the Pacific, so he named the ocean the *Peaceful Ocean*, or the *Pacific*. 18. The islands of the

19  
 co  
 tre  
 of  
 Me  
 tov  
 so  
 2  
 the  
 sout  
  
 But a  
 the lo  
 and sh  
 at all  
 mercha  
 in war

Pacific are almost innumerable. One region filled with these islands is called *Polynesia*, or the *Many-islanded*. There is, besides, the largest island—or the smallest continent—in the world, where a Southern England is arising to aid the mother country in developing her industry and her resources.

Gliding through Magellan's straits,  
Where two oceans ope their gates,  
What a glorious scene awaits!  
The immense Pacific smiles  
Round ten thousand little isles—  
Haunts of violence and wiles.

19. New South Wales is the oldest of the Australasian colonies, and the others are branches from this parent tree. The discovery of gold in 1851 raised the territory of Victoria to the first rank in wealth and population. Melbourne quickly grew to be the largest and richest town in the whole of Australasia, and it has remained so ever since. Sydney is the next largest town.
20. Let us keep away from the deserts of Siberia and the long promontories of Kamtschatka, and turn to the south—to the lands of the sun.

North and west, receding far  
From the evening's downward star,  
Now I mount Aurora's car—  
Pale Siberia's deserts shun,  
From Kamtschatka's storm-cliffs run,  
South and east, to meet the sun.

But a glance at Siberia need not be forbidden. There the long rivers Obi, Lena, and Yenisei flow into a frozen and shipless ocean, past lands that are hardly inhabited at all. 21. These, however, are being opened up to the merchant and trader. The sources of these rivers are in warm climates, their mouths are within the arctic

circle; and hence, while the upper parts are still flowing, the lower parts and the mouths are frozen; and thus the waters of these rivers cannot reach the sea, but overflow thousands upon thousands of square miles of land, and turn them into the largest and dreariest marsh in the whole world. This marsh, which stretches also into Europe, is called the *Tundrus*.

22. Now we are in sight of the islands of Japan. The word *Japan* means 'land of the rising sun;' and it was so named by the Chinese, from whose country it lies to the east. This empire has lately had an awakening. The power of the great feudal princes (or Daimios) has been broken; and all authority is now centred in the Mikado. Railways were introduced in 1870; English is taught in the schools; the mechanical sciences are taught in Government colleges; and an army and navy after the English and French types have been created. 23. Yeddo is the capital—a veritable human ant-hill, not much inferior to London in population. There is one street ten miles long; and some of the houses of the nobility are said to be large enough to hold more than 10,000 persons. The town lines the margin of the bay or inlet of Yeddo for a distance of ten miles, and extends seven miles inland. Earthquakes are frequent, and hence the houses are only of one story; they are built of wood, and thus fires are not uncommon. 24. China lies to the west and south—the land of oddities and contrarities. Everything seems to be the exact opposite of what we have in this country. In China the old men fly kites, and the boys look on; people whiten their shoes with chalk instead of blacking them; white is the colour worn in mourning; a Chinaman mounts his horse from the right instead of the left side; the place of honour is the

wri  
read  
the  
soup  
the

left; he does not take off his hat when he enters a room, but his shoes; and when he meets a friend, he shakes hands with himself, and works his own hands up and down like a pump. Men carry fans, and women smoke; men wear their hair as long as it will grow, women very carefully put theirs up. 23. The spoken language of China is never written, and the



A View in China.

written language is never spoken. A Chinese begins to read a book from the end; and he does not read across the page, but up and down. The wealthy classes eat soup made of birds' nests. Wheelbarrows have sails; the ships have no keels; the roses have no smell; and

the workmen no Sunday. It is the most populous empire in the world—there being between four and five hundred millions of people in it. The emperor's palace is called 'The Tranquil Palace of Heaven.' The streets of the capital, Peking (which means *North Court*), have the oddest names—'Bad Smell Street,' 'Dog's Tail Street,' and so on. Nearly half a million of people in Canton live on the river in boats.

---

### THE SKYLARK.

(Verse printed as prose.)

Bird of the wilderness, blithesome and cumberless,  
 sweet be thy matin o'er moorland and lea! Emblem  
 of happiness, blest is thy dwelling-place—O to abide  
 in the desert with thee! Wild is thy lay and  
 loud, far in the downy cloud; love gives it energy,  
 love gave it birth. Where on thy dewy wing,  
 where art thou journeying? Thy lay is in heaven,  
 thy love is on earth. O'er fell and fountain  
 sheen, o'er moor and mountain green, o'er the red  
 streamer that heralds the day; over the cloudlet  
 dim, over the rainbow's rim, musical cherub soar,  
 singing away! Then, when the gloaming comes,  
 low in the heather blooms, sweet will thy welcome and  
 bed of love be! Emblem of happiness, blest is thy  
 dwelling-place—O to abide in the desert with thee!

*James Hogg.*

## THE CASTLE BY THE SEA.

*(Verse printed as prose.)*Chime, bells ringing in tune.  
Gale, storm.Rapture, pride, excessive joy.  
Resplendent, shining brightly.

Weeds, garments.

This is the story of a king's castle seen by two different persons at different times—the one by day, when the castle was full of gladness and splendour; the other by night, when the king had lost his only daughter, and the castle was full of sorrow and gloom. (The verses numbered 1, 3, and 5 should be read by one reader; and 2, 4, and 6 by another, in reply.)

1. 'Hast thou seen that lordly castle, that castle by the sea? Golden and red above it the clouds float gorgeously.' 2. 'Well have I seen that castle, that castle by the sea; and the moon above it standing, and the mist rise solemnly.' 3. 'The winds and the waves of ocean, had they a merry chime? Didst thou hear from those lofty chambers the harp and the minstrel's rhyme?' 4. 'The winds and the waves of ocean, they rested quietly; but I heard on the gale a sound of wail, and tears came to mine eye.' 5. 'And sawest thou on the turrets the king and his royal bride? and the wave of their crimson mantles? and the golden crown of pride? Led they not forth in rapture a beauteous maiden there—resplendent as the morning sun, beaming with golden hair?' 6. 'Well saw I the ancient parents, without the crown of pride; they were moving slow, in weeds of woe; no maiden was by their side!'

*Uhland (translated by Longfellow).*

DIRECTIONS.—VERSE 1. No accent on *by*; *by-the-sea* as one word. VERSE 3. No accent upon *they*.



### THE FORESTS OF THE AMAZONS.

**Tropical**, belonging to the tropics.  
From Gr. *trēpō*, I turn: *tropos*,  
a turning. At the Tropic of  
Cancer the sun is said to

'turn back' on the 22d of  
June, and to go towards the  
south; and at that of Capri-  
corn he is said to 'turn



back' on the 22d of December, and to come to the north.

Myriads, very large numbers. From Gr. *myrias* (-ades), a ten thousand.

Primeval. See page 255.

Intersect, cut their way through. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *seco* (sect-um). I cut. Cognates: *Sect*, *section*; *insect*.

Intense, very great. From Lat. *intendo* (*intens-um*), I stretch. (The metaphor is taken from the stretching of a bow.)

Recesses, spots deep withdrawn.

From Lat. *recedo* (*recessum*), I go back. Cognates: *Recede*; *secede*, *accession*.

Prehensile, adapted for seizing or grasping. From Lat. *prehendo*, to seize. Cognates: *Apprehend*, *comprehend*.

Suspended, hanging. From Lat. *suspendo* (*suspensum*), I hang. Cognates: *Suspense*, *suspension*.

Denizen. See page 196.

Voracious, very greedy. From Lat. *voro*, I devour; *vorax* (-acis), greedy. Cognate: *Devour*.

1. The largest forests in the world are those which are found in the valley of the Amazons River, in South America. This gigantic stream, with its tributaries, drains an immense district of country, equal in extent to about twelve times the size of France. All this vast tract of flat and fertile land is heated by the burning rays of a tropical sun, and is covered with the most luxuriant vegetation, through which the great river and its numerous tributaries slowly wind their way to the Atlantic Ocean.

2. The forests of the Amazons are composed of a great number of different kinds of large trees, many of which—unlike our common woodland trees—are covered with brilliantly coloured flowers. Here and there, slender and graceful palms raise their feathery heads into the air, and shew us that we are within the tropics. Beneath the shade of the great trees grow huge reeds and grasses of all kinds, mixed with myriads of tree-ferns, and bushes of different sorts. Thousands of climbing plants and cord-like creepers twine round the trunks of the trees, stretching from branch to

branch, and matting the undergrowth together, till a thicket is formed through which no human being could make his way except by the use of the axe. 3. The dense primeval forest, in fact, is impenetrable to the foot of man, and the natives of these regions have no means of moving from place to place except by the numerous streams which intersect the plains. In the day-time, especially in the intense heat of the noon-tide, deep silence reigns over the forest, broken only by the faint humming of insects. The larger animals seek shelter in the recesses of the forest, and the birds hide themselves in clefts or under the thick foliage of the trees. At night, on the other hand, the forest is often a scene of the wildest uproar, and resounds with the howling and piping of monkeys, the shrieking of parrots, and the roaring of carnivorous animals.

4. The great forests of the Amazons are the home of innumerable animals, most of which are splendid climbers, and spend most of their time amongst the trees. The commonest creatures are the monkeys, of which there are many kinds, living in crowds in the woods, and making more noise than all the other animals put together. The curious little spider-monkeys have very slender bodies, long thin arms and legs, and long prehensile tails, by means of which these agile creatures can grasp a branch just as we use our hands, and swing themselves from branch to branch, or hang head downwards, with the greatest ease. The little squirrel-like marmosets have thick bushy tails, and can only climb about by means of their feet. The most curious of the monkeys, however, are the howlers, which raise terrific cries in the stillness of the night. 5. One of the most extraordinary animals of the South American forests is the sloth. This curious beast

has long rough gray hair, and a round good-natured face, and spends its entire life amongst the trees, upon the leaves of which it feeds. It never comes down upon the ground unless forced to do so by some overpowering necessity ; and then it drags itself along, slowly and painfully, for its feet are so bent that it can walk only with the greatest difficulty. Up amongst the trees, however, it is quite at home, climbing about, back downwards, suspended from the branches by means of its long crooked claws. It even sleeps in this apparently unnatural position ;



Sloth.

and the trees are so close together that, in moving about, it can easily pass from one to the other without being compelled to alight on the ground.

6. The gloom of the impenetrable forests is enlivened by throngs of brightly coloured parrots, which chatter and scream over the juicy fruits which form their food ; while the toucans, with their monstrous bills, enjoy their meals in peace and quietness. Gorgeous butterflies flit through the air, and visit the countless flowers in search of their honeyed juices ; and one has some difficulty in distinguishing these from the equally brilliant humming-birds which dart like lightning hither and thither.

7. Nor is the ground without its denizens. The little armadillos, clad in an armour of bony plates, burrow in the soil ; while the great ant-eater, with its long bushy tail, pulls down the nests of the white ants by means of its

sharp crooked claws, and devours the defenceless insects by thousands. In the burning rays of the mid-day sun, countless lizards bask on the heated banks, while many-coloured snakes crawl through the herbage, or lie concealed in the branches; in the night-time, the huge jaguar, or American panther, roams at will through the tangled forest.

8. The waters swarm with fishes of strange forms and colours, and are haunted by multitudes of alligators. These terrible reptiles swim and dive actively, or they float at the surface of the pools, like so many long brown logs of wood. Enjoying the hot sun, they lie for hours without moving; but it would fare badly with any animal or naked Indian who might try to swim across a river tenanted by these voracious monsters. In an instant, the water would be alive with lashing tails and snapping jaws, and the bold swimmer would hardly escape with all his limbs, or even with life itself.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 2 to 6 inclusive.

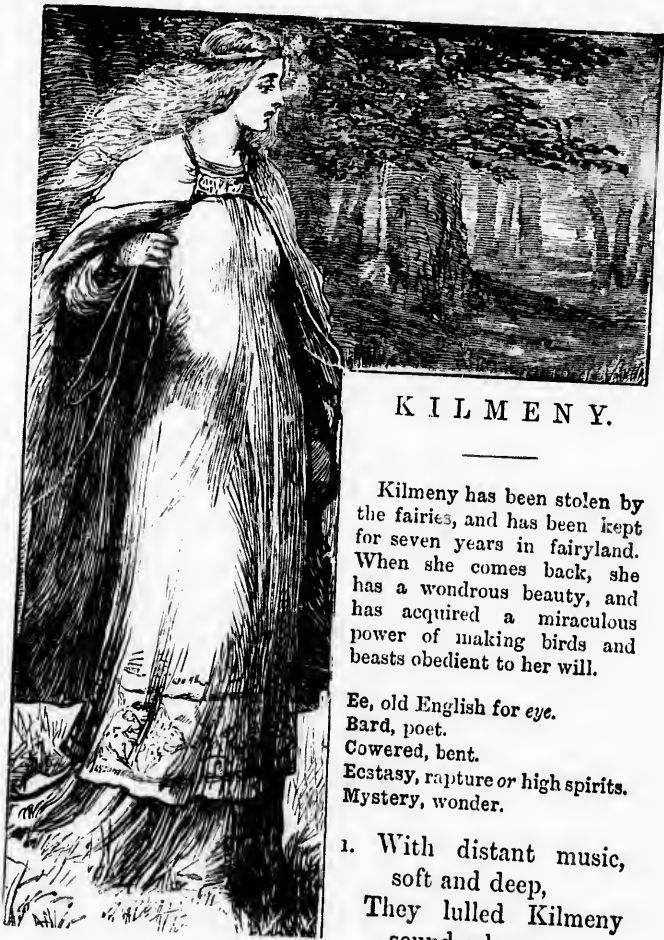
2. Write a short paper on 'The Great Forests of South America' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give synonyms for the single words: (1) Luxuriant vegetation. (2) Matting the undergrowth together. (3) The dense primeval forest. (4) The forest is a scene of the wildest uproar. (5) Impenetrable. (6) Nor is the ground without its denizens. (7) The waters are haunted by multitudes of alligators. (8) Voracious.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'The commonest creatures are the monkeys, of which there are many kinds, living in crowds in the woods.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

That time of year thou mayst in me behold,  
When yellow leaves, or none, or few, do hang  
Upon those boughs which shake against the cold,  
Bare, ruined choirs, where late the sweet birds sang.



### K I L M E N Y.

Kilmenny has been stolen by the fairies, and has been kept for seven years in fairyland. When she comes back, she has a wondrous beauty, and has acquired a miraculous power of making birds and beasts obedient to her will.

*Ee*, old English for *eye*.

Bard, poet.

Cowered, bent.

Ecstasy, rapture or high spirits.

Mystery, wonder.

1. With distant music,  
soft and deep,  
They lulled Kilmenny  
sound asleep;

And when she awakened, she lay alone,  
All covered with flowers on a green-mossed stone.  
When seven long years had come and fled;  
When grief was calm, and hope was dead;

- When scarce was remembered Kilmeny's name,  
Late, late in the twilight, Kilmeny home came.
2. And oh, her beauty was fair to see,  
But still and steadfast was her ee!  
Such beauty bard may never declare,  
For there was no pride nor passion there;  
And the soft desire of maidens' ean  
In that mild face could never be seen.
3. Her neck was like the lily flower,  
And her cheek the moss-rose in the shower;  
And her voice like the distant melodye  
That floats along the twilight sea.  
But she loved to walk the lonely glen,  
And kept afar from the haunts of men;  
Her holy hymns unheard to sing,  
To suck the flowers and drink the spring.
4. But wherever her peaceful form appeared  
The wild beasts of the hills were cheered;  
The wolf played blithely round the field,  
The lordly bison lowed and kneeled;  
The dun deer wooed with manner bland,  
And cowered beneath her lily hand.
5. And when at even the woodlands rung,  
When hymns of other worlds she sung  
In ecstasy of sweet devotion,  
Oh, then the glen was all in motion!  
The wild beasts of the forest came,  
Broke from their pens and folds the tame,  
And stood around, charmed and amazed;  
Even the dull cattle stood and gazed,  
And murmured and looked with anxious pain  
For something the mystery to explain.
6. The buzzard came with the throstle-cock,  
The raven left her nest in the rock;

The blackbird along with the eagle flew;  
 The hind came tripping o'er the dew;  
 The wolf and the kid their walk began;  
 And the fox, and the lamb, and the leveret ran;  
 And all in a peaceful ring were hurled:  
 It was like an eve in a sinless world!

James Hogg.

### THE SOCIAL ASPECTS OF TEMPERANCE.

- Incumbent**, resting on. From Lat. *in*, upon, and *cumbo* (*cubit-um*), I lie. Cognates: *Incumbency*; *cubit* (the part of the arm on which we lie).
- Sphere**, circle. From Gr. *sphaira*, a globe. Cognates: *Spherical*; *spherical*.
- Athletic**, relating to exercise. From Gr. *athlētēs*, a prize-fighter. Cognate: *Athlete*.
- Community**, society founded on common interests and aims. From Lat. *communis*, common. Cognates: *Communion*; *communicate*; *commune*.
- Intense**, very great. From Lat. *intendo* (*intens-um*), I stretch. Cognates: *Intensify*; *intensity*.
- Position**, place or rank in society. From Lat. *pono* (*posit-um*), I place. Cognates: *Deponent*; *opponent*; *deposit*, *deposé* (through Fr.); *opposite*, *opposition*; *repose*.
- Alcohol**, pure spirit. (In its ordinary form, it is, however, more or less impure.) From Arabic *al-kohl*, the powder of antimony, which was used to blacken the eyelashes. (*Al* is the Arabic for *the*, as in *alcoran*, *algebra*, *alchemy*, etc.)
- Unproductive**, without the power of producing anything useful. From Eng. *un*, not, and Lat. *pro*, forth, and *duco*, I lead. Cognates: *Produce*, *product*, *producer*, *production*.
- Vested**, placed in some business in which it is likely to produce more. (The usual form is *invest*.) From Lat. *vestis*, a dress. Cognates: *Vest*; *vestry* (originally the room where the priest robed); *vestment*; *vesture*.
- Stimulants**, drugs which do not produce new strength, but force persons to spend old strength. From Lat. *stimulus*, a goad. Cognates: *Stimulus*; *stimulate*; *stimulation*.
- Arrests**, seizures by the police. From O. Fr. *arrestor*; from

Lat. *ad, to, and restare, to stand still.* Cognate: *Rest* (= the remainder).

Lunatic, a person who has lost his ordinary judgment. From

Lat. *luna, the moon.* (The word comes from a time when astrology was believed in.) Cognates: *Lunar; lunacy; sublunary.*

1. There can be no doubt that TEMPERANCE of every kind is a duty which is incumbent both upon young and old, and in every relation and sphere of life. There ought to be temperance in eating and drinking, temperance in amusement and athletic games, temperance in sleep, work, and emotion. There ought also to be temperance in expression, for temperance tries to get at the truth in everything; and it is as careful not to overstate the exact truth as it is not to understate it; because, if a piece of land cost £500, it is as great a blunder to say it cost £510 as to say it cost only £490. Exactness of statement is the high intellectual virtue of perfect temperance. 2. But it is the duty of all not only to cultivate exactness of statement and perfect accuracy of thought; it is also our duty to keep our relations with other people perfectly simple, true, and kindly. No honest man wishes to blame or to be blamed; wishes to be dependent on others, or to be compelled to provide for the wants of idle and thriftless persons whom he has not seen; he desires to be surrounded by a community devoted to cheerful labour, healthy habits, and kindly social relations. Work, health, and social gaiety—these are what go to make a happy society. 3. No man can be happy through and by himself; happiness is essentially a social quality. We are all born into a world of give-and-take; we find here a society which has been built up by the care and the labour of many generations of kindly and hard-working men and women; and it is our duty to do nothing that may tend to



tear down the framework of this society. It takes a long time to build up; it is easy to destroy. What has taken years to raise may be pulled down in a single day.

4. Now, we find prevailing amongst us habits of intemperance, which are unspeakably injurious, tending to make our social life not only difficult, but in many cases impossible. These habits often settle into a kind of madness, which nothing can cure, and which can end only in death. But even in cases which have not such a disastrous termination, they produce intense misery or discomfort to the poor victim himself, and to all who are connected with him. Loss of health, loss of time, loss of happiness, loss of fortune and position, loss of life itself, may all be traced directly to these habits.

5. It is very important, then, for young persons that they should early become acquainted with the true relation of such habits to the society in which they live, that they should understand how dangerous they are, and that they should make up their minds to discourage them both in themselves and others. They must learn as early as they can to look at the social effects of alcohol, and at the cost of it both to individuals and to the nation.

6. It is calculated that about £150,000,000 are spent upon beer, wine, and spirits every year in the United Kingdom. If this sum produced food or manufactures to the same or to a greater amount, there would be no remark to make. But unfortunately it is the means of producing a large amount of crime and consequent misery. This crime, again, is itself unproductive; or, rather, it is negatively productive. It produces prisons, workhouses, asylums, warders, policemen, and other persons whose time is taken up with having to look

after people who will not work in an honest and steady manner. 7. The nation is not benefited by such persons—has, in fact, to pay for the maintenance of them. What the nation requires, and what the best people in the nation would like to see, is a large community of steady, sober working-men, diligent and faithful, respecting themselves, proud of their work, careful of their money, laying by something every year, bringing up healthy families, enjoying good health, and tasting every day the unspeakable happiness which well-disposed young children give to every kind-hearted father and mother. But if, instead of this, we find a community, many of the members of which are given to drunkenness and rioting, to pleasures which lead them away from home; composed of persons who scamp their work, and are all the time thinking only of amusement; who spend their money even to the last penny they make; whose motto is 'A short life and a merry one;' who die young or go to the workhouse or the jail—then we say that community is in great danger of going to utter ruin and destruction.

8. These, however, are general views. It is always well to come to special facts and figures. Although we spend £150,000,000 a year on alcoholic drinks, and although we have probably about £500,000,000 invested in the trade, this business gives employment to the smallest number of hands of any trade in the kingdom, in proportion to its vested capital. 9. The grain used in producing spirits in one great distillery in Scotland amounts to 800,000 bushels a year, but the work gives employment to only 150 men. These 800,000 bushels produce spirits to the amount of £1,500,000. But if this million and a half of money were spent in building, or in agriculture, or in weaving, it

would give employment to about 15,000 hands, instead of to a mere fraction of that number. 10. Again, a gallon of ale contains no more nutriment than a penny loaf, but a gallon of ale costs from ten to twenty times as much. From the point of view of saving, moreover—which is a most important point of view in a crowded country—a pint of beer a day means £3 a year, and therefore three pints daily means £9 yearly. But this £9 a year laid by would, with compound interest, amount in twenty years to £257—a sum which would purchase a small freehold house and garden.

11. Again, from the point of view of health and muscular vigour, we must never forget that the strongest people muscularly have generally been total abstainers from alcohol. The greatest feat in swimming that the world has ever seen was when Captain Webb swam across the English Channel; and he employed no stimulants. Weston, the well-known American pedestrian, walked a thousand miles without tasting a drop of alcohol; and Adam Ayles, the Arctic explorer, has given his testimony that, in regions of excessive cold, rum or any kind of spirits is not only hurtful, but very dangerous. 12. So much for the individual. But we, who are young, must learn to think more of others than of ourselves—must learn to think more of society than of our own individual persons. We are, in very deed, 'our brothers' keepers;' and while we take care to stand upright ourselves, we must also help others to stand upright. During the course of each year, hundreds of thousands of persons are arrested by the law for drunkenness and for offences committed under its baneful influence. 13. But this is only what we see. What is *not seen* is much more, and is much

more terrible. Every one of these arrests undoubtedly means a large amount of misery inflicted upon a household of wife and children; it means bad food and poor clothing; it often means wife-beating, cruelty, and violence of the most terrible kind. We should certainly not be far wrong if we were to say that each of these arrests brings to the public eye only one-tenth part of the misery, the shame, the ruin, the agony inflicted upon innocent and helpless persons.

14. The best physicians agree in stating that growing persons are better in health, stronger in muscle, clearer in head, and gayer in spirits without the use of alcoholic liquors than with them. In cases of great weakness, they may be useful, under medical advice. That is sufficient for ourselves. But if we consider that temperance and sobriety would close two-thirds of our prisons, would make useless two-thirds of our work-houses, and would stop the supply to a large number of our lunatic asylums, then it becomes a manifest duty resting upon every one of us to promote careful and temperate habits in ourselves and in others. Let each one of us govern *One*, and let each be the friendly adviser of another.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of the facts in the preceding lesson.

2. Write a short paper on 'Temperance,' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases and give synonyms for the single words: (1) Temperance is a duty incumbent both on young and old. (2) Sphere of life. (3) Intellectual virtue. (4) A community devoted to cheerful labour. (5) Happiness is essentially a social quality. (6) Intense discomfort. (7) Loss of position. (8) Crime is negatively productive. (9) Motto. (10) Muscular vigour. (11) Pedestrian. (12) Agony inflicted upon innocent and helpless persons. (13) It becomes a manifest duty.

4  
lear  
and  
5.

6.  
Engl  
like;

7.  
words  
stem

I exis  
con, d

8. V  
and o/

9. W  
duty is  
promot

<sup>1</sup> Dau  
<sup>4</sup> Onl  
Kin

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'They must learn as early as they can to look at the social effects of alcohol, and at the cost of it both to individuals and to the nation.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

Alas! the joys that fortune brings  
 Are trifling, and decay;  
 And those who prize the trifling things,  
 More trifling still than they.

6. Give all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Find*; *no*; *day*<sup>1</sup>; *hard*; *mid*; *all*<sup>2</sup>; *ere*<sup>3</sup>; *will*; *like*; *one*<sup>4</sup>; *heal*<sup>5</sup>; *kin*<sup>6</sup>; *say*<sup>7</sup>; *gibe*; *ever*.

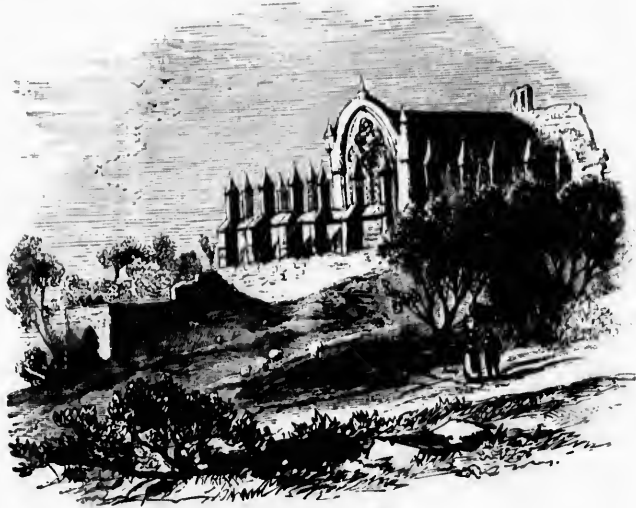
7. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Socius*, a companion; *exprimo*, I express (root *exprim*, stem *express*), compound *press* with *con*, *de*, *re*, and *sub*; *existo*, I exist; *cedo*, I go or yield (root *cede*, stem *cess*), compound with *con*, *de*, *ex*, *pro*, *pre*, and *sub*; *stimulus*, a spur.

8. Write sentences containing the following words: *Object* and *objéct*; *rébel* and *rebél*; *récord* and *recórd*.

9. Write sentences containing the following phrases: *The duty is incumbent upon*; *go to make*; *to provide for wants*; *to promote careful habits*.

<sup>1</sup> Dawn, etc.    <sup>2</sup> Alone, almost, altogether, etc.    <sup>3</sup> Erst, early, etc.  
<sup>4</sup> Only, atone, alone, etc.    <sup>5</sup> Whole, hail, health.  
<sup>6</sup> Kind, king, etc.    <sup>7</sup> Saw, etc.





Roslin Chapel.

## ROSABELLE.

**Feat**, deed; from the French *fait* (which itself comes from the Latin *fact-um*, a deed).

**Deign**, be kind enough.

**Ravensheuch**, Ravenscrag.

**Firth**, broad mouth of a river.

**Inch**, island; *inch* is used for *island* in several instances in the mouth of the Forth.

**Water-Sprite**, a fabulous spirit of evil.

**Panoply**, complete suit of armour.

**Sacristy**, vestry; a room in a church where the *sacred* garments and vessels are kept.

**Pale**, an enclosed space.

**Mall**, chain-armour.

**Pinnet**, a small spire.

**Buttress**, an outside support to a building.

**Fate**, death.

**Dirge**, funeral chant.

1. O listen, listen, ladies gay!  
 No haughty feat of arms I tell;  
 Soft is the note, and sad the lay  
 That mourns the lovely Rosabelle.

2. 'Moor, moor the barge, ye gallant crew,  
And, gentle lady, deign to stay!  
Rest thee in Castle Ravensheuch,  
Nor tempt the stormy firth<sup>1</sup> to-day.
3. 'The blackening wave is edged with white;  
To inch and rock the sea-mews fly;  
The fishers have heard the Water-Sprite,  
Whose screams forbode that wreck is nigh.
4. 'Last night the gifted Seer<sup>2</sup> did view  
A wet shroud swathed round lady gay;  
Then stay thee, Fair, in Ravensheuch:  
Why cross the gloomy firth to-day?'
5. 'Tis not because Lord Lindesay's heir  
To-night at Roslin<sup>3</sup> leads the ball;  
But that my lady-mother there  
Sits lonely in her castle-hall.
6. 'Tis not because the ring<sup>4</sup> they ride,  
And Lindesay at the ring rides well;  
But that my sire the wine will chide  
If 'tis not filled by Rosabelle.'
7. O'er Roslin all that weary night  
A wondrous blaze was seen to gleam;<sup>5</sup>  
'Twas broader than the watch-fire's light,  
And redder than the bright moonbeam.
8. It glared on Roslin's castled rock,  
It ruddied all the copse-wood glen;  
'Twas seen from Dryden's groves of oak,  
And seen from caverned Hawthornden.<sup>6</sup>

mit of armour.  
a room in a  
e sacred gar-  
are kept.  
ace.

e.  
e support to a

t.

9. Seemed all on fire that chapel proud,  
Where Roslin's chiefs uncoffined lie,  
Each Baron, for a sable shroud,  
Sheathed in his iron panoply.<sup>7</sup>
10. Seemed all on fire within, around,  
Deep sacristy and altar's pale ;  
Shone every pillar foliage-bound,<sup>8</sup>  
And glimmered all the dead men's mail.
11. Blazed battlement and pinnet high,  
Blazed every rose-carved buttress fair—  
So still they blaze, when fate is nigh  
The lordly line of high Saint Clair.
12. There are twenty of Roslin's barons bold  
Lie buried within that proud chapelle ;  
Each one the holy vault doth hold—  
But the sea holds lovely Rosabelle !
13. And each Saint Clair was buried there  
With candle, with book, and with knell ;<sup>9</sup>  
But the sea-caves rung, and the wild winds sung  
The dirge of lovely Rosabelle.

*Sir W. Scott.*

NOTES.

1. The Firth of Forth.
2. In Scotland certain persons were supposed to be gifted with the power of seeing what was about to happen, just as it would be ; this power was called *second-sight*, and in this instance the Seer had had a vision of a noble lady wrapped in a wet shroud, or, in other words, drowned.
3. An old castle a few miles south of Edinburgh.
4. A ring was hung so loosely from a bar resting on two upright posts that it could be easily broken away. The players rode at full speed through the archway thus made, and, as they



went under, aimed at passing their lance-points through the ring in order to carry it off.

5. There was an old legend that when any evil or death was about to befall one of the Saint Clairs of Roslin, the chapel always appeared on fire the night before.

6. A lovely glen near Roslin. *Dryden* is the name of a property near Edinburgh.

7. The lords of Roslin were buried in their coats of mail.

8. The pillars in the chapel at Roslin are exquisitely carved with images of leaves and flowers.

9. The old funeral service of torch or candles, sad singing, and tolling bells.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Haughty feat of arms. (2) Nor tempt the stormy firth. (3) The blackening wave is edged with white. (4) Whose screams forbode that wreck is nigh. (5) The gifted Seer. (6) The ring they ride. (7) Sheathed in his iron panoply. (8) Every pillar foliage-bound. (9) With candle, with book, and with knell.

2. Parse all the words in the following lines:

Blazed battlement and pinnet high,  
Blazed every rose-carved buttress fair.

3. Analyse the above.

4. Give in the same way as in Exercise 9, page 21—but write them in columns, with their meanings—the words which relate to or are compounds of *sea* and *wind*.

### A BRAVE SAILOR.

|                                                                             |                                                                            |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tattooed, marked by punctures on the skin, into which gun-powder is rubbed. | Interminable, endless.<br>Distracted, with confused and troubled thoughts. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|

Consternation, terrible distress.

1. In the morning the wind had lalled a little; but the sea, having upon it the additional agitation of the whole night, was infinitely more terrific than it had been on the day before; the height to which the breakers rose, and, looking over one another, bore one another down

and rolled in in interminable hosts, was most appalling.

In the difficulty of hearing anything but wind and waves, and in the crowd, and the unspeakable confusion, and my first breathless efforts to stand against the weather, I was so confused that I looked out to sea for the wreck, and saw nothing but the foaming heads of the great waves. 2. A half-dressed boatman, standing next me, pointed with his bare arm (a tattooed arrow on it pointing in the same direction) to the left; and then I saw it close upon us. The life-boat had been bravely manned an hour ago, and could do nothing; and, as no man would be so desperate as to attempt to wade off with a rope, and establish communication with the shore, there was nothing left to try. 3. I now noticed that some new sensation moved the people on the beach. They parted, and a sailor came breaking through them to the front. I ran to him to repeat my appeal for help. But, distracted though I was by a sight so new to me and terrible, the determination in his face, and his look-out to sea, awoke me to a knowledge of his danger. I held him back with both arms, and implored the men with whom I had been speaking not to listen to him, not to do murder, not to let him stir off from the shore.

4. Another cry arose on the beach, and, looking to the wreck, we saw the cruel sail, with blow on blow, beat off two men on the deck, and fly up in triumph round a third figure left alone upon the mast. Against such a sight and against such determination as that of the calmly desperate man who was already accustomed to lead half the people present, I might as hopefully have entreated the wind. 'Master Davy,' he said, cheerily grasping me by both hands, 'if my

time is come, it is come. If it ain't, I'll bide it. Lord bless you, and bless all! Mates, make me ready! I'm going off.'

5. I was swept away, but not unkindly, to some distance, where the people around me made me stay, urging that he was bent on going with help or without, and that I should endanger the precautions for his safety by troubling those with whom they rested. I saw hurry on the beach, and men running with ropes, and penetrating into a circle of figures that hid him from me. Then I saw him standing alone, in a seaman's frock and trousers, a rope slung to his wrist, another round his body, and several of the best men holding the latter, which he laid out himself slack upon the shore, at his feet.

6. The wreck was breaking up. She was parting amidships, and the life of the solitary man upon the mast hung by a thread. Still he clung to it. He had a red cap on, and as the few yielding planks between him and destruction rolled and bulged, he was seen to wave it. Ham watched the sea, standing alone, with the silence of suspended breath behind him, and the storm before, until there was a great retiring wave, when, with a backward glance at those who held the rope, which was made fast round his body, he dashed in, and in a moment was buffeting with the water, rising with the hills, falling with the valleys, lost beneath the foam, then drawn back again to land.

7. They hauled in hastily. He was hurt, and the blood streamed from his face; but he took no thought of that. He seemed hurriedly to give some directions for leaving him more free, and was gone as before. And now he made for the wreck, rising with the hills, falling with the valleys, lost beneath the rugged foam, borne in

towards the shore, borne out towards the ship, striving hard and valiantly. The distance was nothing, but the power of the sea and wind made the strife deadly.

8. At length he neared the wreck. He was so near, that with one more of his vigorous strokes he would be clinging to it—when, a high, green, vast hill-side of water was seen moving shoreward, from beyond the ship, into which the brave sailor seemed to leap with a mighty bound, and the ship itself was gone! On running to the spot where they were hauling in, some eddying fragments were seen in the surf, as if a mere cask had been broken. 9. Consternation was in every face. They drew him to my feet—insensible—dead. He was carried to the nearest house, and I remained near him busy, while every means of restoration was tried; but he had been beaten to death by the great wave, and his generous heart was stilled for ever.

*Dickens.*

EXERCISES.—1. Write a short composition on 'A Brave Sailor' from the following heads: (1) A ship had been dashed on the rocks near the shore. (2) Three men were still alive on her; but two were battered to death by the sails. (3) A sailor tried to rescue the third. (4) He had a rope put round his waist, and swam in. (5) He was drawn back, with his face all bloody. (6) He swam out again, and appeared to be seizing the side of the ship, when a great wave broke it up. (7) He was again drawn back—dead.

2. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) The breakers rolled in in interminable hosts. (2) I might as hopefully have entreated the wind. (3) To endanger the precautions for his safety. (4) Every means of restoration was tried.

3. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The power of the sea and wind made the strife deadly.

4. Analyse the above sentence.

5. Select from section 2 all the words which may be used both as nouns and verbs, according to the function in which they are employed, such as *stand, point, arm, &c.*

## THE FERRY.

*(Verse printed as prose.)*

Course, life on earth.

Blend, mingle.

Yore, long time ago.

A traveller is supposed, in this poem, to come to a ferry upon the Rhine, which he had crossed many years before with two dear friends—now dead. The ruins of old castles and the rocky crags, lit up by the evening sun, look down upon the river, and bring to the traveller's mind a vivid recollection of that former day—and he gives the ferryman three times his fee; for along with him had crossed in the boat the spirits of his dead friends.

1. Many a year is in its grave since I crossed this restless wave; and the evening, fair as ever, shines on ruin, rock, and river. 2. Then in this same boat beside sat two comrades old and tried—one with all a father's truth, one with all the fire of youth. 3. One on earth in silence wrought, and his grave in silence sought; but the younger, brighter form passed in battle and in storm. 4. So, whene'er I turn my eye back upon the days gone by, saddening thoughts of friends come o'er me; friends that closed their course before me. 5. But what binds us, friend to friend, but that soul with soul can blend? soul-like were those hours of yore; let us walk in soul once more. 6. Take, O boatman, thrice thy fee—take, I give it willingly; for, invisible to thee, spirits twain have crossed with me.

*Ludwig Uhland (German).*

CAUTIONS.—VERSE 1.—Line 1: Avoid the verse-accent upon *in*, and read *is-in-its-grave* as one word. Line 2: Avoid also the verse-accent on *and*. VERSE 4.—Line 2: No accent on *upon*; make *back-upon* one word.

## GREAT CITIES.

## ST PETERSBURG.

- Perseverance**, keeping steadily and strictly to a task. From Lat. *per*, through or thoroughly, and *severus*, strict or severe.
- Inclement**, unkind or unmerciful. From Lat. *in*, not, and *clemens*, mild. (*Un* is the English negative; *in* the Latin.)
- Irresistible**, not to be resisted or stood against. From Lat. *in*, not, and *resisto*, I resist. (*In* becomes *ir* before *r*, as in *irreproachable*, *irreconcilable*, etc.)
- Accumulated**, heaped up. From Lat. *ad*, to, and *cumulo*, I heap. (A kind of piled-up clouds are called *cumuli*.) *Ad* becomes *ac* before *c*, as in *accommodate*, *accept*, etc.
- Thermometer**, a measurer of heat. From Gr. *thermos*, heat, and *metron*, a measure. (Cognates: *Barometer*, a measurer of the weight of the air; *lactometer*, a measurer of milk.)
- Expansion**, swelling out. From Lat. *ec*, out, and *pando*, I spread. Cognates: *Expand*, *expansive*.
- Edifices**, buildings. From Lat. *aedes*, a house, and *facio*, I make. Cognates: *Edify*, to build up in the faith; *edification*, etc.
- Reclaim**, call or win back. From Lat. *re*, back, and *clamo*, I call or cry out.
- Twilight** = *two lights*, that of the day and that of the night. *Two* is a form of *two*. Cognates: *Twin*; *twin*; *tween* (in twenty); *twine*; *twist*; *twirl*; *twig*, etc. (The root-notion in all these words is that of *twoness*.)
- Gradations**, steps. From Lat. *gradus*, a step. Hence: *Graduate*; *gradual*, etc. (Hence too *degrece*, from Fr. *dégré*, a broken-down form of the Lat. *de* and *gradus*. A psalm sung on the steps of the Temple was called a *Song of Degrees*.)
- Grandiose**, full of grandeur. From Lat. *grandis*, great, and *osus*, full of. (*Osus* has become *ous* in English, and is found in such words as *plenteous*, *famous*, etc.) Cognates: *Grand*; *grandeur*.
- Colossal**. See page 118.
- Density**, thickness. From Lat. *densus*, thick.
- Annual**, yearly. From Lat. *annus*, a ring or year. Cognates: *Annals*; *annuity*.
- Mortality**, death-rate. From Lat. *mors*, death; *mortalis*, subject to death.
- Monolith**, one-stone. From Gr. *monos*, alone, and *lithos*, a

stone. Cognates: *Monarch*; *monogram*; *monotonous*; *lithography* (writing on stone).

Insurrections, risings against authority. From Lat. *in*, against, and *surgo* (*surrectum*), I rise. Cognates: *Insurgent*; *surge*; *resurrection*.

Inundation, flood. From Lat. *in*, in, and *unda*, a wave.

Disastrous, very unfortunate.

From Gr. *dis*, evil, and *astron*, a star. (The idea comes from the time when astrology was believed in; and every one was supposed to be born under some particular star.)

1. ST PETERSBURG is one of the most remarkable monuments of the determination and perseverance of man that the world can shew. It stands in a cold and barren region, upon marshy ground, under an inclement sky; and it is yearly attacked by the terrible powers of frost, and yearly threatened by the irresistible powers of water. The position of the city forms a remarkable contrast with that of Naples. The one in the far north, the other in the sunny south; the one in the neighbourhood of the eternal agencies of frost and water, the other standing near the internal power of fire; the one in the midst of a barren country, the other in one of the most fertile regions of Europe—both form together, internally as well as externally, the most striking contrast.

2. St Petersburg stands on both banks of the Neva, and on two islands which are formed by the river dividing there into three large branches. It is in the latitude of nearly sixty degrees, and is thus about ten degrees north of London. The climate is terribly hot in summer, and extremely cold in winter. During the long days of midsummer—when there is no night at all—the heat is accumulated, until it marks more than one hundred degrees in the shade; while in the winter, the thermometer has been known to fall to fifty-four degrees below zero. 3. The moisture of the warmer months penetrates

into the stone and the joinings of the buildings; and this moisture is frozen in the winter—so that the expansion of the ice thus formed breaks up even the strongest edifices in the city. Nothing stands. It is a kind of proverb in St Petersburg that the city has to be rebuilt every year. 4. 'If St Petersburg were not constantly rebuilt,' says the Marquis de Custine, a French traveller, 'it is certain that in a few years—in less time perhaps than was needed to reclaim her from the marsh, the marsh would take the place of the city. The Russian workmen pass their life in repairing in the summer-time what the winter has destroyed; nothing can resist the influence of this climate; the buildings—even those which look oldest—were really rebuilt but yesterday.'

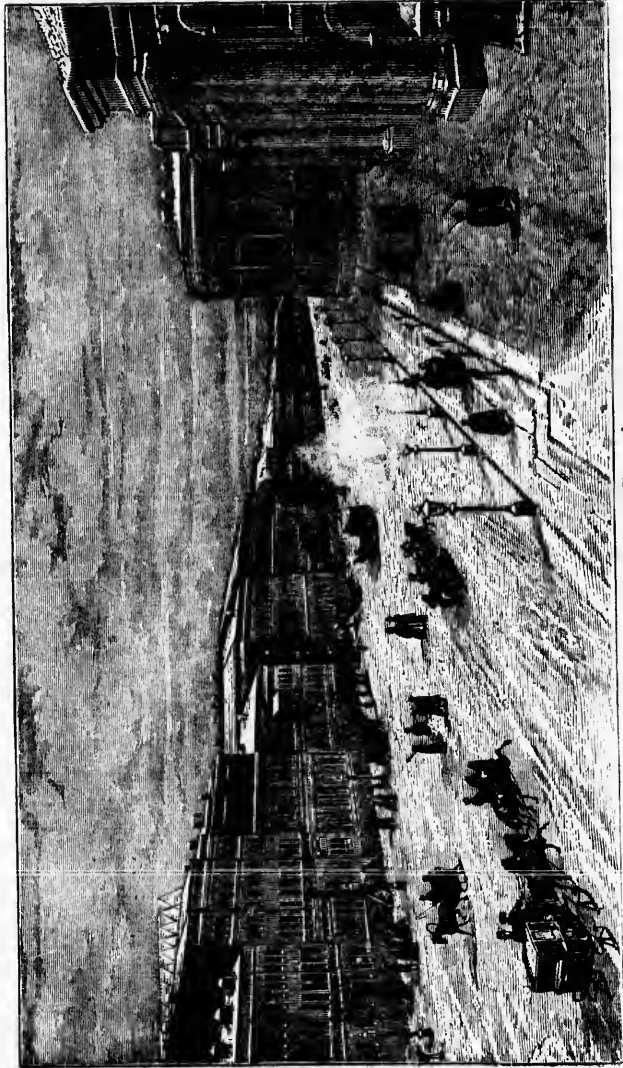
5. The longest day of the year lasts nearly nineteen hours; and the twilight melts into the dawn with undistinguishable gradations. There is no night at this season. Midnight is but a softened continuation of the day; and, when the beams of the full moon mingle with the lingering daylight, the clear water of the river, the lofty palaces, the gilded domes, and the splendid granite quays are clothed in a garment of unearthly light, which invests them with a beauty such as is seen in no other part of the world.

6. The impression produced by the first view of St Petersburg is that of the grandiose and the colossal. In no capital in Europe are there so many large buildings, and such long regularly laid-out streets. It has not the look of a Russian city—like Moscow or Kiev. It is rather an architectural mixture of all styles, of every order, borrowed from every country in Europe at the most different stages of growth. The buildings, many of which are profusely gilded externally, glitter in the



sun with an effect surprising to those who view it for the first time. 7. The contrasts within the city are very striking. Not only are buildings of ancient Greek or Byzantine architecture side by side with the most modern forms; but the dresses of the Oriental and the Tartar brush the modern frock-coat of the Frenchman and the Englishman. The contrast of density of population is also very great. The north side of the city is comparatively empty; the south side is as lively as London or Paris. In the long wide streets of the north, lined with lofty lifeless palaces, a single droshky may be seen—like a small boat on the high seas—while in the distance appears an occasional foot-passenger. 8. The streets are long, wide, and bordered with lofty buildings. The Nevski Prospekt—a name which means *Neva View*—is nearly three miles long, and about sixty yards broad. It is calculated that if all the inhabitants—every man, woman, and child—were to walk through the city, there would be between each person an interval of at least ten paces; so vast is the extent of the city, and so small is the population in proportion.

9. The population of St Petersburg amounts to seven hundred thousand inhabitants. It has increased with considerable rapidity, though not so quickly as the population of London or Paris. In 1750, there were about seventy-five thousand inhabitants; in 1804, two hundred and seventy thousand; and in 1858, five hundred and twenty thousand. Of the present inhabitants, fully a hundred thousand are foreigners. 10. The annual mortality is higher than that of any other town in Europe; it reaches the terrible number of forty-four persons in every thousand. One curious feature in this mortality is, that it is greatest in



Nevski Prospekt, St. Petersburg.

th  
to  
in  
  
ar  
ha  
In  
Th  
sto  
res  
of  
ye  
18  
re  
the  
St  
It  
the  
is  
eig  
is  
ma  
wit  
part  
of  
seve  
nin  
14  
unir  
170  
not  
the  
neve  
from

the case of young people of the age of from twenty to twenty-five. At that age, one hundred a year die in every thousand ; that is to say, one in ten.

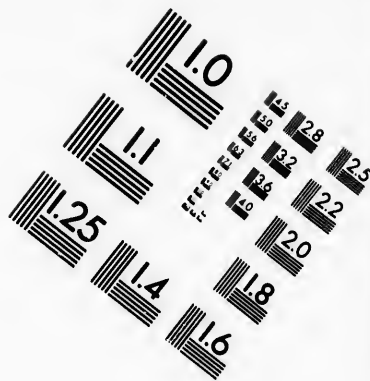
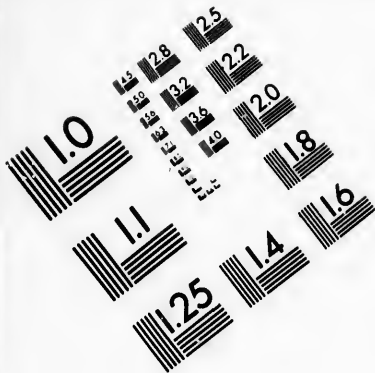
11. As has been said, the buildings of St Petersburg are remarkable for their size. The Admiralty is the largest building ; and it alone is nearly half a mile long. In no capital in Europe are there so many palaces. There are twelve destined for the Czar alone : eight of stone, and four of wood. The Winter Palace—the residence of the Czar for seven or eight months—is one of the largest buildings in the world. It required eight years to build ; and yet, when it was burned down in 1837, the Emperor Nicholas ordered that it should be rebuilt in one year. The task was done ; but it cost the lives of thousands of moujiks. 12. The church of St Isaac is the largest church and also the most splendid. It is not unlike St Paul's in London ; but the model of the architect was the Pantheon at Rome. The exterior is built of Finland marble and granite—there are forty-eight monolith pillars of red granite ; and the interior is a marvellous intermixture of gold, silver, bronze, marble, agate, and malachite. 13. The Neva is lined with the most magnificent granite quays. The different parts of the town, which are separated by the branches of the Neva, are connected by a hundred and seventy-seven bridges—thirty-six of which are of stone, and nineteen of iron.

14. The history of St Petersburg is monotonous and uninteresting. It was founded by Peter the Great in 1703, and proclaimed as the capital in 1712. It does not possess the ancient and varied history of London, or the intensely interesting dramatic story of Paris. It has never stood sieges, or been threatened with insurrections from within. 15. The greatest danger is from the Neva.

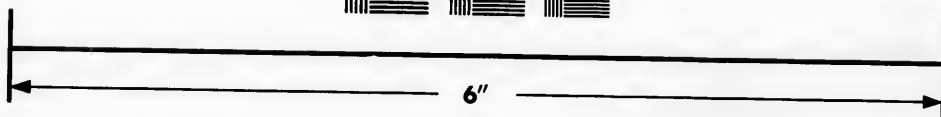
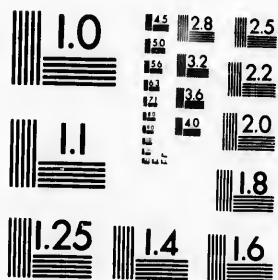
Nevski Prospekt, St Petersburg.







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
16  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36  
40

51  
01  
11

Every few years this river overflows its banks ; and there is a fearful inundation. This event most frequently occurs in spring. The ice begins to melt in the great lakes which discharge their surplus waters through the Neva ; and if at this time a strong west wind should prevail, the waters of the Gulf of Finland are heaped up, the waters of the Neva have not a free and open passage into the Gulf, and a disastrous overflow is the consequence. 16. In some parts of the city, these inundations are so frequent and so sudden, that, on the signal being given, the guests of an evening party suddenly depart without saying good-bye, and betake themselves, at the utmost speed of their horses, to the higher parts of the town. The most terrible of these inundations occurred in 1777 and in 1824. But, almost every spring, should a west wind prevail, the grown-up inhabitants of St Petersburg—from the Emperor down to the poorest moujik—sit up all night, and sometimes for several nights running, watching with beating hearts, pale faces, and blanched lips, the rising of the waters and the direction of the wind.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of paragraphs 6 to 10 inclusive.

2. Write a short paper on 'St Petersburg' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give a synonym for the single word : (1) An inclement sky. (2) The heat is accumulated. (3) The expansion of the ice breaks up the strongest edifices. (4) To reclaim her from the marsh. (5) The twilight melts into the dawn with undistinguishable gradations. (6) Many of the buildings are profusely gilded externally. (7) The annual mortality. (8) A marvellous intermixture. (9) The history of St Petersburg is monotonous. (10) The great lakes discharge their surplus waters. (11) Inundations. (12) They betake themselves to the higher parts of the town.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentence : 'The

position of the city forms a remarkable contrast with that of Naples.'

5. Analyse the following sentence :

There was a time, when, though my path was rough,  
The joy within me dallied with distress ;  
And all misfortunes were but as the stuff  
Whence fancy made me dreams of happiness.

6. Write in columns all the words you know connected with the following English words : *Fire*; *cold*<sup>1</sup>; *know*; *moon*<sup>2</sup>; *day*<sup>3</sup>; *cloth*; *grow*; *all*<sup>4</sup>; *high*; *ice*; *take*; *bake*<sup>5</sup>; *free*.

7. Give in columns all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words : *Latus*, broad; *longus*, long; *fluo*, I flow (root *flu*, stem *flux*); *premo*, I press (root *prem*, stem *press*); *duco*, I lead (root *duc*, stem *duct*).

8. Write sentences containing the following words : *Peace* and *piece*; *peer* and *pier*; *plain* and *plane*; *pleas* and *please*.

9. Write sentences containing the following phrases : *Sink beneath*, *sink into*, *sink under*; *start at*, *start from*, and *start with*.

<sup>1</sup> *Chill*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Month*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> *Dawn*, etc.

<sup>4</sup> *Also*, *alone*, etc.

<sup>5</sup> *Batch*, etc.

## THE SUEZ CANAL.

|                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Recently, lately. From Lat. <i>recens</i> , fresh.                                                                               | Lat. <i>dis</i> , apart, and <i>metior</i> ( <i>mensus</i> ), I measure. Cognates : <i>Mete</i> ; <i>metage</i> (the measurement of coal).        |
| Moles, a large mass of masonry-work, generally for the purpose of a breakwater. From Lat. <i>moles</i> , a mass.                 | Unprecedented, not known or experienced before. From Eng. <i>un</i> , not; and Lat. <i>pre</i> , before; and <i>cedo</i> , I go.                  |
| Concrete, compounded. From Lat. <i>con</i> , together, and <i>cresco</i> ( <i>cretum</i> ), I grow. Cognate : <i>Accretion</i> . | Plateau (a French word), table-land. From Gr. <i>platys</i> , flat. Cognates : <i>Plot</i> ; <i>plate</i> ; <i>plat-form</i> ; <i>platitude</i> . |
| Maximum (a Latin word), greatest. The opposite is <i>minimum</i> .                                                               | Cafés, coffee-houses.                                                                                                                             |
| Excavated, dug or hollowed out. From Lat. <i>ex</i> , out, and <i>cavo</i> , I hollow.                                           | Abattoir, slaughter-house. From Fr. <i>abatire</i> , to knock down.                                                                               |
| Dimensions, measurements. From                                                                                                   | Bazaar (a Persian word), an open-                                                                                                                 |



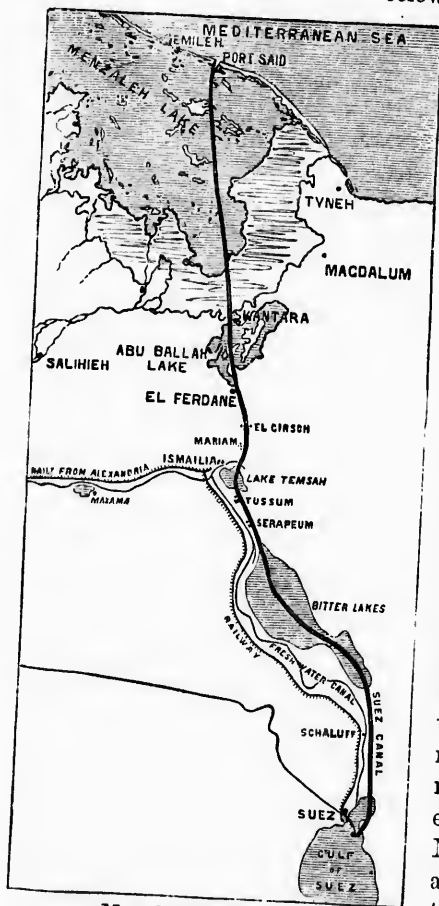
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>air market for all kinds of goods.</p> <p><b>Quays</b>, wharfs for the loading and unloading of vessels.</p> <p><b>Depression</b>, hollow. From Lat. <i>de</i>, down, and <i>premo</i> (<i>pressum</i>), I press. Cognates: <i>Press</i>, <i>pressure</i>; <i>impress</i>, <i>express</i>, <i>compress</i>, etc.</p> | <p><b>Subsidiary</b>, aiding or assisting. From Lat. <i>subsidium</i>, help.</p> <p><b>Involving</b>, requiring. From Lat. <i>involvere</i>, I roll or wrap in. Cognates: <i>Involution</i>; <i>revolve</i>; <i>revolution</i>.</p> <p><b>Fertilising</b>, making fruitful. From Lat. <i>fero</i>, I bear. Cognate: <i>Fertility</i>.</p> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. Beginning at the northern or Mediterranean end of the canal, there is the new town of Port Saïd, built on a strip of sand which separates the sea from Lake Menzaleh. Although so recently formed, it has a population of several thousand inhabitants, with streets, docks, basins, and quays. The Mediterranean being at this part very shallow, depth for a harbour could only be obtained by constructing two piers or moles, the one a mile and a half, and the other a mile and a quarter long, formed of huge blocks of concrete or artificial stone. The inclosed area, 500 acres in extent, has been dredged to a depth sufficient for large merchant-ships.

2. Basins and docks are connected with this harbour; and then begins the canal itself, just 100 miles long. For four-fifths of the distance, this canal is 327 feet wide at the surface of the water, 72 feet wide at the bottom, and 26 feet deep. The remaining one-fifth is 196 feet wide at the water surface, with the same bottom-width and maximum depth as the other. The great surface-width has been adopted to render the banks very gradual in their slope or shelving, as a precaution against washing away.

3. To form a canal of such large dimensions, 96,000,000 cubic yards of stone, sand, and earth have been excavated; and an immense amount of manual labour, aided by dredging machinery of unprecedented magnitude and power, has been needed in the work. The part of the sloping

banks a little above and below



Map showing Suez Canal.

the water-level is protected by rough stone pitching, to resist the action of waves caused by passing steamers.

4. From Port Said the canal crosses several miles of Lake Menzaleh, a kind of shallow swamp, which requires an embankment to mark and confine the two banks. Then comes the Kantara cutting, three miles through hillocks of sand. This ends at Lake Ballah, a kind of salt marsh, through which the canal runs about nine miles, with side embankments. Next to this comes a portion of plateau eight miles long, in some parts

of which, near El Girsch, the canal had to be dug to the vast depth of 90 feet in hard sandstone—an immense labour where the width of the canal is so

great. 5. Then we come to the central part of the canal—Lake Temsah—where, just about 50 miles from each end, is the new and flourishing town of Ismailia, provided with streets, roads, merchants' offices, banks, hotels, cafés, villas, a Roman Catholic chapel for the French inhabitants, a Mohammedan mosque for the Egyptian and Arab population, a theatre, a hospital, a railway station, a telegraph station, an abattoir, a bazaar, and quays and repairing-docks for shipping. This town is one of the most remarkable of M. de Lesseps' creations.

6. The canal then passes through nine miles of dry land, where the Serapeum cutting has called for a vast amount of excavation. To this succeeds a passage of 23 miles through the Bitter Lake, which has for ages been a dry salt depression, but which is now filled with sea-water from the Mediterranean and the Red Sea—the canal itself being marked out by lofty and broad embankments. To fill up this great depression 10,000,000 cubic yards of water have been admitted. A further portion of 17 miles, through dry land and shallow dried-up lakes, carries the canal to Suez, involving extensive blasting at the Schaluff cutting. At the junction with the Red Sea at Suez, all the necessary piers, docks, quays, etc. have been constructed.

7. A subsidiary work—without which this great ship canal could not have been constructed—is the Sweet-water Canal, which is about forty feet wide by nine feet deep. It brings the fresh water of the Nile from a point a little below Cairo to Ismailia and Suez, and by means of large iron pipes to Port Saïd. This minor canal is literally invaluable, seeing that it supplied fresh water for the thousands of men employed in the works, and is gradually fertilising what was before a sandy

desert. a. The really grand Suez Canal, which cost upwards of £16,000,000, was opened for traffic in November, 1869, and ships of large burden pass through it every day.

EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of the first six paragraphs.  
2. Write a short paper on 'The Suez Canal' from your own summary.

3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give a synonym for the single word: (1) Recently formed. (2) Maximum depth. (3) Machinery of unprecedented magnitude and power. (4) This town is one of the most remarkable of M. de Lesseps' creations. (5) Dry salt depression. (6) A subsidiary work. (7) Invaluable. (8) It is gradually fertilising what was before a sandy desert.

4. Parse all the words in the following sentences: 'The really grand Suez Canal, which cost upwards of £16,000,000, was opened for traffic in November, 1869.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

I wis, in all the senate  
There was no heart so bold  
But sore it ached, and fast it beat  
When that ill news was told.

6. Write in columns all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Deep*; *begin*; *wet*<sup>1</sup>; *bank*<sup>2</sup>; *mark*<sup>3</sup>; *town*; *through*<sup>4</sup>; *broad*; *long*; *fore*.

7. Write in columns all the derivatives from the following Latin words: *Populus*, people (root *popul*; the adjective *publicus* was contracted into *publicus*); *struo*, I build (root *stru*, stem *stru-*); *cavo*, I hollow (root *cav*, stem *cavat*); *sto*, I stand (root *sta*, stem *stat*).

8. Make sentences containing the following words: *Pain* and *pain*; *pail* and *pale*; *pair* and *pare*.

9. Make sentences containing the following phrases: *Remain at*, *remain in*, *remain over*; *rest from*, *rest in*, and *rest upon*.

<sup>1</sup> *Water*, etc.

<sup>2</sup> *Bench*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> *March*, *Lord Marcher*; *market*, etc.

<sup>4</sup> *Thorough*, etc.

## CONTENTMENT.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Our main dependence</b>, what we relied on most.</p> <p><b>Submitted</b>, yielded.</p> <p><b>Prevailed upon</b>, succeeded in persuading.</p> <p><b>Disaster</b>, mishap <i>or</i> accident.</p> <p><b>Genealogy of</b>, the tracing of one's ancestors (here used metaphorically for <i>descendants</i>).</p> <p><b>Cordiality</b>, heartiness.</p> <p><b>Testimony</b>, mark <i>or</i> sign.</p> | <p><b>Invest myself with the character</b>, put myself in the place and position of.</p> <p><b>Sabots</b> (pronounced <i>sabō</i>), wooden shoes.</p> <p><b>Esplanade</b>, a level place for walking <i>or</i> dancing on.</p> <p><b>Elevation of spirit</b>, a mind raised above ordinary things.</p> <p><b>Illiterate</b>, unlettered <i>or</i> without learning.</p> <p><b>Prelate</b>, a bishop <i>or</i> archbishop.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

1. A shoe coming loose from the fore-foot of the post-horse at the beginning of a long ascent, the postillion dismounted, twisted the shoe off, and put it in his pocket. As the ascent was five or six miles, and that horse our main dependence, I made a point of having the shoe fastened on again as well as we could; but the postillion had thrown away the nails, and the hammer in the chaise-box being of no great use without them, I submitted to go on. 2. He had not mounted half a mile higher, when, coming to a flinty piece of road, the poor horse lost a second shoe, and from off his other fore-foot. I then got out of the chaise in good earnest; and, seeing a house about a quarter of a mile to the left hand, with a great deal to-do I prevailed upon the postillion to turn up to it. 3. The look of the house and of everything about it, as we drew nearer, soon reconciled me to the disaster. It was a little farmhouse, surrounded by about twenty acres of vineyard, nearly as much corn, and close to the house on one side was a kitchen-garden of an acre and a half, full of everything that could make plenty in a French peasant's

house; and on the other side was a little wood, which furnished wherewithal to dress it. 4. It was about eight in the evening when I got to the house, so I left the postillion to manage his own business; and, as to mine, I walked directly into the house. The family consisted of an old gray-headed man and his wife, with five or six sons and sons-in-law and their several wives, and a joyous genealogy of grandchildren. They were all sitting down together to their lentil soup; a large wheaten loaf was in the middle of the table, and a flagon of wine at each end of it promised joy through the stages of the repast; it was a feast of love. 5. The old man rose up to meet me, and with a respectful cordiality would have me sit down at the table. My heart had sat down the moment I entered the room, so I took my place like a son of the family; and, to invest myself with the character as speedily as I could, I instantly borrowed the old man's knife, and, taking up the loaf, cut myself a hearty slice; and, as I did it, I saw a testimony in every eye, not only of an honest welcome, but of a welcome mixed with thanks that I had not seemed to doubt it. 6. Was it this—or tell me, Nature, what else it was—that made this morsel so sweet; and to what magic did I owe it that the draught I took of their flagon was so delicious that the flavour remains upon my palate to this hour?

When supper was over, the old man gave a knock on the table with the haft of his knife, to bid them prepare for the dance. 7. The moment the signal was given, the women and girls all ran together into a back apartment to tie up their hair, and the young men to the door to wash their faces and change their sabots; and in three minutes every soul was ready, upon a little esplanade before the house, to begin. The old man and his wife

came out last, and, placing me betwixt them, sat down upon a sofa of turf by the door. s. The old man had in his earlier years been no mean performer upon the guitar; and, old as he was then, he touched it well enough for the purpose. His wife sang now and then a little of the tune, now leaving off, and then joining her old man again, as their children and grandchildren danced before them.

It was not till the middle of the second dance, when, from some pauses in the movements wherein they all seemed to look up, I fancied I could distinguish an elevation of spirit different from that which is the cause or the effect of simple jollity. a. The old man, as soon as the dance ended, told me that this was their constant way; and that all his life long he had made it a rule, after supper was over, to call out his family to dance and rejoice, believing, he said, that a cheerful and contented mind was the best sort of thanks to Heaven that an illiterate peasant could pay. 'Or a learned prelate either,' said I.

*Sterne.*

COMPOSITION.—Write a short story about CONTENTMENT from the following heads: 1. A traveller is driving along a road in the south of France, and his horse is lamed. 2. He enters a small farm-house and is invited to supper. 3. After supper, the whole family dance, and the old father plays to them. 4. The old man tells the traveller that this is their regular custom every evening. 5. The traveller's reply.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) That one horse was our main dependence. (2) The look of the house soon reconciled me to the disaster. (3) The little wood furnished wherewithal to dress it. (4) There was a joyous genealogy of grandchildren. (5) The old man shewed me respectful cordiality. (6) I saw in every eye a testimony of welcome. (7) The old man had been no mean performer on the guitar. (8) A contented mind is the best sort of thanks.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: The look of the house very soon reconciled me to the disaster.
3. Analyse the above sentence.
4. Give the principal parts of the following verbs: *Shoe; lose; put; make; fasten; use; come; get; see; leave; draw.*
5. Select from the first three sections words which may be both nouns and verbs, according to the use that is made of them—such words, for example, as *use, twist, &c.*
6. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Assent; dependence; submission; prevalence; reconciliation; furniture; consistency; seat; cordiality.*
7. Make sentences in which each of the first six of these words shall be used.
8. Write all the compounds of the following words that you know: *Come; turn; manage; part; touch; join.*
9. The words relating to *year* are as follows: *Yearly; annual; half-yearly; biennial* (happening every two years); *triennial; septennial; century; perennial* (lasting through the year); *millennium* (a space of a thousand years), and others. Give in the same way (but write them in columns), with their meanings, the words which relate to *house* and *vines*.

## A VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD.

### PART II.

**Cyclades**, from the Gr. *kuklos*, a circle. (The same word gives *cycle*, and *encyclical* = a circular letter.)

**Typhoons**, terrible circular storms, which occur frequently in the Chinese seas. (The name comes from *Typhon*, a giant of ancient Greek fable.)

**Bewildered**, perplexed, as if lost in a wilderness.

**Sparse**, sparingly distributed. (It is the opposite to *dense*.)

**Piracy**, acting as a pirate, or sea-robber.

**Phoenix**, a fabulous bird, said to live single for five hundred years, and then to burn itself, when a young one rises out of the ashes. It is hence employed as the symbol of immortality.

**Type**, kind or model.

**Yard-arm**, the arm or end of the yard—one of the long poles which cross the masts at right angles, and hold up the sails.

**Bombard**, to throw bombs at.

**Dey**, a Turkish word which means literally *uncle by the mother's side*; then *Governor*.

*Sterne.*

CONTENTMENT from  
ong a road in  
. He enters a  
er supper, the  
hem. 4. The  
egular custom

(1) That one  
he house soon  
ood furnished  
genealogy of  
ful cordiality.

(7) The old  
) A contented



- Memorials**, reminders, things to keep up the *memory* of.
- Hieroglyphs**, sacred carvings; from Gr. *hieros*, sacred, and *glupho*, I carve.
- Caitiff**, rascally. (The word is really a N. Fr. form of the word *captive*, and it was applied to those who gave themselves up in battle too easily, and without hard fighting.)
- Geometry**, the science of the relations of space. (Literally, it means *earth-measuring*, from the Gr. *ge*, the earth, and *metro*, I measure.)
- Annihilated**, utterly destroyed, from Lat. *nilil*, nothing.
- Currants**, small dried fruit. (The word is a corruption of *Corinth*, which originally exported them.)
- Refulgent**, shining; from Lat. *fulgere*, to shine.
- Hesperia**, from the Gr. *Hesperos*, the evening star. (When *Hesperos* became the morning star, it was called *Phosphoros*, the light-bringer. To the Greeks Italy itself was *Hesperia*, because it lay west of them.)
- Plateau**, the French word for *table-land*.
- Sierra**, the Spanish name for a *mountain-range*. It is a form of the Latin word *serra*, a saw, because the jagged edge of a mountain range looks like a saw against the blue sky.
- Realm**, the *real* or *royal* domain. (*Real* is the N. Fr. of the word *royal* or *regal*; and it was in the 14th century also an English word.)

1. Let us pass to the south and east. The poet Montgomery calls the numerous islands at the south of Asia the 'Eastern Cyclades.' The true Cyclades (or *circled islands*) lie in a group in the south of the Ægean Sea. The seas in which the Eastern Cyclades lie are beautiful, and often calm; but sometimes they are visited by fearful hurricanes, called typhoons.

Jealous China, strange Japan,  
With bewildered eyes I scan!  
They are but dead seas of man.  
Lo! the Eastern Cyclades,  
Phoenix nests, and sky-blue seas;  
But I tarry not with these.

2. Working our way through these beautiful islands, we come to Australia, which has been already mentioned, and which was formerly called New Holland.

The savages of Australia are the lowest type of man ever discovered, but are gradually becoming fewer and fewer as the white man extends his civilising influence.

3. If now we strike north-west, we shall reach the Bay of Bengal, and have the two Indias—India or Hindustan, and Farther India—on each side of us. The population of British India amounts to nearly 200,000,000; and in the kingdom of Oude, which is also under our rule, the population is so dense that it reaches the proportion of 468 to the square mile. The mighty river called the Ganges rolls through one of the most fertile plains in the world. 4. Calcutta, the capital of the Government of Bengal, and the seat of the Viceroy of India, is often called the 'City of Palaces.' The poet thinks that Britain, in gaining the Empire of India, lost her own good name; but this is not so, because the British Government is much superior in justice and in mildness to any government that went before it.

5. Sailing south, past the island of Ceylon, rounding Cape Comorin, and striking to the north-west, we pass the Gulf of Persia. Persia is a high table-land, ten times larger in extent than the British Islands, but with a very sparse population of about four millions. One of the popular stories of the country is that the nightingale makes love to the rose—a plant much cultivated in this Eastern country. 6. Arabia, where we next touch at, is a barren tableland, with fertile strips only on the edges, and has long been famous for the spices it grows. When the breeze is from the land, sweet perfumes are often wafted far out to sea; and odours from 'Araby the blest' have been famous for many centuries.

By the Gulf of Persia sail,  
 Where the true-love nightingale,  
 Woos the rose in every vale.  
 Though Arabia charge the breeze  
 With the incense of her trees,  
 On we press o'er southern seas.

7. Bartholomew Diaz, a knight of the royal household of Portugal, set out in 1486 with three vessels to explore Southern Africa. He came in sight of Table Mountain and a cape, which he called *Cabo Tormentoso*, or the *Stormy Cape*; but his sovereign changed the

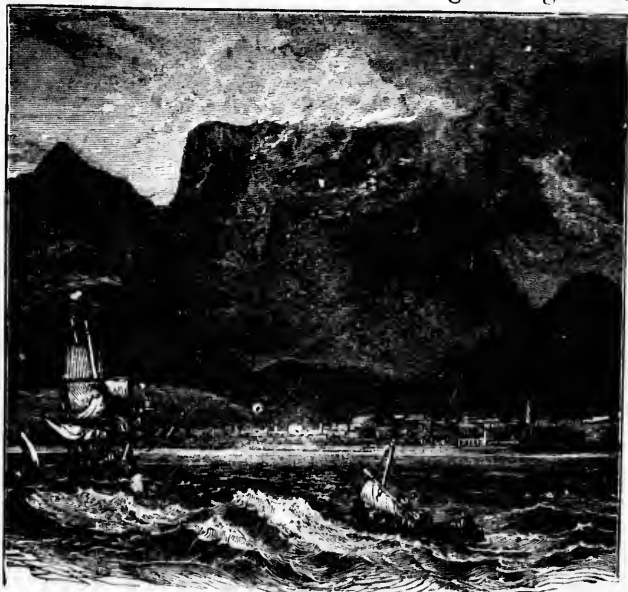


Table Mountain—Cape of Good Hope.

name to the Cape of Good Hope—a name of better augury. Another Portuguese, Vasco de Gama, was the first to double this cape—a feat he performed in 1497.

Commanding Table Bay and Cape Town stands the rugged mass called Table Mountain. Sometimes a white cloud lies rolled upon the surface, and the sailors call such a cloud 'the tablecloth.' Sailing to the north-west, up through the Southern Atlantic, we touch at St Helena, for six years the prison of the great Napoleon. To this barren rock he was banished by the English Government immediately after the Battle of Waterloo in 1815; here he died in 1821; and under a well-known willow-tree lay his body until it was brought back to France, in 1840, in the reign of Louis Philippe.

Cape of Storms, thy spectre's fled,  
 And the angel Hope, instead,  
 Lights from heaven upon thy head.  
 Lonely monarch of the wave,  
 Chosen St Helena gave  
 To resting warrior, a grave.

9. Almost opposite lies the slave-coast of Africa. Traffickers in human beings, chiefly Portuguese, have for centuries carried on this villainous trade. English law regards slave-dealing as piracy, and the captain and every man of the crew of a slave-ship may be hanged at the yard-arm if captured; and, to check this traffic, Great Britain keeps a small fleet of men-of-war constantly upon this coast.

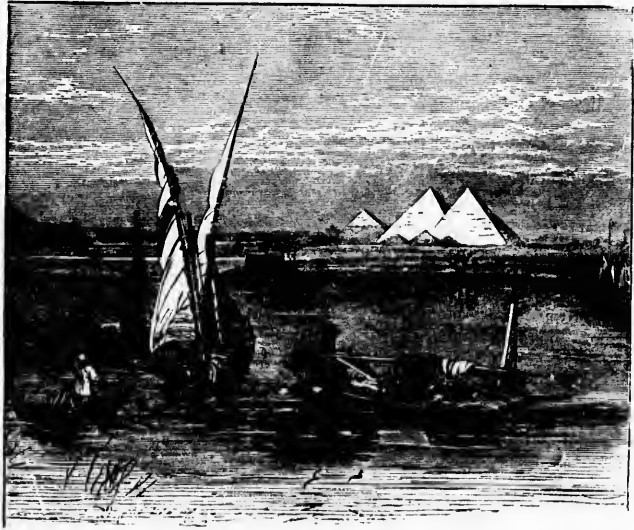
10. Steering to the north, we come to the Straits of Gibraltar. The rock of Gibraltar and the mountain of Ceuta, on the African side, were in ancient times called the Pillars of Hercules, because it was believed that the travels of this great Greek hero had ended here, and that he had placed pillars on these rocks as memorials of the points to which he had reached in his journeyings. In the distance rises the snow-capped range of the Atlas Mountains.

royal house-  
 three vessels to  
 light of Table  
 of Tormentoso,  
 changed the



one of better  
 ma, was the  
 ed in 1497.

11. Let us turn east and survey the historic coasts of the Mediterranean. On the south lies Algiers, the former abode of Moorish pirates. The practice of holding Christians as slaves was finally put down in 1816 by Lord Exmouth, who bombarded the city for seven hours, destroyed the Algerine fleet and many public buildings, and forced the Dey of Algiers to agree to the demands of Britain. The French took possession of Algeria in 1830, and since then the country has been gradually rising in wealth and industry. 12. East, and



The Nile and Pyramids.

farther east! and we approach the mouths of 'old Nile' and the ancient land of Egypt. Ancient Egypt had two languages—one written by the priests, the other spoken by the people. The written characters (or

short-hand pictures) employed by the priests were called hieroglyphs.

Mark the dens of caitiff Moors;

Ha! the pirates seize their oars—

Fly the desecrated shores!

Egypt's hieroglyphic realm

Other floods than Nile's o'erwhelm—

Slaves turned despots hold the helm.

12. In the year 1801 the French were driven out of Egypt, and the country was once more placed in the power of Turkey. It was then ruled by Mehemet Ali, a vassal of the Ottoman Porte—a slave of the Sultan, who, when left to himself, shewed how tyrannical and despotic a slave can become. The two most famous things in Egypt are the Nile and the Pyramids. The Nile is one of the longest rivers in the world. It is the true benefactor of Egypt. One of its branches brings down millions of tons of fertilising mud, with which it covers every year the face of the whole country, and from which large crops of rice and corn are grown by the husbandmen. 14. The Pyramids were and are among the wonders of the world. They are scattered up and down the lower part of the country, but the three largest are the most famous. The largest of all, which is 480 feet 9 inches high, was the sepulchre of Cheops, one of the great kings of ancient Egypt. They were built as sepulchres, or monuments, or places for keeping treasure. The Egyptians were great astronomers and land-surveyors. They were obliged to learn land-surveying; for, as the Nile every year completely wiped out all land-marks, all fields and plots had to be measured over again.

15. Steering now to the north, we come to Syria and the Levant. The ancient glories of Judah are departed;

oric coasts of  
Algiers, the  
actice of hold-  
down in 1816  
ity for seven  
many public  
s to agree to  
ok possession  
ntry has been  
12. East, and



of 'old Nile'  
t Egypt had  
ts, the other  
characters (or

and Jerusalem is a poor town of 25,000 inhabitants, half of whom are Mohammedans, and the rest Jews and Christians. Greece is next approached. The battle of Navarino, in 1820, when the combined British, French, and Russian fleets annihilated the navies of Turkey and Egypt, finally freed Greece from the cruel yoke of Turkey. 16. It was hoped that this would awaken the ancient spirit of Greece, bring back the old sages and poets, and make the country one of the civilising powers of Europe. But at present she is only a small trading community. Currants are her chief product; but two-thirds of the land is uncultivated.

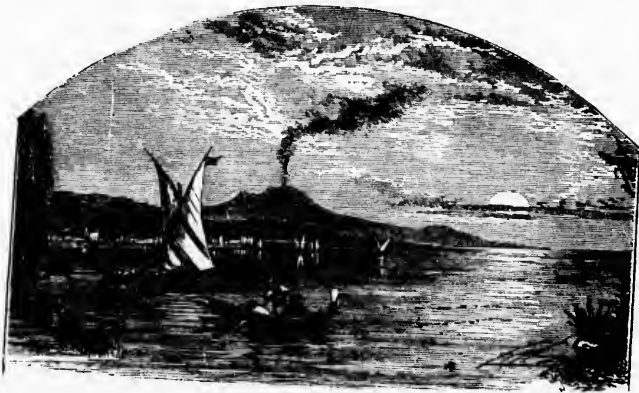
Judah's cities are forlorn,  
 Lebanon and Carmel shorn,  
 Zion trampled down with scorn.  
 Greece, a wind is on the wing,  
 At whose breath new hopes may spring,  
 Sages teach, and poets sing.

17. Ever west! and we come in sight of the lovely land of Italy. Up to 1859, the name *Italy* was only a geographical expression; and the country was ruled by tyrannical kings, grand-dukes and dukes—all of whom held their power by the help of Austria. But in the beginning of 1859 Napoleon III. declared that Italy should be free from the Alps to the Adriatic; and, in a series of bloody battles, he drove the Austrians farther and farther to the east. 18. Venetia was the last part freed; and the country was united in 1866, when the power of Austria fell before Prussia in the battle of Sadowa. The great names of Mazzini and Garibaldi are in the mouths of every one when Italy is spoken of.

Italy, thy beauties shroud  
 In a gorgeous evening cloud:  
 Thy refulgent head is bowed;

Yet, where Roman genius reigns,  
 Roman blood *must* warm the veins:  
 Look well, tyrants! to your chains.

The Bay of Naples—with Mount Vesuvius looking down upon it, is said to be the loveliest in the world: 'See Naples and die,' is the country proverb.



Bay of Naples and Mount Vesuvius.

19. Spain—called by the ancient Italians *Hesperia*, or 'the land of the evening star'—next looms on the horizon. A land of high plateaus, wide barren plains, snow-capped sierras, picturesque valleys, ancient castles, splendid Moorish buildings and public works, it attracts the traveller as much by its past history as by its present strange and weird beauty. The poet, who bids Spain 'grasp her shield' and 'advance her front,' wrote when the armies of Napoleon were swarming all over the Peninsula, and when Wellington was compelled to retire into Portugal (which was called by the Romans *Lusitania*), in 1810. 20. Thence he issued in 1811, and, stroke following upon stroke, beat back





the French across the  
Pyrenees and freed the  
whole Peninsula.

At the fire-flash of thine eye  
Giant Bigotry shall fly ;  
At thy voice, Oppression  
die.

Lusitania, from the dust  
Shake thy locks ; thy  
cause is just ;  
Strike for freedom, strike  
and trust.

Feudal realm of old romance,  
Spain, thy lofty front ad-  
vance,

Grasp thy shield and couch  
thy lance.



## NIGHT.

How beautiful is night !  
 A dewy freshness fills the silent air ;  
 No mist obscures, nor cloud, nor speck, nor stain,  
 Breaks the serene of heaven :  
 In full-orbed glory yonder moon divine  
 Rolls through the dark blue depths.  
 Beneath her steady ray  
 The desert circle spreads  
 Like the round ocean, girdled with the sky :  
 How beautiful is night !

*Robert Southey, 1774-1843.*

DIRECTION.—This short poem should be read with great slowness and distinctness.



## THE GENTLEMAN.

THE GENTLEMAN is a man of truth, lord of his own actions, and expressing that lordship in his behaviour, not in any manner dependent or servile, either on persons, or opinions, or possessions. Beyond this fact of truth and real force, the word denotes good-nature or benevolence: manhood first, and then gentleness. . . . What is rich? Are you rich enough to help anybody? to succour the weak and the eccentric? to make the poor swarthy Italian with his few broken words of English, the lame pauper driven by overseers from town to town, even the poor insane wreck of man or woman, feel the noble exception of your presence and your house from the general bleakness and stoniness: to make such feel that they were greeted with a voice which made them both remember and hope?

Look! he that is most virtuous alway,  
Abroad and home, and most intendeth aye  
To do the gentle actions that he can,  
Take *him* for the greatest gentleman.

Chaucer.

## BATTLE OF WATERLOO,

JUNE 18, 1815.

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Decisive</b>, settling once for all. The adjective from <i>decide</i>, which comes from Lat. <i>decido</i>, <i>decisum</i>, <i>decidere</i>, to cut off.</p> <p><b>Assallants</b>, persons attacking; from Low Lat. <i>assalire</i>, for Lat. <i>assilire</i>, to leap against.</p> <p><b>Precipitate</b>, throw headlong; from Lat. <i>præ</i>, before, and <i>caput</i>, the head.</p> | <p><b>Force</b> (in a military sense), take.</p> <p><b>Mask</b> (in a military sense), protect from attack.</p> <p><b>Incessant</b>, never ceasing; from Lat. <i>in</i>, not, and <i>cesso</i>, I cease or stop.</p> <p><b>Repelled</b>, drove back; from Lat. <i>re</i>, back, and <i>pello</i>, I drive.</p> <p><b>Reinforced</b>, strengthened by the addition of.</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Transferred**, carried to another place; from Lat. *trans*, across, and *fero*, I carry.

**Took the advance**, led the way.

**Intrepidity**, fearlessness; from Lat. *in*, not, and *trepidus*, fearful.

**Encountered**, met.

**Dispersing**, routing and scattering.

**Spike**, to drive a nail into the touch-hole.

**Sallied**, leapt forth; from Lat. *salire*, to leap. Connected with *assail*, *assailant*, &c.

**Impetuosity**, fury; from Lat. *impetus*, an attack.

**Expelled**, driven out; from Lat. *ex*, out of, and *pello*, I drive.

Connected with *repel*, *compel*, *impel*; *repulse*, *compulsion*, *impulse*, &c.

**Operate a diversion**, attack the enemy in a different place and so divert his attention.

**Fugitives**, runaways; from Lat. *fugio*, I flee.

**Securing**, making sure of; from Lat. *securus*, free from care.

**Veterans**, old soldiers; from Lat. *vetus*, *veteris*, old. Hence also *inveterate*.

**Retrieve**, make up for losses, or win back.

**Fiction**, made-up story; from Lat. *figo*, I fashion or make, *factum*, something made up.

**Segment**, a portion (cut off); from Lat. *seco*, I cut.

**Convex**, bulging out, the opposite of *concave*, which means *hollo*.

**Deploy**, to extend in line; from Fr. *deployer*, to unfold.

**Concentrated**, massed together.

1. Between eleven and twelve in the forenoon, on the memorable 18th of June, this dreadful and decisive action began with a cannonade on the part of the French, which was instantly followed by an attack commanded by Jerome, on the advanced post of Hougoumont. The troops of Nassau, which occupied the wood round the chateau, were driven out by the French; but the utmost efforts of the assailants were unable to force the house, garden, and farm-offices, which a party of the guards held with the most dauntless resolution. The French redoubled their efforts, and precipitated themselves in large numbers on the outside hedge, which screens the garden-wall, not perhaps aware of the internal defence afforded by the latter. 2. They fell in great numbers at this point by the well-directed fire of the defenders, to which they were exposed in every

Chaucer.

ry sense), take.  
ary sense), pro-  
ceasing; from  
d *cesso*, I cease  
ck; from Lat.  
o, I drive.  
thened by the

tion. The number of their troops, however, enabled them to take possession of the wood, and so to mask Hougomont for a time, and to push on with their cavalry and artillery against the British right, which formed in squares to receive them. The fire was incessant, but without apparent advantage on either side. The attack was at length repelled so far, that the British again opened their communication with Hougomont, and that important garrison was reinforced by Colonel Hepburn and a body of the guards.

3. Meantime, the fire of artillery having become general along the line, the force of the French attack was transferred to the British centre. It was made with the most desperate fury, and received with the most stubborn resolution. The assault was here made upon the farm-house of Saint Jean by four columns of infantry, and a large mass of cuirassiers, who took the advance. The cuirassiers came with the utmost intrepidity along the Genappe causeway, where they were encountered and charged by the English heavy cavalry; and a combat was maintained at the sword's point, till the French were driven back on their own position, where they were protected by their artillery. 4. The four columns of French infantry, engaged in the same attack, forced their way forward beyond the farm of La Haye Sainte, and, dispersing a Belgian regiment, were in the act of establishing themselves in the centre of the British position, when they were attacked by the brigade of General Pack, brought up from the second line by General Picton, while, at the same time, a brigade of British heavy cavalry wheeled round their own infantry, and attacked the French columns in flank at the moment when they were checked by the fire of the musketry. The results were decisive. The French

columns were broken with great slaughter, and two eagles, with more than two thousand men, were made prisoners. The latter were sent off instantly to Brussels.

5. About this period the French made themselves masters of the farm of La Haye Sainte, cutting to pieces about two hundred Hanoverian sharpshooters, by whom it had been most gallantly defended. The French retained this post for some time, till they were at last driven out of it by shells. Shortly after this event, the scene of conflict again shifted to the right, where a general attack of French cavalry was made on the squares, chiefly towards the centre of the British right, or between that and the causeway. They came up with the most dauntless resolution, in despite of the continued fire of thirty pieces of artillery, placed in the front of the line, and compelled the artillerymen, by whom they were served, to retreat within the squares. 6. The enemy had no means, however, of securing the guns, nor even of spiking them, and at every favourable moment the British artillerymen sallied from their place of refuge, again manned their pieces, and fired on the assailants. The cuirassiers, however, continued their dreadful onset, and rode up to the squares in full confidence, apparently, of sweeping them before the impetuosity of their charge. The British squares stood unmoved, and never gave fire till the cavalry were within ten yards, when every shot told—men rolled one way, horses galloped another, and the cuirassiers were in every instance driven back.

7. Blucher, faithful to his engagement with the Duke of Wellington, had, early in the morning, put in motion Bulow's division, which had not been engaged at Ligny, to communicate with the British army, and to operate a

diversion on the right flank and rear of the French. But Bulow, with the 4th Prussian corps, who had been expected by the Duke at or about the time the battle commenced, did not announce his approach, which he did by a distant fire, till half-past four in the afternoon.

8. It was now about six o'clock in the evening, and during this long series of the most furious attacks, the French had gained no success, save occupying for a time the wood around Hougomont, from which they had been expelled, and the farm-house of La Haye Sainte, which had been also recovered. The British, on the other hand, had suffered very severely, but had not lost one inch of ground, save the two posts, now regained. Ten thousand men were, however, killed and wounded; some of the foreign regiments had given way, though others had shewn the most desperate valour. The ranks were also thinned both by the actual fugitives, and by the absence of individuals, who left the bloody field for the purpose of carrying off the wounded, and some of whom might naturally be in no hurry to return to so fatal a scene. 9. About half an hour afterwards, the second grand division of the Prussian army began to enter into communication with the British left, by the village of Ohain, while Bulow pressed forward from Chapelle Lambert, on the French right and rear, by a hollow, or valley, called Fischemont. It became now evident that the Prussians were to enter seriously into the battle, and with great force. Napoleon had still the means of opposing them, and of securing a retreat, at the certainty, however, of being attacked upon the ensuing day by the combined armies of Britain and Prussia. His celebrated Guard had not yet taken any part in the conflict. With the aid of these tried veterans, he hoped

to retrieve the fortunes of the day, and drive the British from their position.

10. About seven o'clock they were formed in two columns under his own eye, near the bottom of the slope of La Belle Alliance. They were put under the command of the dauntless Ney. Bonaparte told the soldiers, and, indeed, imposed the same fiction upon their commander, that the Prussians whom they saw on the right were retreating before Grouchy. The Guard answered with shouts of 'Long live the Emperor!' and moved resolutely forward, supported by four battalions of the Old Guard in reserve, who stood prepared to protect the advance of their comrades. A gradual change had taken place in the British line, in consequence of the repeated repulse of the French. 11. Advancing by slow degrees, the right, which, at the beginning of the conflict, presented a segment of a convex circle, now resembled one that was concave, the extreme right that had been thrown back being now rather brought forward, so that their fire, both of artillery and infantry, fell upon the flank of the French, who had also to sustain that which was poured on their front from the heights. The British were ranged in a line of four deep, to meet the advancing columns of the French Guard, and poured upon them a storm of musketry which never ceased an instant. The soldiers fired independently, as it is called—each man loading and discharging his piece as fast as he could. 12. At length the British moved forward, as if to close round the heads of the columns, and at the same time continued to pour their shot upon the enemy's flanks. The French gallantly attempted to deploy, for the purpose of returning the discharge. But in their effort to do so, under so dreadful a fire, they stopped, staggered, became dis-



ordered, were blended into one mass, and at length gave way, retiring, or rather flying, in the utmost confusion. This was the last effort of the enemy, and Napoleon gave orders for the retreat; to protect which he had now no troops left, save the four battalions of the Old Guard, which had been stationed in the rear of the attacking columns. These threw themselves into squares, and stood firm. 13. But at this moment the Duke of Wellington commanded the whole British line to advance, so that, whatever the bravery and skill of these gallant veterans, they were thrown into disorder, and swept away in the general rout, in spite of the efforts of Ney, who, having had his horse killed, fought sword in hand, and on foot, in the front of the battle till the very last.

Whilst this decisive movement took place, Bulow, who had concentrated his troops, and was at length qualified to act in force, carried the village of Planche-nois in the French rear, and was now firing so close on their right wing, that the cannonade annoyed the British who were in pursuit, and was suspended in consequence. 14. Moving in oblique lines, the British and Prussian armies came in contact with each other on the heights so lately occupied by the French, whose army was now in total and inextricable confusion and rout; and, when the victorious generals met at the farmhouse of La Belle Alliance, it was agreed that the Prussians, who were comparatively fresh, should follow up the chase, a duty for which the British, exhausted by the fatigues of a battle of eight hours, were totally inadequate.

*Sir W. Scott.*

## INCIDENTS OF THE BATTLE.

- Charge**, attack or onset of a regiment or division.
- Warranted**, authorised or gave them reasons for doing.
- Identify**, make the same or feel with; from Lat. *idem*, the same, and *fit*, I become.
- Encountered**, met in fight.
- Rear**, the hinder part of an army. It is a broken-down form of the Fr. *arrière*, from the Lat. *retro*, behind (our Eng. word *rear* is a by-form of *rise*).
- Surrendered**, given themselves up as prisoners.
- Ardour**, heat and eagerness; from Lat. *ardere*, to burn.
- Convulsive**, violent and involuntary (*i.e.*, without or against the will of the person).
- Reinforced**, strengthened by the addition of.
- Hurricane**, violent storm.
- Bugle**, originally *bugle-horn*. (In the sixteenth century *bugle* meant a young ox; from Lat. *bos*, an ox, dim. *boviculus*, *buculus*, Fr. *beugler*, to bellow.)
- Released**, set free.
- Contemplate**, look at thoughtfully.
- Cuirassier**, men wearing cuirasses or iron breast-plates.
- Visors**, gaps in the face-plate of an ancient helmet to look through; from Fr. *visière*, from Lat. *videre*, to see.
- Ammunition**, powder and shot.
- Volleys**, shots fired from a number of muskets all at once; from Fr. *volée*, a flight.
- Exhorted**, encouraged, urged, or strongly advised.
- Unanimously**, with one mind; from Lat. *unus*, one, and *animus*, mind.
- Inutility**, uselessness; from Lat. *in*, not, and *utilitas*, usefulness.
- Unlimbered**, took off or undid the carriage (attached to the gun) that holds the ammunition.
- Involuntarily**, without willing it; from Lat. *in*, not, and *voluntas*, will.
- Momentous**, highly important.

1. One of the most interesting narratives of personal adventure at Waterloo is that of Colonel Frederick Ponsonby, of the 12th Light Dragoons, who was severely wounded when the brigade to which he belonged attacked the French lancers, in order to bring off the Union Brigade, which was retiring after its magnificent and memorable charge. The Twelfth, like those whom they rescued, advanced much farther against the

French than prudence warranted. Ponsonby, with many others, was speared by some Polish lancers, and left for dead upon the field. The narrative of the pangs of an individual, with whom we can identify ourselves, always comes more home to us than a general description of the miseries of whole masses. His tale may make us remember what are the horrors of war as well as its glories. 2. It is to be remembered that the operations to which he refers took place about three o'clock in the afternoon, and that the fighting went on for five hours more. After describing how he and his men charged through the French, whom they first encountered, he states :

‘We had no sooner passed them than we were ourselves attacked, before we could form, by about 300 Polish lancers, who had hastened to their relief; the French artillery pouring in upon us a heavy fire of grape, though, for one of our men, they killed three of their own.

3. ‘In the struggle I was almost instantly disabled in both arms, losing first my sword, and then my reins; and, followed by a few men, who were presently cut down, no quarter being allowed, asked, or given. I was carried along by my horse, till, receiving a blow from a sabre, I fell senseless on my face to the ground.

‘Recovering, I raised myself a little to look round, being at that time, I believe, in a condition to get up and run away; when a lancer passing by cried out, “You rascal, not dead yet!” and struck his lance through my back. My head dropped, the blood gushed into my mouth, a difficulty of breathing came on, and I thought all was over.

4. ‘Not long afterwards—it was impossible to measure time, but I must have fallen in less than ten minutes

after the onset—a skirmisher stopped to plunder me, threatening my life. I directed him to a small side-pocket, in which he found three dollars, all I had; but he continued to threaten, and I said he might search me. This he did immediately, unloosing my stock and tearing open my waistcoat, and leaving me in a very uneasy position.

5. 'He was no sooner gone than an officer, bringing up some troops, to which, probably, the skirmisher belonged, and happening to halt where I lay, stooped down and addressed me, saying he feared I was badly wounded. I said that I was, and expressed a wish to be removed to the rear. He said it was against their orders to remove even their own men; but that, if they gained the day (and he understood the Duke of Wellington was killed, and that some of our battalions had surrendered), every attention in his power would be shewn me. 6. I complained of thirst, and he held his brandy-bottle to my lips, directing one of the soldiers to lay me straight on my side, and place a knapsack under my head. He then passed on into action—soon, perhaps, to want, though not to receive, the like assistance; and I shall never know to whose generosity I was indebted, as I believe, for my life. Of what rank he was I cannot say; he wore a greatcoat. 7. By-and-by another skirmisher came up, full of ardour. He knelt down and fired over me, loading and firing many times, and conversing with me all the while.' The Frenchman, with strange coolness, informed Ponsonby of how he was shooting, and what he thought of the progress of the battle. 'At last he ran off, exclaiming, "You will probably not be sorry to hear that we are going to retreat. Good day, my friend." 8. It was dusk,' Ponsonby adds, 'when two squadrons of Prussian cavalry,

each of them two deep, came across the valley, and passed over me in full trot, lifting me from the ground, and tumbling me about cruelly. The clatter of their approach, and the apprehensions they excited, may be imagined, but not described.

9. 'The battle was now at an end or removed to a distance. The shouts, the imprecations, the outcries, the discharge of musketry and cannon were all over; and the groans of the wounded all round me became every moment more and more audible. I thought the night would never end. 10. Much about this time I found a soldier of the Royals lying across my legs; he had probably crawled thither in his agony; and his weight, his convulsive motions, and the air issuing through a wound in his side, distressed me greatly; the last circumstance most of all, as I had a wound of the same kind myself. It was not a dark night, and the Prussians were wandering about to plunder. 11. Several stragglers looked at me, as they passed by one after another, and at last one of them stopped to examine me. I told him as well as I could, for I spoke German very imperfectly, that I was a British officer, and had been plundered already; he did not desist, however, but pulled me about roughly. 12. An hour before midnight I saw a man in an English uniform walking towards me. He was, I suspect, on a like errand, and came and looked in my face. I spoke instantly, telling him who I was, and assuring him of a reward if he would remain by me. He said he belonged to the 40th Regiment, but had missed it. He released me from the dying soldier, and being unarmed, took up a sword from the ground, and paced backwards and forwards, keeping guard over me. 13. Day broke; and at six in the morning some British were seen at a distance, and he ran to them. A

messenger being sent off to Harvey, a cart came for me, I was placed in it and carried to the village of Waterloo, a mile and a half off, and laid in the bed from which, as I understood afterwards, Gordon had been just carried out. I had received seven wounds; a surgeon slept in my room, and I was saved by excessive bleeding.'

14. The late Major Macready also served at Waterloo in the 30th Regiment. During the earlier part of the day he and his company were thrown forward as skirmishers in front of his brigade; but, when the French cavalry began their attacks on the British right centre, he and his comrades were ordered to fall back. He says:

'Before the commencement of the attack our company and the grenadiers of the 73d were skirmishing briskly on the low ground, covering our guns, and annoying those of the enemy. The line of French riflemen opposed to us was not stronger than our own; but on a sudden they were reinforced by numerous bodies, and several guns began playing on us with canister. Our poor fellows dropped very fast, and several of our officers were carried off badly wounded in about two minutes. 15. I was now commander of our company. We stood under the hurricane of small shot till Halkett sent to order us in, and I brought away about a third of the company; the rest were killed or wounded, and I really wonder how one of them escaped. As our bugler was killed, I shouted and made signs to move by the left, in order to avoid the fire of our guns.

16. 'When I reached Lloyd's abandoned guns, I stood near them for a minute to contemplate the scene. It was grand beyond all description. Hougomont and its wood sent up a bright flame through the dark masses of

smoke that overhung the field ; beneath this cloud the French were indistinctly visible. Here a waving mass of long red feathers could be seen ; there, gleams as from a sheet of steel shewed that the cuirassiers were moving ; four hundred cannon were belching forth fire and death on every side ; the roaring and shouting were indistinguishably commixed—together they gave me an idea of a labouring volcano. 17. Bodies of infantry and cavalry were moving down upon us, so I moved towards our columns, which were standing up in square. Our regiment and the 73d formed one ; the 33d and 69th another ; to our right beyond them were the Guards, and on our left the Hanoverians and German Legion of our division. As I entered the rear face of our square I had to step over a body, and, looking down, I recognised Harry Beere, an officer of our grenadiers, who, about an hour before, had shaken hands with me, laughing, as I left the column. The tears started to my eyes as I sighed out "Poor Harry!" The tear was not dry upon my cheek when poor Harry was no longer thought of. 18. In a few minutes after, the enemy's cavalry galloped up and crowned the crest of our position. Our guns were abandoned, and they formed between the two brigades, about a hundred paces in our front. Their first charge was magnificent. As soon as they quickened their trot into a gallop, the cuirassiers bent their heads, so that the peaks of their helmets looked like visors, and they seemed cased in armour from the plume to the saddle. Not a shot was fired till they were within thirty yards, when the word was given, and our men opened suddenly upon them. The effect was magical. 19. Through the smoke we could see helmets falling, cavaliers starting from their seats with convulsive springs as they received our balls, horses plunging and

rearing in the agonies of fright and pain, and crowds of the troopers dismounted, part of the squadron in retreat, but the more daring backing their horses to force them on our bayonets. Our fire soon disposed of these gentlemen. The main body re-formed in our front, and rapidly and gallantly repeated their attacks. 20. In fact, from this time—from four till about six—we had a constant repetition of these brave but unavailing charges. There was no difficulty in repulsing them, but our ammunition decreased alarmingly. At length an artillery waggon galloped up, emptied two or three casks of cartridges into our square, and then we felt comfortable.

21. 'Though we constantly beat off our steel-clad opponents, we found more troublesome customers in the round shot and grape, which all this time played upon us with terrible effect, and fully avenged the cuirassiers. Often as the volleys created gaps in our squares would the cavalry dash on; but they were uniformly unsuccessful. A regiment of light dragoons came up to our left and charged the cuirassiers. We cheered each other as they passed us; they did all they could, but were obliged to retire after a few minutes at the sabre. A body of Belgian cavalry advanced for the same purpose, but, on passing our square, they stopped short. 22. Our noble Halkett rode out to them and offered to charge at their head; it was of no use; the Prince of Orange came up and exhorted them to do their duty, but in vain. They hesitated till a few shots whizzed through them, when they turned about and galloped like fury, or, rather, like fear. As they passed the right face of our square the men, irritated by their cowardly conduct, unanimously took up their pieces and fired a volley into them.



23. 'The enemy's cavalry were by this time nearly disposed of; and, as they had discovered the inutility of their charges, they commenced annoying us by a spirited and well-directed carbine fire. While we were employed in this manner, it was impossible to see farther than the columns on our right and left, but I imagine most of the army were similarly situated. All the British and Germans were doing their duty. 24. About six o'clock, I perceived some artillery trotting up our hill, which I knew by their caps to belong to the Imperial Guard. I had hardly mentioned this to a brother officer when two guns unlimbered within seventy paces of us, and, by their first discharge of grape, blew seven men into the centre of our square.' Our men immediately reloaded, and kept up a constant and destructive fire. 25. It was noble to see our fellows fill up the gap after every discharge. I was much distressed at this moment; having ordered up three of my company, they had hardly taken their station when two of them fell horribly lacerated. One of them looked up in my face and uttered a sort of reproachful groan, and I involuntarily exclaimed, "I couldn't help it." We would willingly have charged these guns, but, had we deployed, the cavalry that flanked them would have made short work of us.'

26. 'The glow which fires one on entering into action had ceased; it was now to be seen which side had most real mettle and steadiness, and would stand killing longest. The Duke visited us frequently at this momentous period; he was coolness personified. As he crossed the rear face of our square, a shell fell amongst our grenadiers, and he checked his horse to see its effect. Some men were blown to pieces by the explosion, and he merely stirred the rein of his charger, apparently as

little concerned at their fate as at his own danger. 27. No leader ever possessed so fully the confidence of his men; wherever he appeared, a murmur of "Silence—stand to your front—here's the Duke," was heard through the column, and then all was steady as on parade. His aides-de-camp, Colonels Canning and Gordon, fell near our square, and the former died within it. As he came near us late in the evening, Halkett rode out to him and represented our weak state, begging his Grace to afford us a little support. "It's impossible, Halkett," said he. Our general replied, "If so, sir, you may depend on the brigade to a man."

*From CREASY'S 'Decisive Battles of the World' (adapted).*

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases and sentences: (1) We can identify ourselves with an individual. (2) The operation to which he refers took place at three o'clock. (3) I expressed a wish to be removed to the rear. (4) Some of our battalions had surrendered. (5) I was indebted to his generosity for my life. (6) They excited terrible apprehensions. (7) He and his company were thrown forward as skirmishers. (8) They were reinforced by numerous bodies. (9) The volleys created gaps in our squares. (10) He merely stirred the rein of his charger.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: In the struggle I was almost instantly disabled in both arms.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Give the verbs or adjectives connected with the following nouns: *Description; misery; attention; progress; circumstance; distance; recognition; discovery; confidence; steadiness.*

5. Note carefully the endings of the following words:

|            |            |            |
|------------|------------|------------|
| Fragrance  | Preference | Recompense |
| Grievance  | Prudence   | Condense   |
| Nuisance   | Eminence   | Suspense   |
| Appearance | Eloquence  | Immense    |
| Temperance | Evidence   | Expense    |



Arctic Costumes.

### A WINTER DAY IN THE ARCTIC REGIONS.

**Aperture**, opening.

**Ventilator**, a contrivance for letting out bad air and letting in fresh (from the Latin *ventus*, the wind).

**Floe**, piece of floating ice.

**Appreciate**, value.

**Monotony**, tiresome sameness.

**Voluntary**, acting from one's own free will.



REGIONS.

ing ice.

the sameness.  
from one's own

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>Temperament</b>, disposition, nature.</p> <p><b>Despatch</b>, message.</p> <p><b>Facetious</b>, funny, witty.</p> <p><b>Dulcinea</b>, a sweetheart.</p> <p><b>Unaccountable</b>, not to be explained.</p> | <p><b>Hummock</b>, little irregular-shaped hill.</p> <p><b>View-haloo</b>, cry to encourage the hounds when a fox breaks away.</p> <p><b>Inevitable</b>, not to be escaped.</p> <p><b>Temperature</b>, degree of heat or cold.</p> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Incredible**, not to be believed.

1. Fancy the lower deck and cabins of a ship, lighted entirely by candles and oil-lamps; every aperture by which external air could enter, unless under control, carefully secured, and all doors doubled to prevent draughts. It is breakfast-time, and reeking hot cocoa from every mess-table is sending up a dense vapour, which, in addition to the breath of so many souls, fills the space between decks with mist and fog. Should you go on deck (and remember you go from 50° above zero\* to 40° below it in a few steps), a column of smoke will be seen rising through certain apertures called ventilators, whilst others are supplying a current of pure air.
2. Breakfast done—and, from the jokes and merriment, it has been a good one—there is a general pulling on of warm clothing, and the greater part of the officers and men go on deck. A few remain to clean and clear up, arrange for the dinner, and remove any damp or ice that may have formed in holes or corners during the sleeping hours.
3. This done, a muster of all hands, called 'divisions,' takes place. Officers inspect the men and every part of the ship, to see that both are clean, and then they disperse to their several duties, which at this severe season are very light—indeed, confined mainly to supplying the cook with snow to melt for water, keeping the fire-hole in the

\* Zero is 32° below the freezing-point of water; 40° below zero is therefore equivalent to 72° below freezing-point.

floe open,\* and sweeping the decks. Knots of two or three would, if there was not a strong gale blowing, be seen taking exercise at a distance from the vessels; and others, strolling under the lee, discuss the past and prophesy as to the future. 4. At noon, soups, preserved meats, or salt horse, form the seamen's dinner, with the addition of preserved potatoes, a treat which the gallant fellows duly appreciate. The officers dine somewhat later—2 P.M. A little afternoon exercise is then taken, and the evening meal, of tea, comes next. If it is school-night, the voluntary pupils go to their tasks, the masters to their posts; reading-men produce their books, writing-men their desks, artists paint by candle-light; and cards, chess, or draughts, combined with conversation and an evening's glass of grog, and a cigar or pipe, serve to bring round bed-time again.

5. Monotony was our enemy, and to kill time our endeavour. Hardship there was none, for all we underwent in winter quarters in the shape of cold, hunger, or danger was voluntary. Monotony, I again repeat, was the only disagreeable part of our wintering at Griffith's Island. Some men amongst us seemed in their temperament to be much better able to endure this monotony than others; and others who had no source of amusement—such as reading, writing, or drawing—were much to be pitied. Nothing struck one more than the strong tendency to talk of home and England: it became quite a disease. We, for the most part, spoke as if all the most affectionate husbands, dutiful sons, and attached brothers had found their way into the Arctic Expeditions.

6. We carried out, more I believe from amusement

\* A well is dug in the ice, a short distance from the ship, to provide a constant supply of water, in case of fire breaking out on board.

than from any idea of being useful, a plan which had suggested itself to the people of Sir James Ross's expedition when wintering in Leopold Harbour of 1848-49, that of inclosing information in collars secured to the necks of the Arctic foxes, caught in traps, and then liberated. Several animals thus intrusted with despatches or records were liberated by different ships; but, as the truth must be told, I fear in many cases the next night saw the poor 'postman,' as Jack facetiously termed him, in another trap, out of which he would be taken and killed, his skin taken off, and packed away to ornament at some future day the neck of some fair Duleinea. 7. As a 'Sub,' I was admitted into this secret, or otherwise I with others might have accounted for the disappearance of the collared foxes by believing them busy on their honourable mission. In order that the crime of killing 'the postman' may be recognised in its true light, it is but fair that I should say that the brutes, having partaken once of the good cheer on board or around the ships, seldom seemed satisfied with the mere empty honours of a copper collar, and returned to be caught over and over again. 8. Strict laws were laid down for their safety, such as an edict that no fox taken alive in a trap was to be killed: of course no fox was after this taken alive; they were all unaccountably dead, unless it was some fortunate wight whose brush and coat were worthless: in such case he lived either to drag about a quantity of information in a copper collar for the rest of his days, or else to die a slow death.

9. The departure of a 'postman' was a scene of no small merriment. All hands, from the captain to the cook, were out to chase the fox, who, half frightened out of its wits, seemed to doubt which way to run;

whilst loud shouts and roars of laughter, breaking the cold, frosty air, were heard from ship to ship, as the fox-hunters swelled in numbers from all sides, and those that could not run mounted some neighbouring hummock of ice, and gave a view-halloo, which said far more for robust health than for tuneful melody.

10. During the darker part of the winter, and when the uncertainty of the weather was such that, from a perfect calm and clear weather, a few hours would change the scene to a howling tempest and thick drift, in which, if one had been caught, death must inevitably have followed, great care was necessary, in taking our walks, to prevent being so overtaken; but, nevertheless, walks of seven or eight miles from the vessels were on several occasions performed, and a severe temperature faced and mastered with perfect indifference. 11. I remember well, on January 13, seeing mercury in a solid mass,\* with a temperature of 40° below zero, and being one of a good many who had taken three hours' hard walking for mere pleasure.

We joked not a little at the fireside stories at home of bitter cold nights, and being frozen to death on some English heath: it seemed to us so incredible that people should be frost-bitten because the air was below freezing-point, whilst we should have hailed with delight the thermometer standing at zero, and indeed looked forward to such a state of our climate as people in the temperate zone would to May sunshine and flowers.

*Osborn.*

COMPOSITION.—Write an imaginary account of an Arctic Expedition from the following heads: 1. Object of the expedition. 2. The time of the year we started, and how the ship was

\* Mercury freezes at 39° below zero.

provisioned. 3. The route : what ocean crossed ; what countries, provinces, straits, bays, and headlands passed. 4. Proposed destination. 5. Account of the Esquimaux. 6. Icebergs, seals, walruses, whales. 7. White bear shot. 8. How we passed the long winter days.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases : (1) A dense vapour. (2) A muster of all hands. (3) Knots of two or three. (4) Under the lee. (5) To kill time. (6) Monotony was our enemy.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence : The object of the Arctic expeditions is to discover a passage from Behring's Straits to Baffin's Bay.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Give the verbs or adjectives with which the following nouns are connected : *Expedition; information; secret; mission; crime; honour; law; number; melody; pleasure; tempest; occasion.*

5. Make sentences in which each of the first six of these words shall be used.

### THE LCST EXPEDITION WITH FRANKLIN.

(Verse printed as prose.)

Dirge, funeral chant.

Surges, high waves or billows.

Fraught, laden. (The word is connected with *freight*.)

Amethyst, a precious stone of a deep violet colour.

Stupendous, enormously high.

Beryl, a precious stone of a greenish colour.

Shrines, enrols them in her shrine; from Lat. *scrinium*, place to put writings in.

Lift—lift, ye mists, from off the silent coast, folded in endless winter's chill embraces; unshroud for us awhile our brave ones lost! let us behold their faces! In vain—the North has hid them from our sight; the snow their winding-sheet —their only dirges the groan of icebergs in the polar night, racked by the savage surges. No funeral torches, with a smoky



glare, shone a farewell upon their shrouded faces; no monumental pillar, tall and fair, towers o'er their resting-places. But northern streamers flare the long night through over the cliffs stupendous, fraught with peril of icebergs, tinted with a ghostly hue of amethyst and beryl. No human tears upon their graves are shed—tears of domestic love or pity holy; but snowflakes from the gloomy sky o'erhead, down shuddering, settle slowly. Yet history shrines them with her mighty dead, the hero seamen of this isle of Britain; and, when the brighter scroll of *Heaven* is read, there will their names be written.

*Hood.*

## GREAT CITIES.

### VIENNA.

- Conglomerate**, composed of different elements gathered into one (ball). From Lat. *con*, together, and *glomus* (*glomeris*), a ball. Cognate: *Conglomeration*.
- Tortuous**, twisted. From Lat. *torqueo* (*tort-um*), I twist. Cognates: *Torment*; *torture*.
- Core**, heart. From Lat. *cor* (*cordis*), the heart. Cognates: *Cordial*, *cordiality*.
- Glacis**, gentle slope. From O. Fr. *glacier*, to slide; from Lat. *glacies*, ice. Cognates: *Glacier*, *glacial*.
- Mussulman**, another name for *Mohammedan*. (It is from an Arabic word *Moslem*, submissive, with a Persian suffix,
- an*. Of course, the final syllable has nothing to do with our word *man*.)
- Intervention**, interference or coming between. From Lat. *inter*, between, and *venio* (*vent-um*), I come. Cognates: *Convene*, *convention*; *subvention* (= assistance).
- Converging**, drawing together to one point. From Lat. *con*, together, and *vergo*, I incline. Cognates: *Convergent*, *convergence*.
- Prevalent**, most frequent. From Lat. *præ*, in comparison with, and *valeo*, I am strong. Cognates: *Prevail*, *prevalence*.
- Promenade**, place for walking.

led faces; no  
er their rest-  
are the long  
fraught with  
hue of ame-  
their graves  
ty holy; but  
, down shud-  
nes them with  
this isle of  
of *Heaven* is

*Hood.*

course, the final  
nothing to do  
(and man.)  
ference or com-  
n. From Lat.  
en, and *venio*  
come. Cognates:  
*vention*; *subven-*  
*ance*).  
ving together to  
From Lat. *con-*  
*vergo*, I incline.  
*Convergent*, *con-*  
frequent. From  
comparison with,  
I am strong.  
*Prevail*, *prevail-*  
e for walking.

From Fr. (*se*) *promener*, to  
walk; from Lat. *promino*, I  
lead forth.

Primeval, original, or of early  
times. From Lat. *primum*,  
first, and *cærum*, an age.  
Cognate: *Coeval* (of the same  
age).

Pilaster, a square pillar or column  
set within a wall. From Fr.  
*pilastre*; from Low Lat. *pil-*  
*astrum*, a pillar.

Niche, a recess in a wall for a  
statue. From It. *nicchia*, a  
shell-like recess, *nicchio*, a  
shell; from Lat. *mytilus*,  
a sea-mussel.

Clientèle, a number of clients.  
From Lat. *cliens*, a dependent  
on a *patrōnus*, or patron.

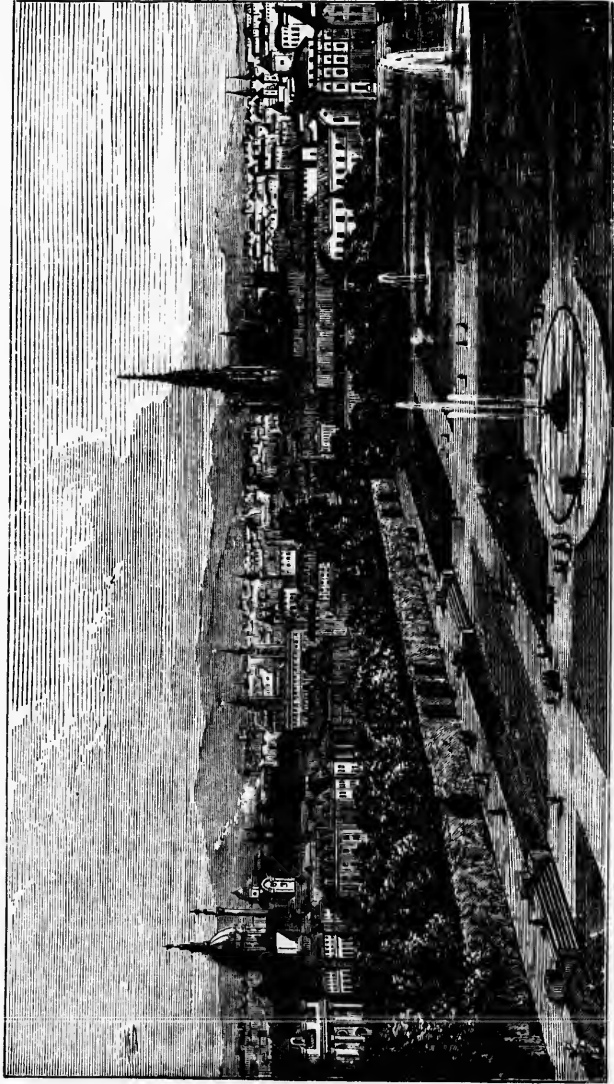
**Polytechnic**, relating to many arts.  
From Gr. *polys*, many, and  
*technē*, an art. Cognates:  
*Technical*, *technicality*.

**Congress**, a conference or meeting  
for discussing important state  
business. From Lat. *con-*  
together, and *gradior* (*gress-*  
*us*), I walk. Cognates: *Ag-*  
*gressive*, *aggression*; *digress*,  
*digression*.

**Epochal**, making an epoch, or  
remarkable point of time.  
From Gr. *epōchē*, a stop.

**Banned**, kept out by *proclama-*  
*tion*. From O. Ger. *ban*, a pro-  
clamation. Cognates: *Ban-*  
*banns* (of marriage); *abandon*  
(from O. Fr. *bandon*), a com-  
mand.

1. VIENNA is the capital of that conglomerate of king-  
doms, duchies, grand-duchies, and other states which  
goes by the name of the Austrian Empire. More lately,  
it is known as Austria-Hungary; for the Hungarians  
compelled the Austrian government to grant them  
independence, and the Emperor of Austria was obliged  
to go to Pesth, and to be crowned there in the national  
fashion as King of Hungary. The city stands on a  
plain, which is surrounded by gently-sloping hills. It  
is called by the inhabitants, who are Germans, *Wien*  
(*Veen*), from a dirty little brook which flows through it  
into an arm of the mighty Danube. 2. Vienna consists  
of two parts—the Old City and the New City. The  
Old City, or Inner Town, consists of narrow, tortuous,  
but well-paved streets and high houses, and it is the  
very core of the whole. The Outer Town contains  
thirty-six suburbs, which have been built in quite  
modern times. Between the Old Town and the suburbs



Vienna.

runs a ring of open land, varying in width, covered with grass, laid out in walks and avenues, and planted with acacia and chestnut trees. This space was formerly filled by the glacis of the fortifications, which were demolished in the year 1857. 3. The suburbs which now exist are very much larger and much better built than the old suburbs. These were destroyed by the Turks at the last siege of Vienna, in 1683. At that time, there is no doubt but that Vienna would have fallen into the hands of the great Mussulman power, had it not been rescued by the courageous intervention of John Sobieski, king of Poland. In 1529, too, Vienna was besieged by the Turks, when the great Sultan, Soliman the Magnificent, delivered no fewer than twenty assaults. He was beaten back every time, and was at length compelled to retreat, after losing forty thousand men under the walls.

4. The streets of Vienna are broad and straight and sunny in the suburbs. They have one peculiarity which no other town in Europe possesses, with the exception of Carlsruhe, the capital of the grand-duchy of Baden. All of them run to a point in the centre of the city—a point occupied by the magnificent cathedral, dedicated to St Stephen—like the spokes of a large wheel, or the converging threads of an enormous spider's web. 5. The Old Town is the most fashionable part; and in this respect Vienna differs from London, Paris, and other large towns. The tendency is for the wealthy classes in our great cities to move farther and farther towards the west; and the chief increase to London and Paris during the last hundred years has been made in that direction. Thus more fresh air is obtained, because in Europe the prevalent wind is the west wind, which blows on an average two days out of every three;



Vienna.

and in many instances the most beautiful parts of the country lie to the west of the great towns of Europe. But in Vienna the Old Town is not only the centre of business and pleasure, but it is the place where the palaces of the Emperor and the Imperial family, the government offices, and the splendid mansions of the old nobility, are found.

6. The city is full of fine buildings and noble monuments. Conspicuous among them is the cathedral of St Stephen, the patron saint of Vienna. It is one of the finest specimens of Gothic architecture in Germany. It is built in the form of a Latin cross, and its tower rises to the height of four hundred and sixty-five feet—that is, more than sixty feet higher than the spire of Salisbury Cathedral, which is the loftiest in the British Isles. 7. The favourite promenade of the inhabitants, who are eager lovers of pleasure and gaiety, is the Prater, a beautiful park, on several islands, which are formed by the arms of the river Danube. This park is part of the primeval forest which at one time occupied the site of Vienna; and here and there are splendid aged trees, towering over thickets and bowers so peaceful and silent, that a rambler might fancy himself hundreds of miles away from the abodes of men, instead of being in the heart of a great city.

8. The character of the architecture of Vienna is that of 'sober and solid stateliness, without gloom.' The modern houses are French in style; and most of them are noble and lofty, with bay-windows, ornamented friezes and pilasters, and statues in the niches. But though a beautiful, it is far from being a healthy town. While the death-rate of London is about twenty-two per thousand every year, that of Vienna is more than double; it averages about forty-nine per thousand. 9. Vienna

contains a splendid university, which was founded as early as 1365. It has a clientèle of about three thousand students, and one hundred and thirty professors. In addition to the university, the city also boasts an excellent polytechnic school, which is attended by more than a thousand students, who are taught by forty-five professors and lecturers. Not only are the applied sciences thoroughly taught in that school, but the laws and data of commerce, and the scientific principles on which each great industry is based, are carefully studied.

10. Vienna was twice occupied by the French, in 1805 and in 1809. But with the gradual decrease in the power of Napoleon, and the increase in the power of the allies, it was not long before the tables were turned. The allied powers of Europe met at a congress in the end of the year 1814, and continued to sit till after the battle of Waterloo, on the 18th of June 1815. Even before that epochal event, on the 13th of March 1815, they issued a proclamation to Europe, declaring Napoleon Bonaparte an outlaw—a man banned from the privileges and the protection of the laws both of war and of peace.

11. The situation of Vienna is admirably suited for commerce. Standing on the Danube—the great highway between the east and the west of Europe—it exchanges the goods of the one for the goods of the other. The Danube connects Western Germany with the Black Sea, with Constantinople, and with Asia. Vienna also stands at the centre of a large and much-frequented network of railways, which connect it both with the hard-working north-west and with the fertile south-east of the continent of Europe.

- EXERCISES.—1. Write a SUMMARY of sections 4 to 7 inclusive.  
 2. Write a short paper on 'Vienna' from your own summary.  
 3. Explain the following sentences and phrases, and give

synonyms for the single words: (1) Narrow, tortuous streets. (2) The space was formerly filled by the glacis of fortifications. (3) Courageous intervention. (4) Converging threads. (5) The tendency is for the wealthy classes to move west. (6) The prevalent wind. (7) Mansions. (8) Conspicuous. (9) Promenade. (10) This park is part of the primeval forest. (11) Pilasters. (12) Clientèle. (13) The allied powers met at a congress. (14) That epochal event. (15) Banned from the protection of the laws.

4. Parse the words in the following sentence: 'A rambler might fancy himself hundreds of miles away from the abodes of men, instead of being in the heart of a great city.'

5. Analyse the following sentence:

Dear as the wet diver to the eyes  
Of his pale wife, who waits and weeps on shore,  
By sandy Bahrein, in the Persian Gulf,  
Plunging all day in the blue waves, at night,  
Having made up his tale of precious pearls,  
Rejoins her in their hut upon the sands—  
So dear to the pale Persians Rustum came.

6. Give all the words you know connected with the following English words: *Other*<sup>1</sup>; *name*; *two*; *open*; *fill*<sup>2</sup>; *wide*; *fall*; *king*<sup>3</sup>; *back*; *lose*; *broad*.

7. Give all the derivatives you know from the following Latin words: *Pendeo*, I hang, compound with *de* and *in*; *habito*, I dwell (root *habit*, stem *habitat*); *struo*, I build (root *stru*, stem *struct*), compound with *con*, *de*, *in*, *ex*; *venio*, I come (root *ven*, stem *vent*), compound with *con*, *inter*, *sub*.

8. Make sentences containing the following pairs of words: *Waive* and *wave*; *ware* and *wear*; *Whig* and *wig*.

9. Make sentences containing the following phrases: *To take into consideration*; *to put to the proof*; *to grapple with a question*.

<sup>1</sup> *Or* (which is a contraction of *other*); *either*, *neither*.

<sup>2</sup> *Full*, *fol-k*.      <sup>3</sup> *Kin*, *kind*; *kinsman*, *kinsfolk*, etc.



## ONE BY ONE.

Elate, to excite, lift up.

1. One by one the sands are flowing,\*  
One by one the moments fall;  
Some are coming, some are going:  
Do not strive to catch them all.
2. One by one thy duties wait thee;  
Let thy whole strength go to each,  
Let no future dreams elate thee,  
Learn thou first what these can teach.
3. One by one, bright gifts from heaven,  
Joys are sent thee here below;  
Take them readily when given,  
Ready, too, to let them go.
4. One by one thy griefs shall meet thee;  
Do not fear an armed band:  
One will fade as others greet thee,  
Shadows passing through the land.

## DIRECTIONS AND CAUTIONS FOR READING.

VERSE 1.—Line 1: *One by one* should be given very slowly and distinctly. Line 3: Each *some* has a slight emphasis. Line 4: *All* is emphatic. VERSE 2.—Line 2: *Whole* has the weight of emphasis. Line 3: Avoid the verse-accent on *let*, and place the emphasis on *no* and *future*. Line 4: *First* and *these* are emphatic. VERSE 3.—Line 3: *Readily* has a slight emphasis. VERSE 4.—Line 3: *One* and *others* balance each other, and are emphatic. Line 4: *Shadows* (= mere shadows) carries the weight of emphasis.

\* In an hour-glass.



THE BATTLE OF HOHENLINDEN.<sup>1</sup>

**Sombre**, dark.

**Ravines**, deep, narrow rocky  
glens.

**Obliterated**, blotted out.

**Conflict**, fight.

**Carnage**, bloodshed.

**Incessant**, never ceasing or stop-  
ping.

**Combatants**, persons fighting.

**Inextricable**, not to be un-  
ravelled.

**Renovated**, renewed.

**Mutilated**, with limbs lopped off.

**Arrayed**, drawn up in order of  
battle.

**Revelry**, disorderly pleasure (said  
ironically).

**Canopy**, covering.

1. Between the rivers Isar<sup>2</sup> and Inn<sup>3</sup>—two of the southern tributaries of the Danube—there extends for many leagues an enormous forest of sombre firs and pines. It is a dreary and almost uninhabited wilderness of wild ravines and tangled underwood. Two great roads have been cut through the forest, and many woodmen's paths penetrate it at different points. In the centre there is a little hamlet of a few miserable huts, called Hohenlinden—a name which means *High Lime-trees*.

2. In this forest, on the night of the 3d of December 1800, Moreau,<sup>4</sup> with sixty thousand French soldiers, encountered the Archduke John with seventy thousand Austrian troops. The clocks upon the towers of Munich<sup>5</sup> had but just tolled the hour of midnight, when both armies were in motion, each hoping to surprise the other. A dismal wintry storm was howling through the tree-tops; and the smothering snow, falling rapidly, obliterated all traces of a path, and rendered it almost impossible to drag through the drifts the ponderous artillery. 3. Both parties in the dark, tempestuous night became entangled in the forest, and the heads of their columns met in various places. An awful scene of confusion, conflict,

and carnage then ensued. Imagination can hardly compass the horror of that spectacle. The dark midnight, the howlings of the wintry storm, the driving sheets of snow, the incessant roar of artillery and of musketry from a hundred and thirty thousand combatants, the lightning flashes of the guns, the crash of the falling trees as the heavy cannon-balls swept through the forest, the floundering of innumerable horsemen bewildered in the pathless snow, the shouts of onset, and the shriek of death—all combined to present a scene the like of which this world has probably seldom presented.

4. The darkness of the black forest was so intense, and the snow fell in flakes so thick and fast and blinding, that the combatants could with difficulty see each other. They often, indeed, fired at the flashes gleaming through the gloom. At times hostile divisions became intermingled in inextricable confusion; and, hand to hand, bayonet crossing bayonet, and sword clashing against sword, they fought with the ferocity of demons. 5. As the advancing and retreating hosts wavered to and fro, the wounded, by thousands, were left to perish on the hill-sides and in dark ravines, with the drifting snow crimsoned with blood for their only covering!

At last the morning dawned through the unbroken clouds, and the battle raged with renovated fury. Nearly twenty thousand of the mutilated bodies of the dead and wounded were left upon the field, with gory locks frozen to their icy pillows, and covered with mounds of snow.

6. At the close of the battle the French were victorious at every point. The Austrians fled in dismay, having lost twenty thousand men in killed, wounded, and prisoners, one hundred pieces of artillery, and an immense number of waggons.

This terrific combat was witnessed by the poet Campbell from the summit of the tower of a neighbouring monastery, and has been immortalised in his noble verses, which are now familiar wherever the English language is known.

7. On Linden, when the sun was low,  
All bloodless lay the untrodden snow;  
And dark as winter was the flow  
Of Iser, rolling rapidly.

But Linden saw another sight,  
When the drum beat at dead of night,  
Commanding fires of death to light  
The darkness of her scenery.

8. By torch and trumpet fast arrayed,  
Each horseman drew his battle-blade;  
And furious every charger neighed  
To join the dreadful revelry.

Then shook the hills, with thunder riven;  
Then rushed the steed to battle driven;  
And, volleying like the bolts of heaven,  
Far flashed the red artillery.

9. But redder still these fires shall glow  
On Linden's hills of purpled snow;  
And bloodier still shall be the flow  
Of Iser, rolling rapidly.

'Tis morn; but scarce yon level sun  
Can pierce the war-cloud rolling dun,  
Where furious Frank and fiery Hun<sup>o</sup>  
Shout 'mid their sulphurous canopy.

10. The combat deepens : on, ye brave,  
 Who rush to glory, or the grave !  
 Wave, Munich ! all thy banners wave !  
 And charge with all thy chivalry !

Few, few shall part where many meet :  
 The snow shall be their winding-sheet,  
 And every turf beneath their feet  
 Shall be a soldier's sepulchre !

## NOTES.

1. **Hohenlinden**, a small village in Upper Bavaria, between the Isar and the Inn. The word means *tall lindens* or *lime-trees*.
2. **Isar**, or **Iser**, is a river which rises near the Tyrol, and falls into the Danube after a course of 180 miles. München, or Munich, the capital of Bavaria, stands on its banks.
3. **Inn** is the largest tributary of the Danube. It is, in fact, larger than the Danube itself before they meet. It rises in the Swiss Alps, and has a course of 285 miles. **Innsbrück** (which means *Innsbridge*), the capital of the Tyrol, stands on its banks.
4. **Moreau** was the greatest general of the French Republic, with the exception of Bonaparte. He was born in 1763, and died in 1813.
5. **Munich** is the capital of Bavaria. It stands on the high Alpine plateau which slopes gradually to the north, at the height of 1700 feet above the level of the sea. It is a beautiful town, filled with all kinds of pictures (both under cover and in the open air), statues, fine buildings, and other objects of art.
6. **Frank** and **Hun**, poetical names for French and Austrians.

COMPOSITION.—Write a short account of THE BATTLE OF HOHENLINDEN from the following heads : 1. The French and Austrians meet on the 3d of December 1800 near Hohenlinden. 2. A dense forest. 3. A storm of snow. 4. Fighting in the dark. 5. What the sun sees in the morning. 6. Defeat of the Austrians.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) There extends an enormous forest. (2) Two great roads penetrate it. (3) The snow had obliterated all traces of a path. (4) An awful scene of carnage ensued. (5) The darkness was intense. (6) The battle raged with renovated fury. (7) The drum commanded fires of death to light the darkness. (8) The red artillery volleyed like the bolts of heaven. (9) The two armies shouted amid their sulphurous canopy.

2. Parse the words in the following sentence: At the close of the battle the French were victorious at every point.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Give all the derivatives and compounds you know of the following words: *Habit; long; move; hope; winter; fall; draw.*

5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Wilderness; impossibility; imagination; combatants; combination; probability.*

6. Make sentences in which each of these words is used.

7. Write in columns, with their meanings, all the words which relate to a *forest* and *artillery* (see Exercise 9, page 21).

## HEROISM AND DISCIPLINE.

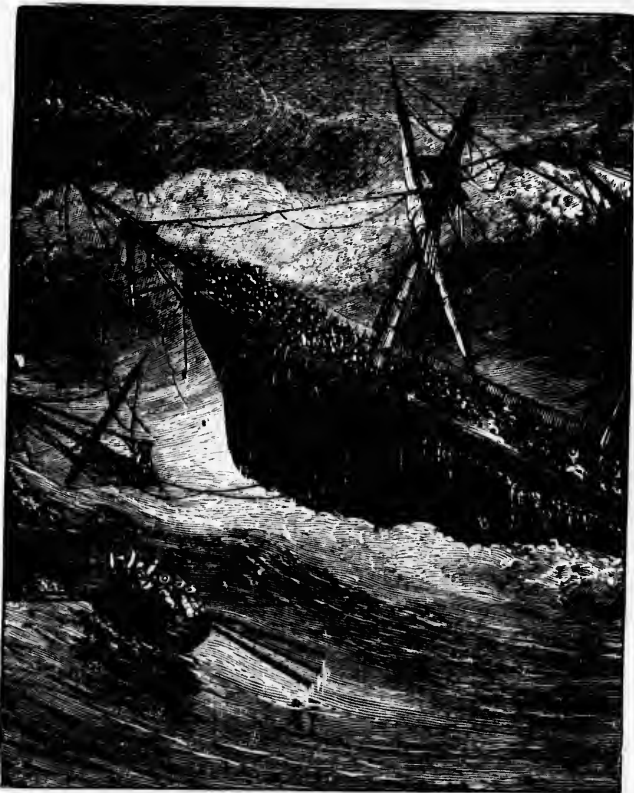
|                                                |                                                       |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Destination</b> , place they were going to. | <b>Clamouring</b> , calling and shouting impatiently. |
| <b>Veteran</b> , old and tried.                | <b>Flank</b> , side.                                  |
| <b>Mustered</b> , met together in rank.        |                                                       |

1. The *Birkenhead*, a large troop-ship, was steaming along the coast of Africa in the month of February 1852. She had about 500 troops, with women and children, on board; and her own crew numbered more than one hundred and thirty men. Her destination was Algoa Bay,<sup>1</sup> and the captain, who was eager to shorten the voyage, kept as near as he could to the shore.

2. In the dead of the night the vessel struck on a

reef of sunken rocks, and in a few minutes it was plain that no power could save her. A wild shriek was heard from the women's quarters. But Colonel Seton, of the 74th Highlanders, who was in command, called his officers around him, impressed upon them the necessity of keeping perfect order and complete silence among the men, and ordered the drum to beat to arms. 3. The soldiers mustered on the upper deck, fell into their ranks, and stood in silence, patiently awaiting the commands of their officers. Sixty men were told off for the pumps; the horses were thrown overboard; the boats were lowered, and the women and children were directed to enter them. There was neither hurry nor panic. Every one carried out his orders swiftly and firmly; and now not a murmur nor a cry was heard. The soldiers were as steady as if they were on parade. 4. When the cutter, full of women and children, had put off, the ship broke in two, and the stern began to sink. At this moment the captain of the vessel shouted, 'All who can swim, jump overboard and make for the boats.' But Colonel Seton and the other officers ordered the men to keep in their ranks; and the men thought of nothing but obedience. Officers and men together stood, shoulder to shoulder, looking death in the face with steady calmness, that they might give a chance of escape to the women and children. Young soldiers, who had only been a few weeks in the service, were as patient and as brave as their veteran comrades. 5. The ship was slowly sinking; and in a few moments these brave soldiers were washed into the sea, some sinking, some trying to swim ashore, and some clinging to any spars that were floating about. The boats picked up a few, but there was a danger of their being overloaded. The shore was only two miles off; but the boats could

not land, as the surf which beat upon it ran so high that even approach was dangerous. They rowed about till daylight, looking for a landing-place; and, when morning came, they were picked up by a schooner.



6. The ransomed passengers now directed the captain of the schooner to the wreck, on which he found about forty men clinging to the upper parts of the masts, half dead with cold and fatigue. Some of the men had

succeeded in swimming ashore; some were devoured by sharks; most of them were drowned; and, of all the souls who had embarked in the ship, only 192 were saved. But the men who went down have left behind them, for the benefit of all their countrymen, an example of calm courage and self-sacrifice—even to death—more worthy of reverence and admiration than the brilliant bravery which is shewn upon a battle-field.

7. Sir Francis Hastings Doyle, himself a brave soldier, and who was also at one time Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, has written the following verses on the subject. We have to imagine that a survivor is speaking:

Right on our flank the crimson sun went down,  
The deep sea rolled around in dark repose,  
When, like the wild shriek from some captured town,  
A cry of women rose.

8. The stout ship *Birkenhead* lay hard and fast,  
Caught, without hope, upon a hidden rock;  
Her timbers thrilled as neryes, when through them  
passed

The spirit of that shock.

And ever, like base cowards who leave their ranks  
In danger's hour, before the rush of steel,  
Drifted away, disorderly, the planks,  
From underneath her keel.

9. Confusion spread; for, though the coast seemed  
near,

Sharks hovered thick along that white sea-brink.  
The boats could hold—not all—and it was clear  
She was about to sink.

t ran so high  
y rowed about  
e; and, when  
y a schooner.



the captain of  
found about  
the masts, half  
the men had



‘Out with those boats, and let us haste away,’  
 Cried one, ‘ere yet yon sea the bark devours.’  
 The man thus clamouring was, I scarce need say,  
 No officer of ours.

10. We knew our duty better than to care  
 For such loose babblers, and made no reply,  
 Till our good colonel gave the word, and there  
 Formed us in line—to die.

There rose no murmur from the ranks, no thought  
 By shameful strength unhonoured life to seek;  
 Our post to quit we were not trained, nor taught  
 To trample down the weak.

11. So we made women with their children go.  
 The oars ply back again, and yet again;  
 Whilst, inch by inch, the drowning ship sank low,  
 Still under steadfast men.

What followed why recal? The brave who died,  
 Died without flinching in the bloody surf;  
 They sleep as well beneath that purple tide  
 As others under turf.

The Queen ordered a monument to be erected in Greenwich Hospital, in memory of the ‘heroic constancy and unbroken discipline’ of those men who died as truly for their country as if they had died fighting for it in the field of battle.

NOTE.

1. **Algoa Bay.**—An extensive inlet in the east of Cape Colony, in South Africa. On one part of it stands the rising town of Port Elizabeth.

DIRECTIONS FOR READING THE POETRY.

1. Do not say, ‘Right *on* our flank;’ but, ‘Right *on-our-flank.*’

2. Avoid the accent upon *of*; and say, 'The spirit of *that* shock.'
3. Do not say, 'She *was* about to sink;' but, 'She-*was*-about to sink.'
4. Say, 'Out with-*those-boats*,' and avoid accent upon *with*.
5. Avoid the verse-accent upon *than* and *such*, and say,

We knew our duty *better* than-to-care  
For such *loose* babblers.

6. Put a weighty and quiet emphasis upon *no* in the line,  
There rose *no* murmur from-the-ranks.

7. Avoid the verse-accent upon *were*, and say,

Our post to quit we were *not* trained.

COMPOSITION.—Write a short paper on THE LOSS OF THE BIRKENHEAD from the following outline: 1. A troop-ship, with 630 souls on board, is sailing to Algoa Bay. 2. She strikes on a hidden rock. 3. The colonel orders the men to fall in. 4. The women and children are placed in the boats. 5. The ship breaks in two. 6. Only 192 in all are saved.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Her destination was Algoa Bay. (2) They were as steady as if they were on parade. (3) The young soldiers were as patient as their veteran comrades. (4) The ransomed passengers directed the captain of the schooner to the wreck. (5) Right on our flank the crimson sun went down. (6) Her timbers thrilled as nerves. (7) There was in us no thought by shameful strength unhonoured life to seek. (8) The men shewed heroic constancy and unbroken discipline.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: In the dead of the night the vessel struck on a reef of sunken rocks. (*Dead* is an adjective, marking the noun *time* understood.)

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections words that may be used either as nouns or as verbs, like *steam*, *coast*, *keep*, &c

5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Destination*; *impression*; *patience*; *obedience*; *service*; *success*; *constancy*; *confusion*.

6. Make sentences in which each of the first four shall be used.

## THE RABBI AND HIS CHILDREN.

|                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rabbi, the Jewish name for a<br>Teacher or Professor of the<br>Hebrew Law.<br><b>Lack</b> , be without. | Preventing, anticipating what he<br>might be going to say.<br><b>In fee</b> , in possession.<br><b>Part</b> , course. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Anew**, once more.

1. Rabbi Meir, the great teacher, sat on the Sabbath day in the School of the Law, and taught the people. During the day both his sons died, already young men, full-grown, and well instructed in the law. His wife took them and bore them to an upper chamber, laid them on her bed, and spread a white sheet over their bodies. 2. In the evening Rabbi Meir came home. 'Where are my sons,' asked he, 'that I may give them my blessing?' 'They are gone into the School of the Law,' was her reply. 'I looked round me,' replied he, 'and I did not see them.' She set before him a cup; he praised the Lord for the close of the Sabbath, drank, and then asked again, 'Where are my sons, that they also may drink of the wine of blessing?' 'They cannot be far off,' said she, and set before him to eat. 3. When he had given thanks after the meal, she said: 'Rabbi, allow me a question.' 'Say on,' he answered. 'Some time ago,' said she, 'one gave me jewels to keep for him, and now he asks them back again. Shall I give him them?' 'My wife should not need to ask such a question,' said Rabbi Meir. 'Would you hesitate to give any one back his own?' 'Oh, no,' replied she; 'but I did not like to give them back without your knowing beforehand.' 4. Soon after, she led him to the upper chamber, stepped in, and took the covering off the bodies. 'Oh, my sons,' sobbed the father, 'my sons!' She turned herself away and wept.

At last she took him by the hand and said: 'Rabbi, have you not taught me that we must not refuse to give back what was intrusted to us to keep? See, the Lord gave, and the Lord hath taken away—the name of the Lord be blessed.' And Rabbi Meir repeated the words, and said, from the deepest depths of his heart, 'Amen.'

## THE MOTHER'S JEWELS.

(This is a version of the same story, by Dr Trench, the Archbishop of Dublin.)

5. In schools of wisdom all the day was spent;  
His steps at eve the rabbi homeward bent,  
With homeward thoughts which dwelt upon the  
    wife  
And two fair children who adorned his life.  
She, meeting at the threshold, led him in,           5  
And with these words preventing, did begin:  
'Ever rejoicing at your wished return,  
Yet do I most so now, for since the morn  
I have been much perplexed and sorely tried  
Upon one point which *you* shall now decide.   10
6. 'Some years ago, a friend into my care  
Some jewels gave—rich, precious gems they were;  
And, having placed them in my charge, this  
    friend  
Did after neither come for them nor send;  
But left them in my keeping for so long,           15  
That now it almost seems to me a wrong  
That he should suddenly arrive to-day  
And take the jewels that he left away.  
What think you? Shall I freely yield them back,  
And with no murmuring?—so henceforth to lack

Those gems myself, which I had learned to see  
Almost as mine for ever—mine in fee.'

7. 'What question *can* be here? Your own true  
heart

Must needs advise you of the *only* part;  
That may be claimed again which was but lent,  
And should be yielded with no discontent,  
Nor, surely, can we find herein a wrong,  
'That it was left us to enjoy so long.'

8. 'Good is the word!' she answered; 'may we now,  
And evermore, that it is good allow!'  
And, rising, to an inner chamber led:  
And there she shewed him, stretched upon one  
bed,

Two children pale—and he the jewels knew  
Which God had lent him, and resumed anew.

R. C. Trench.

#### DIRECTIONS FOR READING.

The poem should be read with great slowness and solemnity. The questions should be put and the answers given with a quiet and reasoning gravity. In line 3, avoid the verse-accent on *upon*, and run *upon-the-wife* into the next line. In line 6, take care not to place the accent upon *with*, but make a pause after *and*, and run on *with-these-words*. In line 9, avoid the verse-accent upon *have*, and hasten on to *much*. In line 10, there should be a quiet emphasis on *one*. In line 18, make a pause after *jewels*, and make *that-he-left* into one word. In line 20, take care not to put an accent upon *with*; it should be slurred over, and the emphasis placed upon *no*. In line 25, the emphatic words *that* and *but* balance each other at each end of the line. In line 28, *That-it-was-left-us* should be regarded as one word. In line 32, avoid the accent on *upon*, and put a slight emphasis on *one*.

COMPOSITION.—Tell the story of THE LENT JEWELS from the following heads: 1. While a learned Rabbi was teaching in the *School of the Law*, his two sons died. 2. His wife meets him at the door, and asks him a question. 3. His reply. 4. She takes him up-stairs and shews him her jewels. 5. Her reflection. 6. His answer.

EXERCISES.—1. Explain the following phrases: (1) Allow me a question. (2) Would you hesitate to restore to any one his own? (3) I have been sorely tried upon one point which you must decide for me. (4) Your own heart must needs advise you of the only part. (5) God had resumed anew the jewels.

2. Parse all the words in the following sentence: Rabbi Meir, the great teacher, sat on the Sabbath day in the School of the Law.

3. Analyse the above sentence.

4. Select from the first three sections words which may be both nouns and verbs, like *school*, *people*, *look*, &c.

5. Give the verbs or adjectives from which the following nouns come: *Instruction*; *blessing*; *hesitation*; *thought*; *abode*; *trial*; *decision*; *allowance*; *resumption*.

6. Write out all the compounds of the following words you know: *Place*; *come*; *give*; *lead*; *turn*; *decide*; *charge*; *take*.

7. Give all the words which relate to *school* and *law*. (See Exercise 9, page 21.)



## A VOYAGE ROUND THE WORLD.

## PART. III.

- Saving**, thrifty, taking care of small things, economical.
- Diamond**, the most precious of 'precious stones,' and the hardest of all substances. (It is a doublet or bye-form—as is also the French *diamant*—of the word *adamant*, which comes from the Gr. *a*, not, and *damao*, I subdue. It hence means *the unsubduable*.)
- Stagnant**, standing, not flowing; from Lat. *stagnum*, a pond.
- Fertile**, bearing rich crops; from Lat. *fero*, I bear.
- Steppes**, the Russian name for a vast plain (*step*).
- Proclaimed**, publicly and formally announced as; from Lat. *pro*, forth, and *clamo*, I call.
- Frugal**, thrifty, saving, careful of small things; from Lat. *frux*, -*gis*, fruit.
- Voyage**, a journey by water; from Fr. *voyage*, from Lat. *via*, a way.
- Territory**, land in the possession of a government; from Lat. *terra*, land.
- Electric**, permeated or run through by electricity; from Gr. *electron*, amber, which was the earliest substance that shewed the chief phenomena of electricity.
- Compact**, brought closely together.
- Impregnable**, that cannot be taken.
- Engineering**, the art — based upon mathematics—of building bridges, making tunnels, canals, and railways; from Lat. *ingenium*, skill.
- Commercial**, used in commerce; from Lat. *commercium*, coming and going between two towns or nations; which itself comes from *con*, with, and *merx*, *mercis*, goods or merchandise.
- Profusion**, great plenty; from Lat. *profundo*, I pour out, *profusus*, poured out.
- Entrepot**, place — *between* two other places—where goods are landed or left for transport to another place. The place where they are finally landed is called the *depot*.
- Capital**, the head-town; from Lat. *caput*, the head.
- Enterprising**, given to great and courageous undertakings; from Fr. *entreprendre*, to undertake.
- Parliament**, the chambers for discussion, to which representatives of the nation are sent; from Fr. *parler*, to speak. Connected with this are *parlour* and *parole*.

1. North of Spain lies the rich country of 'sunny France'—a land of corn and wine and oil, the richest

and best cultivated land in Europe. It contains many large towns, and has an army of a million and a half soldiers. Paris, the capital, is one of the most beautiful cities in the world. The terrible defeat which France received from Germany in 1870 she has completely recovered from; and, her people being the most industrious and most saving people in the world, she is making rapid strides in prosperity every day. France is literally a land of corn and wine and oil. In the country north of a line drawn through Orleans, corn and beetroot (for sugar) are grown; in the country between this line and a second line drawn from Bordeaux to Lyons, wine is the chief product of value; and south of this line olive-trees, from which oil is obtained, flourish and abound. The poet wrote in the beginning of this century—in the time of Napoleon; but France is *now* a 'new-born France,' and seems destined to be a peaceful, as she is a hard-working, country.

France, I hurry from thy shore;  
Thou art not the France of yore;  
Prosperous days thou hast in store.

2. Holland — a flat country, defended from the German Ocean by long and high dykes, a land of canals and long rows of stiff poplars, of trim gardens full of tulips, of quiet sluggish rivers, of quaint old towns, of slow-mannered people, of ancient wealth earned from the spices of the far East, of trim barges—as 'clean as a new pin'—moored under the windows of the houses, of houses built on piles, so that it was said that the people of Amsterdam lived, 'like rooks, on the tops of trees,' of brave and hardy sailors, of diamond-merchants and diamond-cutters, of stagnant ditches and rapid windmills, of fertile meadows and fat cheeses—need not



detain us. 3. Denmark is a little, industrious country. In 1864 the power of Prussia took from her Schleswig-



Dutch Barges.

Holstein ; and she is now a small kingdom with less than two millions of souls.—Sweden—a country of pine forests and waterfalls, iron mines and busy seaports, can only be glanced at.—It would take long to describe Russia, with her vast forests in the north, her broad steppes in the south, her wide wheat-bearing plains, her salt lakes, her mines of iron, tin, silver, and gold in the Urals, and her vast rivers which, by the aid of canals, connect the White Sea with the Black, the Caspian with the Baltic.

Sweep by Holland like the blast ;  
 One quick glance at Denmark cast ;  
 Sweden, Russia—all is past.

us country.  
Schleswig-



m with less  
ntry of pine  
seaports, can  
to describe  
, her broad  
g plains, her  
gold in the  
d of canals,  
Caspian with

4. The central power of Germany stands like a square block in the heart of Europe—facing France on the west, Russia on the east, Austria on the south, and Sweden on the north. Since Bismarck came into power under the present Emperor of Germany, she has been growing more and more compact. She broke the power and influence of Austria in Germany in 1866; she humbled the power of France in 1870; and in 1871 William III., king of Prussia, was proclaimed Emperor of Germany in the great French palace of Versailles.

5. She can place in the field over a million and a half of men, and more than a quarter million of horses; and her military power stands unquestioned in Europe. But military power, like fire, is a good servant but a bad master; and the strength and prosperity of a nation depend on steady labour, frugal habits, and honest dealings. The poet warns the Germans against their philosophers, whom he calls 'schoolmen;' but the philosophers have done their country little harm: it is from their military zeal that the Germans have suffered most.

Elbe nor Weser tempt my stay:  
Germany, beware the day  
When thy schoolmen bear the sway.

6. Now we have only to cross the little German Ocean to be at home again—in England. Compared with many of the Continental countries, the ever-green turf of England is a constant refreshment to the eye. She is a land of gentle hills and fruitful valleys, of beautiful streams, of lovely gardens, of wide parks full of magnificent oaks and elms, of shady lanes and leafy nooks, of quiet villages, of country churches embosomed among trees, of pretty commons and neat cottages, of a law-loving and loyal people; and, above all, this land is HOME.

Now to thee, to thee I fly,  
Fairest isle beneath the sky,  
To my *heart* as in mine eye!  
I have seen them, one by one,  
Every shore beneath the sun,  
And my voyage now is done.  
While I bid them all be blest,  
Britain, thou'rt my home, my rest:  
My *own* land, I love *thee* best.



A Little Bit of Old England.

7. In this voyage we have followed the poet James Montgomery, who has taken rather a zigzag course;

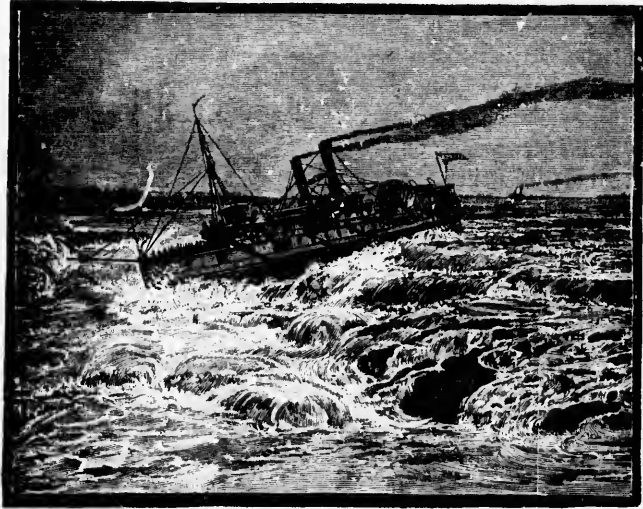
but we might have gone round the world, and yet never put our foot on any but British territory. For the sun 'never sets' on the empire of Queen Victoria; 'the roll of the British drum' encircles the globe with a belt of military music; and it would be quite possible to have an electric wire round this planet with its ends resting upon British soil only. 8. Let us then attempt such a voyage. Setting out from Toronto we enjoy a delightful trip on the blue waters of Lake Ontario, the last of the magnificent chain which divides our country from the United States, and reach at its end the 'old lime-stone city,' Kingston. Starting from its fort-environed harbor in the early morning, we seat ourselves near the bow of the boat, for we must not fail to make the best of the next few hours. We will not during our long voyage around the globe sail on another river so broad, and deep, as the one upon which we are now entering. Nor will we see again, till we return to the shores of our own country, such visions of varied and peaceful beauty as await us as we pass through the Thousand Islands. For several hours our vessel seems to be in a labyrinth of islands. Here is one only a few feet across, a mere rock, with a single stunted cedar growing from a crevice in its side. There is one containing hundreds of acres. There are forests of dense foliage on that island to our left, and its nearest neighbor is bare, or covered only with stunted shrubs. Before us and behind is a panorama of ever varying beauty. 9. But these charming scenes are not all that the St. Lawrence has to offer us. We have scarcely finished our exclamations of delight at the wondrous vistas through which we have passed, ere we begin to anticipate the excitement of sweeping down the fearful rapids that lie before us. Rushing down the Long Sault, whirling enraptured over the foaming waters of The

ny rest :



poet James  
zag course;

Cedars, only prepares us for the fearful leap at Lachine.



Lachine Rapids.

10. We do not breathe as our boat pitches past the rocks into the boiling pool, but we are soon in smooth water and have barely time to look at the spires and prominent buildings of Montreal, hanging from the sides of its Royal Mountain, ere we are floating under the Victoria Tubular Bridge, the longest in the world.



Victoria Bridge, Montreal.

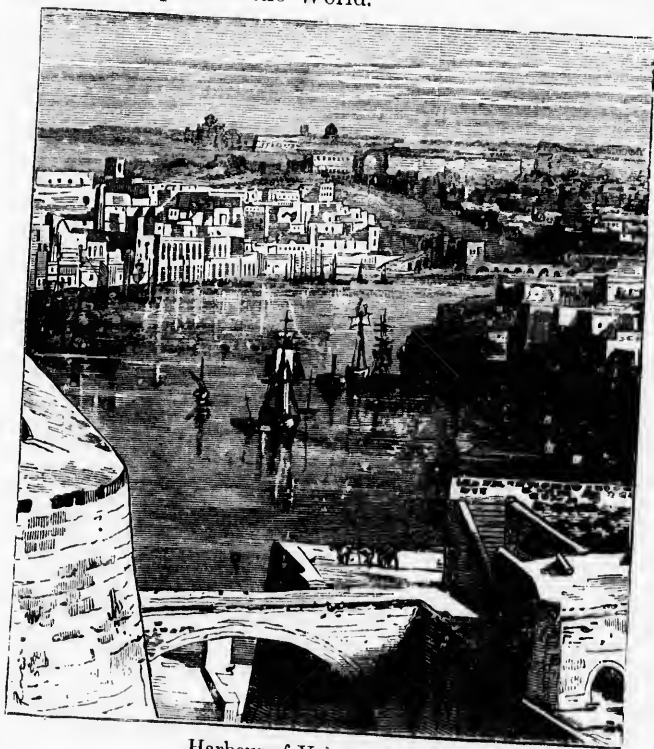
p at Lachine.



past the rocks  
smooth water  
and prominent  
sides of its  
the Victoria



11. We take an Allan steamer here, and passing the historic Quebec, with thoughts of the eventful morning when Wolfe and his little army scaled those fearful heights, we sail on out to the Atlantic which we cross. Landing in the 'old land' at Liverpool, we are amazed at its miles of docks, but soon hasten on by train to London, the 'Metropolis of the World.'



Harbour of Valetta, Malta.

12. Leaving London we run down the Channel, through the Bay of Biscay, the stormiest sea in Europe, and reach

Gibraltar, the key to the Mediterranean. Gibraltar is an impregnable fortress, and a station for military and naval stores. Sailing through the western basin of the Mediterranean, under deep-blue skies and through deep-blue water, we reach Malta, and drop anchor in the harbour of Valetta. Here we can purchase the most delicious oranges, figs, and olives for a mere trifle. Malta is a great 'place of arms,' and the key to the eastern basin of the Mediterranean.

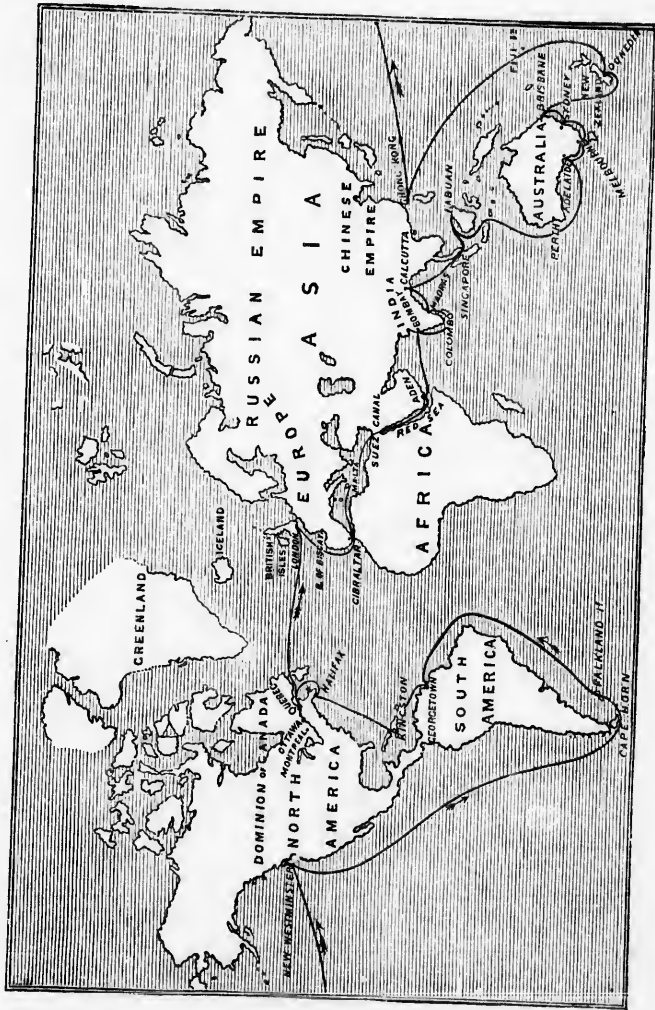
13. Now we make straight for the Suez Canal—a feat of engineering performed under the greatest difficulties by M. de Lesseps. Through the canal, and down the hot passage of the sea which lies between Arabia and Africa, we reach the rainless Aden—another British station, and the key to the Red Sea. Across the Indian Ocean, and we are at Bombay, the best harbor in India, and rapidly rising to be the first commercial port. 14. Here we can buy cotton, silk, indigo, opium, and all kinds of spices. Coasting down south, we reach Colombo, the capital of Ceylon—the poor harbor of a rich island. Pearls, all kinds of spices, and beautiful work in precious stones, hard woods, and ivory, can be purchased here. North to Madras, where there is no harbour; but we must land in small boats, piloted through the angry surf which rages eternally upon its shores. Madras stands next to Bombay in commercial importance.

15. The mouth of the Hooghly next receives us, and we are steaming up to Calcutta. Palms, acacias, and other tropical trees line the banks in thick profusion; but in mid stream the dead bodies of Hindus may now and then be seen. And so we reach Calcutta, the capital of Bengal and of India. Sailing down again, we steam for the British settlement at the south end of the Peninsula of Malacca, called Singapore. This is the great entrepot

Gibraltar is an  
 tary and naval  
 of the Mediter-  
 ough deep-blue  
 in the harbour  
 most delicious  
 Malta is a great  
 n basin of the

Cal--a feat  
 est difficulties  
 down the hot  
 ia and Africa,  
 h station, and  
 an Ocean, and  
 a, and rapidly  
 Here we can  
 nds of spices.  
 the capital of  
 Pearls, all  
 ecious stones,  
 ere. North to  
 must land in  
 f which rages  
 next to Bom-

ives us, and  
 acacias, and  
 profusion; but  
 may now and  
 the capital of  
 we steam for  
 he Peninsula  
 great entrepot





of Europe and the East, where the goods of the one are exchanged for the growths of the other. 16. Now we steer for Labuan, a small island off the coast of Borneo, where there is an extensive bed of excellent coal; and striking south to Australia, we pass the small town of Perth and make for Adelaide, the capital of South Australia. Here we can buy much wool and corn. East of it stands Melbourne, or Port Phillip, the largest town on that small continent. Farther north is Sydney, the capital of New South Wales, the eldest city in Australia; with pretty villas and neat cottages standing in groves of bananas and orange-trees and heacias. North again, and we come to Brisbane, the capital of Queensland, a growing and enterprising town.

17. Crossing now to New Zealand, we arrive at Dunedin, the largest town in this prosperous colony. Anon we strike due north, pass the Fiji Islands, a volcanic group which now belongs to us; and, steering north-west, reach the small island of Hong-Kong, at the mouth of the Canton River. This we took from the Chinese in 1843. We might now sail right across the broad Pacific, and land at New Westminster, the capital of British Columbia. From that point to Halifax, on the Atlantic, is a distance of more than three thousand miles, and all on British soil. But on the sea the Britain is everywhere at home; and so we round Cape Horn, call at the Falkland Islands for coal, and make for Georgetown, the capital of British Guiana. 18. We can next call at Kingston, the capital of Jamaica, where rum, sugar, tobacco, and coffee are daily shipped. From that point we can steam to Halifax, the capital of Nova Scotia. Here we can take the train for home, calling on our way at Ottawa, the capital of the Dominion, to look at the magnificent Parliament Buildings.

## THE LAND WE LIVE IN.

ADDRESS TO THE "NEW ENGLAND SOCIETY OF MONTREAL,  
ON THE ANNIVERSARY OF THE LANDING OF THE PIL-  
GRIMS," 22ND DECEMBER, 1860.

Lin'eament, feature.

Eu'logise, speak well of.

Luxu'riating, taking great comfort.

Macad'amizes, hardens.

Lu'bricates, makes smooth.

Sal'utary, wholesome.

Grad'ients, deviations of the surface  
from a level plane.

Cha'tel, an article to be bought and  
sold.

Expedi'tious, requiring little time.

1. I congratulate you and the Society over which you preside, Mr. President, on the recurrence of your favorite anniversary, and not only for your own gratification as our fellow-citizens of Montreal, but in the best interests of all humanity in the New World, let us join in hope that not only the sons of New England, but Americans from all other States settled amongst us, will long be able to join harmoniously in the celebration of the arrival of the first ship-load of emigrants in Massachusetts Bay on this day, 240 years ago;—a ship which wafted over the sea as large a cargo of the seeds of a new civilization as any ship ever did, since the famous voyage recorded in the legends of the Greeks. 2. It is rather a hard task this you have set me, Mr. President, of extolling the excellencies of "the land we live in"—that is, praising ourselves—especially at this particular season of the year. If it were mid-summer instead of mid-winter, when our rapids are flashing, and our glorious river sings its triumphal song from Ontario to the Ocean—when the northern summer, like the resurrection of the just, clothes every lineament of the landscape in beauty and serenity—it might be easy to say fine things for ourselves, without conflicting with the evidence of our senses. 3. But to eulogise Canada about Christmas time requires a patriotism akin to the

Laplander, when, luxuriating in his train oil, he declares that "there is no land like Lapland under the sun." Our consolation, however, is that all the snows of the season fall upon our soil for wise and Providential purposes. The great workman, Jack Frost, wraps the ploughed land in a warm covering, preserving the late sown wheat for the first ripening influence of the spring. He macadamizes roads, and bridges brooks and rivers, better than could the manual labor of 100,000 workmen. 4. He forms and lubricates the track through the wilderness by which those sailors of the forest—the lumbermen—are enabled to draw down the annual supply of one of our chief staples, to the margins of frozen rivers, which are to bear their rafts to Quebec, at the first opening of the navigation. This climate of ours, though rigorous, is not unhealthful, since the average of human life in this Province is seven per cent. higher than in any other portion of North America; and if the lowness of the glass does sometimes inconvenience individuals, we ought to be compensated and consoled by remembering of how much benefit these annual falls of snow are to the country at large. So much for our climatic difficulties.

5. Let me now say a word or two on our geographical position. Whoever looks at the map—a good map is an invaluable public instructor—not such maps as we used to have, in which Canada was stuck away up at the North Pole, but such maps as have lately appeared in this country—will be tempted to regard the Gulf of St. Lawrence as the first of the Canadian Lakes, and our magnificent river as only a longer Niagara or Detroit. His eye will follow up through the greater part of the tidal volume of that river the same parallel of latitude—the 46°—which intersects Germany, and cuts through the British Channel; if he pursues that parallel, it will

lead to the valley of the Saskatchewan, and through the Rocky Mountain passes, to the rising settlements of our fellow-subjects on the Pacific. 6. It will lead him through that most interesting country—the Red River territory, 500,000 square miles in extent, with a white population of less than 10,000 souls; a territory which ought to be “the Out-West” of our youth—where American enterprise has lately taught us a salutary, though rebuking lesson, for while we were debating about its true limits and the title by which it is held, they were steaming down to Fort Garry, with mails and merchandise from St. Paul. The position of Canada is not only important as a *Via media* to the Pacific; from a given point on our side of Lake Superior to navigable water on the Fraser River has been shown to be not more than 2,000 miles—about double the distance from Boston to Chicago. 7. A railway route, with gradients not much, if at all, exceeding those of the Vermont Central, or the Philadelphia and Pittsburg, has been traced throughout by Mr. Fleming, Mr. Hind, Mr. Dawson, Captain Syngé, and Colonel Pailisser; and though neither Canada nor Columbia are able of themselves to undertake the connexion, we cannot believe that British and American enterprise, which risked so many precious lives to find a practicable passage nearer to the Pole, will long leave untried this safest, shortest, and most expeditious overland North-West passage. 8. We cannot despair that the dream of Jaques Cartier may yet be fulfilled, and the shortest route from Europe to China be found through the valley of the St. Lawrence. Straight on to the West lies Vancouver's Island, the Cuba of the Pacific; a little to the North, the Amoor, which may be called the Amazon of the Arctic; farther off, but in a right line, the rich and populous Japanese group, which for wealth and

enterprise have not been inaptly called the British Isles of Asia. These, Mr. President, are some of our geographical advantages; there are others that I might refer to, but on an occasion of this kind I know the fewer details the better.

9. Now, one word more as to our people: the decennial census to be taken next month will probably show us to be nearly equal in numbers to the six States of New England, or the great State of New York, deducting New York City. An element, over a third, but less than one-half of that total, will be found to be of French Canadian origin; the remainder is made up, as the population of New York and New England has been, by British, Irish, German, and other emigrants and their descendants. 10. Have we advanced materially in the ratio of our American neighbours? I cannot say that we have. Montreal is an older city than Boston, and Kingston an older town than Oswego or Buffalo. Let us confess frankly that in many material things we are half a century behind the Americans, while, at the same time—not to give way altogether too much—let us modestly assert that we possess some social advantages which they, perhaps, do not. For example, we believed until lately—we still believe—that such a fiction as a slave, as one man being another man's chattel, was wholly unknown in Canada.\* And we still hope that may ever continue to be our boast. 11. In material progress we have something to show, and we trust to have more. All we need, Mr. President, mixed up and divided as we naturally are, is, in my humble opinion, the cultivation of a tolerant spirit

\* An allusion to the recent case of Anderson arrested and tried in Upper Canada, on the charge of killing his master, while attempting to escape in Missouri. He was finally acquitted by the Upper Canada Court of Appeal, but not until a writ of *habeas corpus* had been issued from the Queen's Bench, at Westminster.

on all the delicate controversies of race and religion,—the maintenance of an upright public opinion in our politics and commerce,—the cordial encouragement of every talent and every charity which reveals itself among us,—the expansion of those narrow views and small ambitions which are apt to attend upon Provincialism,—and with these amendments, I do think we might make for Christian men, desirous to bring up their posterity in the love and fear of God and the law, one of the most desirable residences in the world, of this “land we live in.”

T. D. McGee.

## NOTE.

Thomas D'Arcy McGee was born on the 13th day of April, 1825, at Carlingford, Ireland. At the age of seventeen he left his native country and arrived at Boston, where two years afterwards he was made Editor of the *Boston Pilot*. The year following he became Editor of the *Dublin Freeman's Journal*, and thus returned to Ireland. At the early age of twenty, owing to the genius he displayed as a poet, orator, and journalist, he took a place of first rank in the Irish press. He again removed to America in 1848, and resumed journalism. In the course of a few years he made Montreal his place of residence, where he was elected member of the Canadian Parliament. In 1862 he was made President of the Council. About this period he published his “History of Ireland.” In 1867 he entered the Dominion Parliament. He opposed Fenianism and made enemies thereby, and was shot dead one night on his way home from the House.

All the education he received was at a public school in Ireland. He wrote poetry and manifested great oratorical powers at the age of seventeen; and, also entered at this early age the career of journalist.

EXERCISES.—Explain the following expressions:—1. I congratulate you. 2. Cargo of the seeds of a new civilization. 3. River sings its triumphal song. 4. Like the resurrection of the just. 5. Lowness of the glass. 6. *Via media* to the Pacific. 7. Decennial census. 8. Such a fiction as a slave. 9. The cultivation of a tolerant spirit on all the delicate controversies of race and religion.

SUNSET.

---

Nature has a thousand ways and means of rising above herself, but incomparably the noblest manifestations of her capability of color are in the sunsets among the high clouds. There is then no limit to the multitude, and no check to the intensity of the hues assumed. The whole sky from the zenith to the horizon becomes one molten, mantling sea of color and fire; every black bar turns into massy gold, every ripple and wave into unsullied, shadowless crimson, and purple, and scarlet, and colors for which there are no words in language and no ideas in the mind,—things which can only be conceived while they are visible,—the intense hollow blue of the upper sky melting through it all,—showing here deep and pure lightness, there modulated by the filmy, formless body of the transparent vapor, till it is lost imperceptibly in its crimson and gold.

*Ruskin.*

---

"TILL THE DOCTOR COMES."

---

Accidents of various kinds occur almost every day, and much suffering has to be endured, and life is often sacrificed, because neither the injured one, nor his companions, have any knowledge of the means to be adopted for relief. To supply this knowledge in regard to some of the common accidents, is the object of the following rules and suggestions:

The first rule, and it is an important one, applies to

those who would render help. It is, *keep calm and self-possessed*. "Hasten slowly."

#### BLEEDING AND HOW TO ARREST IT.

There are two simple methods of arresting bleeding—  
*First*.—By *elevating* the wounded part. If the wound is in the head or neck put the patient in the sitting or standing posture, unless fainting come on, and then he must be put in the recumbent position. If the wound is in the foot, leg, hand, or arm, place the patient on his back, and raise the limb as high as possible above the level of the body. In many cases this plan is all that is necessary.

*Second*.—By *pressure* which is intended to close the vessels, from which the blood comes. The *place*, where the pressure is to be applied, is determined by the character of the blood escaping; if it is of a dark color and flows in a steady stream, it is *venous*, and pressure should be made *upon* the wound.



FIG. 1. Jet or spurt of blood from a wounded artery. This jet will appear once for each pulsation or beat of the heart

If it is bright red and comes in jets or spurts, it is *arterial*, and pressure

must be made *above* the wound, or between it and the heart.

There are two methods of applying pressure.

*First*.—The fingers or hand, or a solid pad, folded handkerchief, cap or stone, held in the hand, is pressed upon the wound or the course of the artery, with sufficient force to arrest the flow.

Ruskin.

S."

very day, and  
 s often sacri-  
 companions,  
 ted for relief.  
 e of the com-  
 ng rules and  
 ne, applies to



*Second.*—If a limb is wounded and the blood is venous, place a pad *upon* the wound; if arterial place it upon the *course of the artery*; then over the pad and around the limb tie a piece of rope, cord or handkerchief, and beneath this insert a piece of stick, and twist it until the bleeding ceases. (Fig. 2).

If the course of the artery is unknown to the operator omit the pad, and proceed as above described without it.

Should it be necessary to remove the patient to his home or a hospital, do so gently and watch the wound closely. If any oozing commences, increase the pressure. After reaching his destination, keep him quiet "Till the Doctor comes."

#### FRACTURED OR BROKEN BONES, AND WHAT TO DO WITH THEM.

*Symptoms.*—When a bone is broken, a snap is generally felt or heard by the patient, followed by severe pain. A fractured limb is shortened and deformed, and may be moved in almost any direction, except when only one bone of a pair is broken. When moved, the broken ends of the bone grate against each other. The popular belief, that there can be no fracture if the fingers or toes of the limb can be moved, is erroneous. "Till the Doctor comes," a broken bone should be kept at rest, in an easy position. But if the patient has to be moved, to be taken to a place of shelter, his home, or a hospital, it is necessary to *secure* the fragments, in order to prevent their sharp ends tearing into the flesh, or penetrating the skin, and thus adding, to the fracture, a dangerous complication.



FIG. 2



FIG. 2  
and proceed as

patient to his  
such the wound  
se the pressure.  
quiet "Till the

#### WHAT TO DO

snap is gener-  
by severe pain.  
ned, and may  
when only one  
e broken ends  
popular belief,  
or toes of the  
Doctor comes,"  
easy position.  
aken to a place  
ssary to *secure*  
p ends tearing  
thus adding,

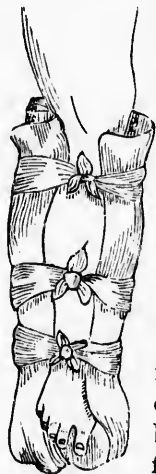


FIG. 3.

To accomplish this, one person will extend the limb until its full length is attained, and the deformity gone; another will apply temporary splints, such as splinters of wood, bark, twigs, folded coats, or vests, and tie them firmly around the limb with handkerchiefs, shoulder braces, pieces of harness, or ropes of twisted hay or straw. (Fig. 3). If the fractured limb is a leg, fasten it to the sound one, and both to a board beneath. (Fig. 4). Thus fixed, the patient may



FIG. 4.

be taken to his destina-  
tion, to await a surgeon's attendance.

The severe pain of broken ribs may be relieved by fastening around the chest, a wide cotton or woollen roller.

#### POISONED BITES.

The bites of mad dogs and poisonous snakes are generally inflicted on the limbs, and should be treated by tying a cord or handkerchief around the limb above the wound and twisting it (Fig. 2.) in order to prevent the poison entering the general circulation. The poison should be sucked out, or destroyed by applying to the wound a red-hot iron, strong nitric acid, or caustic. In the case of snake bites stimulants should be freely given.

#### POISONS.

As a precautionary measure, keep every bottle, box, or

parcel of medicines, or chemicals, labelled and out of the reach of children. In every case in which a poisonous substance has been swallowed, induce free vomiting with the least possible delay by tickling the back of the mouth with a feather or finger, or by giving large quantities of luke-warm water, containing a couple of teaspoonfuls of mustard or common salt, and in addition use the following remedies :

SPECIAL POISONS.

*All acids, such as sulphuric, nitric, &c.*

*Potash, lye, hartshorn.*

*Opium, laudanum, paregoric, morphia.*

*Arsenic, rat poison, paris-green, &c.*

*Bug poison, corrosive sublimate.*

*Tobacco.*

REMEDIES.

Powdered chalk, lime water, magnesia, soap-suds.

Vinegar diluted with water, lemon-juice, sour cider.

Prevent sleep for twelve or fourteen hours, keep the patient walking, slap the body briskly, give strong tea and coffee.

Give milk and raw eggs abundantly, lime water, or flour and water.

White of egg mixed with water frequently, and milk in the intervals.

Strong tea and coffee, and hot applications to the body and limbs.

INSENSIBILITY.

Persons become giddy and fall insensible from two directly opposite causes.

First.—A *deficiency* of blood in the brain, or fainting, indicated by death-like pallor, and a cold, clammy skin.

*Treatment.*—Put the person upon the back with the head as low as the body, or even lower, dash cold water in the face, and give access to plenty of fresh air.

Second.—*Excess* of blood in the brain or apoplexy. The face is livid, the eyelids puffed, the breathing difficult.

*Treatment.*—Loosen everything around the neck, place the person in a sitting position and apply cold to the head “Till the Doctor comes.”

#### BURNS AND SCALDS.

These should always be regarded as very serious accidents, especially when considerable extent of surface is involved, even if the depth of the injury is but trifling.

The indications of treatment are:—

First.—*Stop the fire.* Immediately envelop the sufferer with a shawl, coat, piece of carpet, anything to exclude the air, and thus extinguish the flame. Next pour on plenty of cold water; and do the same in case of scalds, for the cinders or boiling water in the clothing may be eating into the flesh.

Second.—*Remove the clothing.* With a sharp knife or pair of scissors, cut through all the garments so that they will readily fall off the body. Never *undress* one burned or scalded, for in so doing large portions of injured skin are often removed, and in consequence, suffering is increased, and the hope of recovery dimmed.

Third.—*Put the patient into a warm bed and exclude the air from the wounds.* To exclude the air apply cotton rags or cotton wool saturated with carron oil (equal parts of linseed oil and lime water), or warm milk and water (equal parts) with a teaspoonful of baking soda to the quart; or fine flour.

Fourth.—*Give the patient no stimulant but hot coffee and milk*: "Till the Doctor comes."

*J. W. McLaughlin, M.D.*

QUESTIONS.—1. How can you decide whether blood is flowing from an artery or a vein? 2. In which case is the blood coming from the heart? 3. Why should pressure be made *above* the wound when blood comes in jets? 4. Why should a bleeding leg or arm be raised? 5. How can you decide whether a bone is broken or not? 6. What should be done before the doctor comes in case of a fracture? 7. How may the pain of a broken rib be relieved? 8. What should be done immediately in case of a poisoned bite? 9. What special treatment should be used in case of snake bites? 10. Where should bottles containing poison be kept? 11. What should be done as soon as possible when poison has been swallowed? 12. Name two easy ways of causing vomiting. 13. Give the two causes of insensibility, and tell how to act in such cases. 14. How would you put out the fire in a person's clothing? 15. Why is it dangerous to take off the clothing in the ordinary way in case of burns or scalds?

### CANADIAN CONFEDERATION.

|                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Alle'giance, duty to a government                                                                                                                          | duty through one country because intended for use in another.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Lin'eage, family.                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Haz'ardous, full of risks.                                                                                                                                 | Legisla'tive Union, a union without provision for local parliaments.                                                                                                                                                            |
| Probabil'ities, chances.                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Cab'inet, the ministry or advisers of the Crown.                                                                                                           | Fed'eral Union, a union with one supreme government to attend to the interests of the country as a whole, but with local legislatures to deal with the questions affecting the individual provinces or states forming the Union |
| Negotia'tions, treaties.                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Recipro'city Treaty, a treaty between the United States and Canada for the free interchange of the productions of both countries; made 1854—repealed 1866. | Omnis'cience, boundless knowledge, God.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Bond'ed goods, goods passed free of                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

1. If we wish to be a great people; if we wish to form a great nationality, commanding the respect of the world, able to hold our own against all opponents, and to defend those institutions we prize; if we wish to have one

system of government, and to establish a commercial union, with unrestricted free trade, between people of the five provinces, belonging, as they do, to the same nation, obeying the same Sovereign, owning the same allegiance, and being, for the most part, of the same blood and lineage; if we wish to be able to afford to each other the means of mutual defence and support against aggression and attack—this can only be obtained by a union of some kind between the scattered and weak boundaries composing the British North American Provinces. 2. The very mention of the scheme is fitted to bring with it its own approbation. If we are not blind to our present position, we must see the hazardous situation in which all the great interests of Canada stand in respect to the United States. I am no alarmist. I do not believe in the prospect of immediate war. I believe that the common sense of the two nations will prevent a war; still we cannot trust to probabilities. The Government and Legislature would be wanting in their duty to the people if they ran any risk. 3. We know that the United States at this moment are engaged in a war of enormous dimensions—that the occasion of a war with Great Britain has again and again arisen, and may at any time in the future again arise. We cannot foresee what may be the result; we cannot say but that the two nations may drift into a war, as other nations have done before. It would then be too late, when war had commenced, to think of measures for strengthening ourselves, or to begin negotiations for a union with the sister provinces. 4. At this moment, in consequence of the ill-feeling which has arisen between England and the United States—a feeling of which Canada was not the cause,—in consequence of the irritation which now exists, owing to the unhappy state of affairs on this continent, the Reciprocity Treaty, it

but hot coffee

ghlin, M.D.

lood is flowing  
e blood coming  
ade above the  
uld a bleeding  
whether a bone  
ore the doctor  
in of a broken  
liately in case  
ould be used  
les containing  
on as possible  
o easy ways of  
ensibility, and  
u put out the  
ous to take off  
or scalds?

N.

he country be-  
r use in another.  
union without  
parliaments.  
union with one  
ment to attend  
the country as  
h local legisla-  
n the questions  
idual provinces  
he Union  
ess knowledge,

sh to form a  
the world,  
and to de-  
o have one

seems probable, is about to be brought to an end—our trade is hampered by the passport system, and at any moment we may be deprived of permission to carry our goods through United States channels—the bonded goods system may be done away with, and the winter trade through the United States put an end to. Our merchants may be obliged to return to the old system of bringing in during the summer months the supplies for the whole year. 5. Ourselves already threatened, our trade interrupted, our intercourse, political and commercial, destroyed, if we do not take warning now when we have the opportunity, and while one avenue is threatened to be closed, open another by taking advantage of the present arrangement and the desire of the Lower Provinces to draw closer the alliance between us, we may suffer commercial and political disadvantages, it may take long for us to overcome. 6. The Conference having come to the conclusion that a legislative union, pure and simple, was impracticable, our next attempt was to form a government upon federal principles, which would give to the General Government the strength of a legislative and administrative union, while at the same time it preserved that liberty of action for the different sections which is allowed by a Federal Union. And I am strong in the belief—that we have hit upon the happy medium in those resolutions, and that we have formed a scheme of government which unites the advantages of both, giving us the strength of a legislative union and the sectional freedom of a federal union, with protection to local interests. 7. In the first place, by a resolution, which meets with the universal approval of the people of this country, we have provided that for all time to come, so far as we can legislate for the future, we shall have as the head of the executive power, the Sovereign of Great Britain. No

one can look into futurity and say what will be the destiny of this country. Changes come over nations and peoples in the course of ages. But, so far as we can legislate, we provide that, for all time to come, the Sovereign of Great Britain shall be the Sovereign of British North America. I believe that it is of the utmost importance to have that principle recognized, so that we shall have a Sovereign who is placed above the region of party—to whom all parties look up—who is not elevated by the action of one party nor depressed by the action of another, who is the common head and sovereign of all.

6. In the Constitution we propose to continue the system of Responsible Government, which has existed in this province since 1841, and which has long obtained in the Mother Country. With us the Sovereign, or in this country the Representative of the Sovereign, can act only on the advice of his ministers, those ministers being responsible to the people through Parliament. One argument, but not a strong one, has been used against this Confederation, that it is an advance towards independence. Some are apprehensive that the very fact of our forming this union will hasten the time, when we shall be severed from the mother country. I have no apprehension of that kind. I believe it will have the contrary effect. 7. I believe that as we grow stronger, that, as it is felt in England we have become a people, able from our union, our strength, our population, and the development of our resources, to take our position among the nations of the world, she will be less willing to part with us than she would be now, when we are broken up into a number of insignificant colonies, subject to attack piece-meal without any concerted action or common organization of defence. When this union takes place, we will be at the outset no inconsiderable people. We find



ourselves with a population approaching four millions of souls. Such a population in Europe would make a second, or at least a third, rate power. 10. And with a rapidly increasing population—for I am satisfied that under this union our population will increase in a still greater ratio than ever before—with increased credit—with a higher position in the eyes of Europe—with the increased security we can offer to immigrants, who would naturally prefer to seek a new home in what is known to them as a great country, than in any one little colony or another—with all this I am satisfied that, great as has been our increase in the last twenty-five years since the union between Upper and Lower Canada, our future progress, during the next quarter of a century, will be vastly greater. And when, by means of this rapid increase, we become a nation of eight or nine millions of inhabitants, our alliance will be worthy of being sought by the great nations of the earth. 11. I am proud to believe that our desire for a permanent alliance will be reciprocated in England. I know that there is a party in England—but it is inconsiderable in numbers, though strong in intellect and power—which speaks of the desirability of getting rid of the colonies; but I believe such is not the feeling of the statesmen and the people of England. I believe it will never be the deliberately expressed determination of the Government of Great Britain. The colonies are now in a transition state. Gradually a different colonial system is being developed—and it will become, year by year, less a case of dependence on our part, and of overruling protection on the part of the Mother Country, and more a case of a healthy and cordial alliance. 12. We all feel the advantages we derive from our connection with England. So long as that alliance is maintained, we enjoy, under her protection, the privileges of constitutional liberty accord-

ing to the British system. We will enjoy here that which is the great test of constitutional freedom—we will have the rights of the minority respected. In all countries the rights of the majority take care of themselves, but it is only in countries like England, enjoying constitutional liberty, and safe from the tyranny of a single despot or of an unbridled democracy, that the rights of minorities are regarded. 13. So long, too, as we form a portion of the British Empire, we shall have the example of her free institutions, of the high standard of the character of her statesmen and public men, of the purity of her legislation, and the upright administration of her laws. In this younger country one great advantage of our connection with Great Britain will be, that, under her auspices, inspired by her example, a portion of her empire, our public men will be actuated by principles similar to those which actuate the statesmen at home. These, although not material, physical benefits, of which you can make an arithmetical calculation, are of such overwhelming advantage to our future interests and standing as a nation, that to obtain them is well worthy of any sacrifices we may be called upon to make, and the people of this country are ready to make them.

*Sir John A. Macdonald.*

QUESTIONS.—1. Was the Union of Upper and Lower Canada in 1841 a Legislative or a Federal Union? 2. Is Confederation a Legislative or a Federal Union? 3. What is the difference between a Legislative and a Federal Union? 4. What is meant by The Conference? 5. When did Confederation take place? 6. What is Responsible Government?

EXERCISES.—1. Write a composition describing the advantages of British connection.

2. Explain the meaning of (1) Tyranny of a single despot; (2) An unbridled democracy; (3) Rights of minorities; (4) Commercial union; (5) The representative of the Sovereign; (6) Subject to piece-meal.

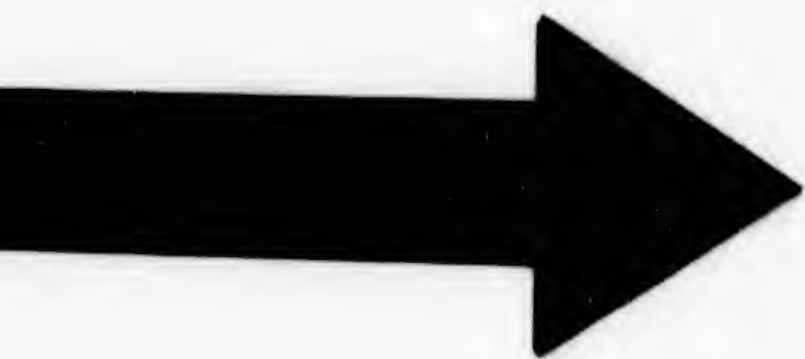
## AMERICAN FUGITIVE SLAVE BILL.

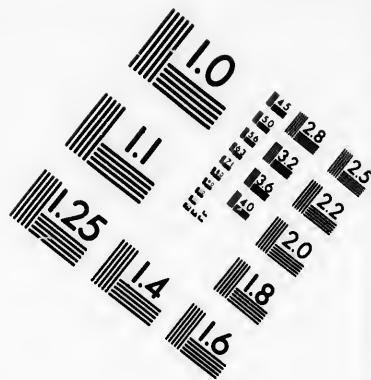
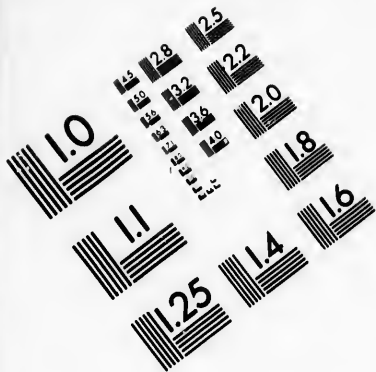
Part of an address delivered at the first anniversary of the Canadian Anti-Slavery Society in Toronto, March, 1852. Fortunately the law so strongly condemned does not now exist in the United States.

1. I recollect when I was a very young man I used to think that if I had ever to speak before such an audience as this, I would choose African Slavery as my theme, before any other topic. The subject seemed to afford the widest scope for rhetoric, and for fervid appeals to the best of human sympathies. These thoughts, sir, arose far from here, while slavery was a thing at a distance, while the horrors of the system were unrealized, while the mind received it as a tale and discussed it as a principle. 2. But when you have mingled with the thing itself, when you have encountered the atrocities of the system, when you have seen three millions of human beings held as chattels by their Christian countrymen, when you have seen the free institutions, the free press and the free pulpit of America linked in the unrighteous task of upholding the traffic—when you have realized the manacle and the lash and the slot-hound—you think no more of rhetoric. The mind stands appalled at the monstrous iniquity, mere words lose their meaning, and facts, cold facts, are felt to be the only fit argument. 3. I am to speak of the Fugitive Slave Bill of 1851, and if we search the statute-books of the world, I know not where we shall find its parallel. Let me recite the provisions of this infamous enactment. In the first place, it enabled the slave-holder or his agent to seize his “chattel” wherever he found him, *without any warrant*. You cannot arrest a criminal of the deepest dye without a warrant, but a man who is guilty of no crime but his color, can be seized at any moment without any form of law. In the next place, this law forbids the free

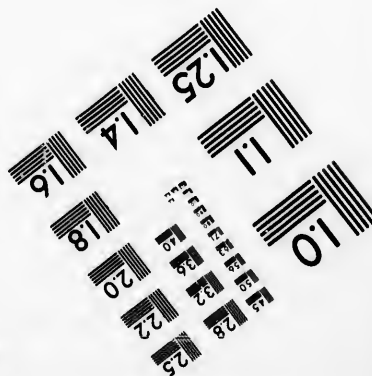
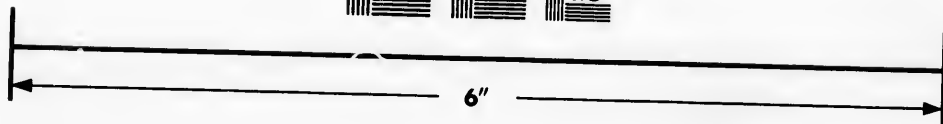
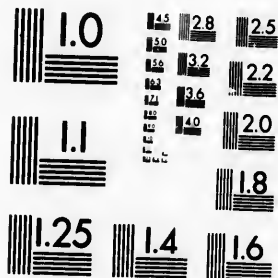
men of the North from showing charity to the refugee. What a mockery of liberty! Punish a man as a criminal, in the American Republic, because he sympathizes with a bondsman and helps him to be free! 4. Another remarkable feature of this Bill is, that the carrying out of its provisions was taken from the State authority, and handed over to the Federal officers. The slave-holders felt that their only safety was in placing the trust in the hands of men looking to Washington for their orders. The United States' Marshals were made the chief man-catchers of their respective districts—the United States' Court Commissioners the judges in all cases arising under the Bill. And these functionaries are bound by the severest penalties to carry out the law. 5. In all other cases, civil or criminal, Sheriffs and other public officers are only held responsible for their fidelity and diligence—it was left for the Fugitive Bill to punish a man for that which he did not do and could not avert. Then, again, the Bill compels the Free Northerners to turn out at the bidding of any Southern miscreant who claims a colored person for his property, and to aid in hunting him down like a beast of prey, and send him back to bondage. Let not Northerners speak of their *free* States after this—they have no free States. This is the most degrading of slavery. Professing to abjure the atrocious system—for the sake of their dollars—they permit the South to put its insulting foot upon their necks, they allow their free homesteads to be made the hunting ground of the man-stealer. 6. The bold villany of the South is not half so revolting as the despicable subserviency of the North. Tell me no more of your free Northern States—did the true spirit of liberty exist, an enactment such as this would be laughed to scorn, and an attempt to carry it out would rouse a feeling at the North which would shake the foundations of the "peculiar institu-







**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

10  
15  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36  
40  
45  
50  
56  
63  
71

10  
15  
18  
20  
22  
25  
28  
32  
36  
40  
45  
50  
56  
63  
71



tion." No—the full guilt of the law rests upon the North. Labored arguments are constantly coming from evangelical Northern pulpits palliating the system—nice criticisms on God's law in regard to it; but for my part I cannot listen to such arguments—I sweep aside all such theological humbug and find a solution of the whole question in the grand Christian rule—'*Do unto others as you would be done unto.*'

7. The question is often put, What have we in Canada to do with American slavery? Sir, we have everything to do with it. It is a question of humanity, and no man has a right to refuse his aid, whatever it may be, in ameliorating the woes of his fellow-man. It is a question of Christianity, and no Christian can have a pure conscience who hesitates to lift his voice against a system which, under the sanction of a Christian altar, sets at defiance every principle of Christianity. We have to do with it on the score of self-protection. The leprosy of the atrocious system affects all around it, it leavens the thoughts, the feelings, the institutions of the people who touch it. It is a barrier to the spread of Liberal principles. 8. Who can talk gravely of liberty and equality in the States, while slavery exists? Every intelligent American who professes to be a Christian and upholds slavery is committed to a glaring infidelity which must lead him continually astray, in trying to square with it his every day conduct. We are alongside of this great evil—our people mingle with it—we are affected by it now, and every day enhances the evil. In self-protection then we are bound to use every effort for its abolition, that our people may not be contaminated by its withering moral influence. 9. And, Sir, there is another reason why we have to do with slavery. We are in the habit of calling the people of the United States 'the Americans'—but

we too are Americans—on us as well as on them lies the duty of preserving the honor of this continent. On us, as on them, rests the noble trust of shielding Free Institutions from the reproach of modern tyrants. Who that looks at Europe given over to the despots, and with but one little island yet left to uphold the flag of freedom—can reflect without emotion that the great Republic of this Continent nurtures a despotism more base than them all. 10. How crushingly the upholders of tyranny in other lands must turn on the friends of liberty: ‘Behold your free institutions,’ they must say—‘look at the American Republic proclaiming all men to be born free and equal, and keeping nearly four millions of slaves in the most cruel bondage!’ The people of Canada are truly free—we have no slaves—all men are alike in the eye of justice. Long may it be so; and it is our duty to raise our voices as freemen against a system which brings so foul a blot on the cause of popular liberty. 11. Our neighbors are wont to boast that monarchy will be swept from this continent—let our effort be that slavery shall be driven from it, that tyranny shall here find not a foothold. Go to the very den of pauper misery in England—go to the bleakest of Scotland’s wild rocks—go to the most barren wilderness of Ireland—and ask the famished native, if you can find him, to exchange his starving liberty for well-fed slavery, and observe his answer. He will resent your offer with indignation, and tell you that you may feed him, but so you do your horses, and they are horses still; and that liberty to a Briton, poor and hungry though he be, is liberty still.

*Hon. George Brown.*

## WINNIPEG.

1. Winnipeg, the capital of Manitoba, is situated at the junction of the Red and Assiniboine rivers. Its position is exceptionally good. The two rivers on which it stands are navigable for hundreds of miles, running through a country, the fertility of whose soil cannot be surpassed. The navigation of Lake Winnipeg and the great Saskatchewan cannot fail to benefit it. It is the centre of several railroads, the chief of which, the Canada Pacific Railroad—the great national highway from ocean to ocean—and the South-Western, are being pushed forward with extraordinary vigor and success. 2. In 1869 its population was less than five hundred: to-day it is a city of from twelve to fifteen thousand inhabitants, spreading itself in all directions over the prairies; and its condition and prospects are such as to lead to the conviction that in less than ten years it will be the largest city in the Dominion. Its streets are broad and well laid out. Main Street, the principal thoroughfare, presents a very fine appearance. The small wooden buildings which its principal merchants found large enough for the business of six or eight years ago, are being everywhere replaced by fine brick buildings, some of them faced with stone, containing all the modern improvements. 3. Several of these, and notably the Hudson's Bay Company's new store, would do credit to any city on this continent. Manitoba has drawn her population from different parts of the world; and Indians representing different tribes, Half-breeds, Menmonites, Icelanders, as well as Frenchmen, Englishmen, Irishmen, Scotchmen, Canadians from the older Provinces, and Mexicans jostle one another on the streets and are friendly rivals for a share of the success

which invariably attends industry and energy in this country.

4. Besides being the seat of Government, Winnipeg has a very fine system of public schools, and a Provincial University. The University of Manitoba deserves more than a passing notice. Its constitution is so framed, that while the denominational aspect of its colleges remains, its examining and degree-conferring power is vested in a council on which the three colleges now in existence, as well as any others that may hereafter be formed, have representatives; and consequently, during the time the University has existed, Roman Catholics, Episcopalians, Presbyterians and others have met at the same council board, working together in the most enlightened and cordial manner for the advancement of that higher education in which all are interested.

5. Under the Manitoba Act, two sections, consisting of 1,280 acres, in every township within the Province has been set apart for purposes of education. This will form a splendid endowment, and from the experience that has been already gained, and the progress hitherto made, there is the utmost reason for thinking that in her educational system, as well as in her agricultural capabilities, Manitoba will ere long stand without a rival in the Dominion.

6. Winnipeg is a very busy place. The fine clear bracing air seems to make people energetic. Its banks are doing an immense business. Its people are eminently liberal, public spirited and hospitable. It is a great church-going place. Law and order are strictly and impartially administered, and the record of crime throughout the whole Province is exceptionally light. A discontented person is scarcely to be seen. The truth is, people are happy because they have plenty to do, and they feel that they are prospering.

## FOREIGN ELEMENTS IN THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

## NORMAN-FRENCH AND LATIN.

1. The Northmen or Normans were warriors who came from the North of Europe or Scandinavia. Pressing always farther and farther south, they at length made their way, in 876, to the rich valley of the Seine, which they wrested from its possessors. This band of Northmen was led by Duke Rolf or Rollo, who was called the *Ganger*, because he was so tall that the small Norwegian ponies could not carry him, as his legs trailed upon the ground. 2. These brave and strong Northmen brought with them their own rough Norwegian or Norsk speech; but, after settling in the valley of the Seine—which took from them its name of Normandy—they gradually dropped their own language, and learned the habit of using French. But this French was not the same as that which we now find in French books, but a kind of French which has received the name of Norman-French. 3. Edward the Confessor was educated at this Norman Court—at the Court of the Grand-duke of Normandy; and on his accession to the English Crown in 1042, he introduced the custom of speaking Norman-French into his own English Court at Westminster. Then, in 1066, Duke William of Normandy, who declared that Edward had appointed him his heir, came over to England, fought the battle of Senlac or Hastings, defeated Harold, and put his Normans in possession of the land and of every important office in Church and State. With his Normans he also introduced Norman-French. 4. This language became the language of all courts of law in England, of all military affairs, of the higher priests in the Church; and it was also the language which little boys in school were compelled to translate their Latin into and to speak in. This state of things lasted for nearly three hundred years—from 1066 till 1362—when Edward III. passed a law permitting English to be used instead of French. 5. But, during these three hundred years, Englishmen had been learning and using a large number of French words; and thus many of these words took a place in our language, and have remained with us. Even country people tried to pick up

a few French phrases, and did their best 'to speke French for to be more ytold of.' Thus it is that there are in our English tongue large numbers of Norman-French words. 6. These words, as has already been said, have not the same form—are not spelled in the same way as modern French words. Thus, from the Latin *populus* (which gives us our words *popular*, *population*, and others) comes the Norman-French *people*, which in Parisian French is *peuple*; while the Parisian French *chaise* was in Norman-French written *chaire*, and *loisir* was written *leysir*—and hence our word *leisure*. Thus we can see that, in certain words, Norman-French prefers an *o* to a *u*, an *r* to an *s*, and an *e* to an *o*.

7. The nature of the words contributed to our language by the Norman-French is very significant, and well worthy of note. The simple words for ordinary objects are always English, like *heaven*, *sky*, *sun*, *moon*, and *star*; but *season*, *autumn*, *hour*, and *minute* are French. The common names for common animals are English, as *fox*, *hound*, *deer*; but the general (or generic) names—*animal*, *beast*, &c.—are French. 8. The names for common things in or about an ordinary house are English, like *stool*, *beam*, *wall*, *fireside*, *hearth*; but the terms for grander objects, as *palace*, *cabinet*, *curtain*, *goblet*, are French. There is not a single French name for any tool employed in agriculture; while *plough*, *harrow*, *spade*, *flail*, and many more, are pure English. The names for the simpler articles of dress are English, as *woollen shirt*, *hood*, *hat*, *band*, *hose*; but the abstract and the higher terms are Norman-French, as *garment*, *dress*, *costume*, *armour*, *mail*, and *lace*. 9. Wamba, the country clown in 'Ivanhoe,' notices that when the animals we eat are alive they have English or Saxon names, but when they are served up at table they take fine Norman names. Thus we have *sheep* and *mutton*, *ox* and *beef*, *calf* and *veal*, *fowl* and *pullet*. The names of things about a ship—as *keel*, *oar*, *sail*, *stern*, *deck*, *mast*—are all English; while the Norman-French contributed only one—the significant name of the *pro*w, seated on which the Norman-French invader may be imagined devouring with his eyes the land he was about to conquer. 10. The simpler and well-known names of relatives are all English—*father*, *mother*, *sister*, *brother*, *son*, and *daughter*; while *family*, *uncle*, *aunt*, *consort*, *ancestors*, and others are French. The titles of high rank are English—if the dignities existed among the English

before the Normans came—such as *king, queen, lord, and lady*; but *duke, marquis, viscount*, and the general terms, *dignity, peer, esquire*, and many others, are French. Again, of names that are names of state only one is English—though that one is of great importance—*kingdom*; but *state, court, constitution, treaty, navy, army*, and *empire* are all French, because it was under their rule that these things, along with the names of them, were introduced.

11. The fact that an English word has come into our possession in two different ways—first, by the Norman-French gate (or Latin at second-hand—L.<sup>2</sup>), and, secondly, by the Latin gate (or Latin at first-hand—L.<sup>1</sup>)—gives rise to the phenomenon of DOUBLETS or BYE-FORMS. Thus we have *fact* and *feat* as different forms of the Latin *factum*, a deed, and now different words. Thus also we have:

| Latin.        | L. <sup>1</sup> | L. <sup>2</sup> (or N.-Fr.) |
|---------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| Benedictionem | Benediction     | Benison                     |
| Captivus      | Captive         | Caitiff                     |
| Conceptionem  | Conception      | Conceit                     |
| Defectus      | Defect          | Defeat                      |
| Exemplum      | Example         | Sample                      |
| Factum        | Fact            | Feat                        |
| Factionem     | Faction         | Fashion                     |
| Fabrica       | Fabric          | Forge                       |
| Fragilis      | Fragile         | Frail                       |
| Legalis       | Legal           | Loyal                       |
| Pungentem     | Pungent         | Poignant                    |
| Regalis       | Regal           | Royal                       |
| Senior        | Senior          | Sir                         |
| Separare      | Separate        | Sever                       |
| Traditionem   | Tradition       | Treason                     |

The following is a list of the most important

#### NORMAN-FRENCH WORDS\*

(With some explanation of their derivations):

(1) **Abandon**, from Old French *bandon*, permission. To put a forest to *bandon* was to give *permission* to any one to pasture his cattle or to cut wood in it. Hence *abandon* means now to give up.

\* A few ordinary French words have been mixed with them.

(2) **Acate**.—This was the Norman-French form of the French *acheter*, to buy (from Low Latin *adcapere*, to seize). We have lost it; but it survives in the word *cat* in the story of 'Whittington and his Cat.' Whittington, a Lord Mayor of London, made himself rich by his *acate*—that is, his purchases or his commerce.

(3) **Alloy**, to mix one metal with another. From French *à la loi*—according to law. (*Loi* is from Latin *lex, leg-is*, a law.)

(4) **Ancestor**, from Old French *ancestre* (French *ancêtre*), from Latin *antecessor*, a person who goes before.

(5) **Approach**, from French *approcher*; from Low Latin *appropriare*, to come near (Latin *prope*—hence English *propinquity*).

(6) **Arrive**, from French *arriver*, to arrive, from Low Latin *adripare*, to get to the bank (*ripa*). *Arrive*—the noun—in Old English meant a landing of troops. Thus Chaucer, who lived in the fourteenth century, says of his knight :

'At many a noble *arrive* had he been.'

[The *p* in *ripa* has been changed into *v* in *arrive*, both being lip-letters or labials.]

(7) **Artillery**, from French *artillerie*, weapons of war (from Latin *ars, art*). In the First Book of Samuel, chap. xx. 40, a *bow and arrows*, carried by the servant of Jonathan, are called *artillerie*.

(8) **Besiege**, from French *assiéger*; from Low Latin *assediare* (from Latin *sedes, seat*), to take a seat in front of. The word is French with an English prefix, *be*.

(9) **Beverage**, from Old French *beuvrage*; from Low Latin *biberare* (Latin *bibere, to drink*), to keep drinking.

(10) **Biscuit**, from French *biscuit*; from Latin *bis, twice*, and *coctus, cooked*. (From *coctus* we have *concoct, decoction, &c.*)

(11) **Cage**, French *cage*, a cage; from Latin *cavea, a cave*.

(12) **Canal**, from French *canal*, a pipe; from Latin *canalis, a water-pipe*, from *canna, a reed*. (From the same Latin word comes *cannon* and *channel*, the latter of which is a bye-form or doublet of *canal*.)

(13) **Captain**, French *capitaine*; from Low Latin *capitaneus*; from Latin *caput, the head*. (From the same word comes *capital*.)



(14) **Chamber**, French *chambre*, from Latin *camera*, a room. (Hence also *comrade*, from French *camerade*, a person who occupies the same room.) The *b* comes in as a cushion between the two liquid letters *m* and *r*; as in *semblance* from *similis*.

(15) **Chancellor**, from French *chancelier*; from Latin *cancellarius*. The cross-barred gratings which divided the judgment-seat of a judge from the people were called *cancelli*, from *cancer*, a crab, *cancellus*, a little crab—because the cross-bars were like the claws of crabs.

(16) **Chief**, French *chef*; Latin *caput*, the head. (The *p* is softened into *b*, both being lip-letters or labials. *Cap* is a doublet or bye-form of *chef*. Hence also *achieve*, to bring to a *chef* or head.) See *Captain*.

(17) **Chivalry**, French *cheval*; from Low Latin *caballus*, a horse (*b* and *v* are both lip-letters or labials). In the fourteenth century a military expedition on horseback was called a *chevauchée*—hence, by corruption, the Battle of *Chevy Chase*. (There is no such place either in England or Scotland as *Chevy Chase*.)

(18) **Damsel**, French *demoiselle*, a little lady; from French *dame*; from Latin *domina*, a lady. (The Latin *mea domina*, my lady, became in French *madame*; in English *ma'am*; and it has been pared down to 'm in *Yes 'm!* Thus two words of nine letters have been cut down in process of time to *m*.)

(19) **Danger**, French *danger*; from Low Latin *dominiarium*, dominion or power. In the seventeenth century (when Shakespeare lived) *danger* meant *power*. Thus the phrase went 'The debtor is in the creditor's *danger*.' In the 'Merchant of Venice,' Act IV. i. 169, Portia says to Antonio, the merchant, speaking of Shylock: 'You stand within *his danger*, do you not?'

(20) **Escape**, from Old French *escaper* (modern French, *échapper*), to get out of the *cape* of a cloak; from Italian *cappa*, a robe.

(21) **Fay**, Norman-French form of French *Fée*, from Low Latin *Fata*, a goddess who presided over our *fate* or destiny. *Fate* is from Latin *fatum* = the thing spoken and not to be recalled; from *fari*, to speak. The same root gives *fable*; *fame* (= talk about a person), *infamous*; *infant* (= a non-speaker.)

(22) **Feat**, Norman-French form of French *fait*; Latin *factum*, a thing done. (*Fact* is a doublet of *feat*; but *fact* comes directly from Latin *factum*.)

(23) **Forest**, French *forêt*, from Low Latin *forestis*, an open piece of ground; from Latin *foris*, out of doors. (A *forest* does not therefore necessarily include *trees* in the meaning of it. The old definition is 'forestis is a place where the wild beasts are not shut in; a park (*parcus*), where they are shut in'.)

(24) **Frank**, French *franc*, free. (There was in Germany a strong tribe of Teutons, who are mentioned by Cæsar as Franco-manni, and who invaded Gaul and gave the name of *France* to it. Their name has also been given to the manly quality of openness—*frank*; to the right and freedom of voting—*franchise*. Hence also *enfranchise*.)

(25) **Fuel**, from Norman-French *fuayl*, French *feu*; from Latin *focus*, for a hearth or fireplace. (The guttural hard *c* has gradually vanished.)

(26) **Gauntlet**, French *gantélet*, from French *gant*, a glove; from Low Latin *wantus*, a glove. (The Norman-French people have never been able to pronounce a *w*, and have hence been compelled to change it into *g* or *gu*. Thus the English *ward* has become *guardian*; *ward*, *guard*; *wise* (the noun), *guise*; *wile*, *guile*; *war*, *guerre*; and *William*, *Guillaume*.)

(27) **Gawky**, from French *gauche*, left hand. (A *gawky* person is one who uses his right hand as if it were his left. The French say of an Englishman that 'both his hands are left hands and all his fingers are thumbs'.)

(28) **Homage**, spelled in French *hommage*, the state of being the *man* (*homme*) or servant of another. (The vassal knelt down before his lord, placed his hands together between the hands of his lord, and said: 'I become your man'.)

(29) **Hotel**, Old French *hostel*; Latin *hospitale*, a large house (from Latin *hospes*, a host or guest). The words *hotel*, *hospital*, and *hospice* (an Alpine convent used as an inn) are all from the same root. (The keeper of a hostel was called the *hosteller*, now changed into *ostler*.)

(30) **Jewel**, from Old French *joel* (French *joyau*); Low Latin *jocale*, a sport. (The guttural *c* has vanished.)

(31) **Journey**, from French *jour*, a day; from Latin *dies*. (*Jour* is derived from the Latin *dies*, and yet there is not a letter in the one that is in the other. The steps are *dies*; adjective, *diurnus*, daily; *jorn* (like Italian *giorno*, a day); *jour*; *jour*.) From the same root come *journal* and *journeyman*.

(32) **Judge**, French *juge*; Latin *judicem* (= *jus-dic-s*, from *jus*, right, and *dico*, I say = a person who utters right or law).

(33) **Leisure**, Norman-French *leisir* (French *loisir*); from Latin *licere*, to be lawful (not to work).

(34) **Loyal**, French *loyal*; from Latin *legalis*, according to law. (The hard *g* has vanished into a *y*. The Norman-French form was *leal*, still found in Scotland. So *royal* was in Norman-French *real* (hence *realm*, *Mont-real*), and *fidelity* was *fealty*.)

(35) **Manage**, from French *ménage*; Old French *mesnage* and *maisnage*; from Low Latin *mansionaticum*, the expenses of a mansion or household. (It has nothing to do with the Latin *manus*, a hand.)

(36) **March**, French *marcher*, to walk or *stamp* with the feet; from Low Latin *marcare*, to hammer, from *marcus*, a hammer.

(37) **Marquis** (or *Marquess*), Old French *marchis*; from Low Latin *marchensis*, a governor set over the marches or limits of the empire in the time of Charlemagne. (This word *march* or *mark* is not to be confounded with 36. It is really a German word which has passed over into French. It came also to mean *country*. Thus *Finnmark* is the country of the Finns; *Denmark*, the country of the Danes; and so on.)

(38) **Master**, Old French *maistre* (French *maître*; Latin *magister*, from *mag-nus*, great. (It is opposed to *minister*, formerly *minuster*, a smaller man or servant.)

(39) **Mayor**, a French form of the Latin *major*, greater, from *magnus*, great. (The hard *g* is modified into *j*, and then into *y*.)

(40) **Minstrel**, from Old French *menestrel*; Low Latin *ministrellus*, a diminutive of *minister*, a servant. (The Latin word used in arithmetic, *minus*, less, gives *minuster*, afterwards *minister*, as opposed to *magister*, from *mag-nus*, great.)

(41) **Number**, from French *nombre*; from Latin *numerus* (which gives *numerous*, *numeration*, &c.). From the same root come *numerous*, *innumerable*, and many others. (The *b* in number is inserted as a cushion between the two liquids *n* and *r*. Cf. *similar* and *semblance*; *dissimilar* and *dissemble*. *D* is sometimes employed for the same purpose, as in *thunder*, from Old English *thunor*.)

(42) **Orange**, from the Spanish *naranja*, from Arabic *naranj*. We derived our word *orange* from the French word *orange*, which ought to be *narange*. But it was mistakenly supposed to be derived from the Latin word *aurum*, gold (in French *or*), and hence to mean golden fruit. The dropping of the *n* may be compared with our word *an alder*, which was originally a *nalder*; an *apron*, which was a *naperon*. A mistake of the opposite kind has taken place in a *nay*, which was an *öy* (Danish for *horse*).

(43) **Orphan**, from Old French *orphanin* (modern French *orphelin*), from Latin *orbus*, deprived of.

(44) **Overture**, an opening or beginning, from Old French *ovrir* (modern French *ouvrir*), to open; Latin *aperire*. From the same root come *aperture*, *April* (the opening month), &c.

(45) **Palace**, from French *palais*; Latin *palatium*, a palace. (But originally *palatium* meant a large house built by the Emperor Augustus on the Mons Palatinus, one of the seven hills of Rome. The word *Palatium* itself comes from the name of an old Latin pastoral god—*Pales*—the protector of sheep and shepherds.)

(46) **Palfrey**, from Provençal or Southern French *palafroi*; from Low Latin *paravredus*, a post-horse or spare horse.

(47) **Parliament**, from French *parler*, to speak; Old French *paroler*; Low Latin *parabolare*, to tell or relate (a parable). The same root gives *parley*, a short conference in war; *parlour*, a room for talking in. (Just as *boudoir* originally meant a room for *sulking in*, from *bouder*, to pout.)

(48) **Pay**, from French *payer*; from Latin *pacare*, to bring to peace (*pax* = *pac*-s.) The guttural *c* gradually vanished. (The same idea is contained in the word *acquit* and *quittance*, which come from Latin *quies*, rest.)

(49) **Peasant**, from Norman-French *peasan* (modern French *paysan*); from Low Latin *pagensis*, the inhabitant of a *pagus*, or country district. The final *t* is intrusive; as in *sound*, from French *son*; the vulgar *gound*, &c. (The same Latin root gives *pagan*, as Christianity was first preached in towns and came only late to the country districts—a historical fact also contained in the word *heathen*, which originally meant a dweller on a *heath*.)

(50) **People**, from Norman-French *people* (modern French *peuple*); Latin *populus*, the people. (It is the *pul* that is the true root; and this is the same word—both coming from a common Indian stock—as *full* and the *fol* in *folk*. Cf. German *voll* and *Volk*.)

(51) **Perfume**, from French *parfum*; from Latin *fumus*, smoke. From the same root come *fume*, *fumigate*, &c.

(52) **Poverty**, from Norman-French *poivre* (modern French *pauvreté*); Latin *paupertatem*. (The same root gives at first hand from Latin *pauper* and *pauperism*.)

(53) **Power**, from French *pouvoir*; from Low Latin *potere* (Latin *posse*). (The change of the *v* into a double *v* or *w* is very common. Cf. Latin name *Vect-is* (or Isle of *Wight*; *vast* and *waste*, &c.) From *potens* (the participle of *posse*) come *potent*; *impotent*; *omnipotent*; *potential*, &c.)

(54) **Prairie**, from French *prairie*; Low Latin *prataria*; Latin *pratium*, a meadow.

(55) **Province**, French *province*; Latin *provincia*, a conquered country (from *vinco*, I conquer). The Romans called the South of France *Provincia*; and this fact gave it its more modern name of *Provence*.

(56) **Prove**, from French *proesse*; Latin *probus*, good. It hence came to mean *goodness in arms*. (From *probus* comes in a direct line *probity*.)

(57) **Quarrel**, from French *querelle*; Latin *querēla*, a complaint. (From the same root comes *querulous*.)

(58) **Quarry**, from Norman-French *quarrer* (modern French *carre*, to square); Latin *quadrare*, to square; from Latin *quatuor*, four. (This word must not be confounded with the

word in Milton's line : 'The eagle scents his quarry from afar.' This latter word comes from French *cœur*, the heart (Latin *cor*), and indicates the heart and entrails which were given to the dogs when the game had been run down.)

(59) **Rear**, from Old French *arrière* (modern French *arrière*); Latin *ad-retro*, behind. (This word must not be confounded with the purely English verb *rear*, which is a bye-form or doublet of *rise*; and connected with *raise* and *rouse*.)

(60) **Reign**, from Norman-French *reigne* (modern French *règne*), from Latin *regnum*, a kingdom. (The root is *reg*, which appears in *reg-o* (I rule); *rex* (= *reg-s*), &c.; and in the English *reg-ent*, *reg-ular*, *reg-ulation*, *regn-ant*, &c. This word has no connection with *sovereign*, which is only a corrupted and mistaken spelling of *sovrain*, from Low Latin *superaneus*, above.)

(61) **Rein**, from French *rêne*; from Low Latin *retina*, a bridle; from Latin *retinere*, to hold back. The same word gives *retain*, *retention*, *retentive*, &c.

(62) **Roll**, from French *rouler*, to roll or wheel; from Low Latin *rotulare*, to keep turning; from Latin *rota*, a wheel. The same word gives *rotation*, *roller*, *enrol*, &c.

(63) **Route**, from French *route*, a road; Latin *rupta* (*via*, a way) *broken* or cut through the primeval forest. (From the same word comes *routine* = the following of a route; and *Rotten Row*, in Hyde Park, which was originally *Route au Roi* = the road for the king.)

(64) **Sage**, from French *sage*, wise; Latin *sap-ere*, to taste, or to be wise. From the same root come *savour*, *savoury* (Latin *sapor*).

(65) **Salary**, from French *salaire*; Latin *salarium*, an allowance made to the Roman soldiers for *sal*, salt. From the same root come *salad*, *sauce* (*u* for *l*, as in *mou*, *mol*; *vieux*, *viel*, &c.), *sausage* (Low Latin *salsitia*), &c.

(66) **Sound**, from French *son*, Latin *sonus*, a sound. (For note on intrusive *d* see *Peasant*.) There are *four* words in the English language with the spelling *sound*. The others are: *Sound*, from Old English *sund*, connected with Latin *sanus*

(which also gives *sane* and *sanity*); *sound*, a strait, connected with *swim*, and = what may be swum across; and hence a second meaning of this is the *swimming bladder* of a fish; and *sound*, from French *sonder*; Low Latin *subundare*, to dive under the wave.

(67) **Tailor**, from French *tailleur*, to cut. A sword-smith was called *taille-fer* = cut-iron (from Latin *ferrum*, iron; from which comes the proper name *Telfer*).

(68) **Trouble**, from French *troubler*; Low Latin *turbulare*, to make muddy. (The letter *r* is a very shifty letter. Cf. *Three*, *third*; *turn*, *trundle*; *burn*, *brunt*.)

(69) **Turbot**, from French *turbot*; from Latin *turbo*, a top, afterwards a turbot, from the likeness of the fish to the shape of a top. (Similarly the Greeks had the same word for a top and a turbot—*rhombos*.)

(70) **Varlet**, from Old French *vaslet*; from Low Latin *vassaletus*, a diminution of *vassalis*, a vassal. From the same root come *vassal*, *valet*, and *vavasour*, an inferior vassal.

(71) **View**, from Norman-French *view* (modern French *vue*); from Latin *vid-ere*, to see. (From the same Latin root come at first hand *vision*, *visible*; *provide*, *provision*; *supervision*; and, at second-hand, through French *en-vy*, *interview*, &c.)

(72) **Villain**, from Old French *vilain*, a farmer; from Latin *villanus*, a farm-servant, or one attached to a *villa*, a farm. From the same root comes *village* (from Low Latin *villaticum*, a collection of small farms). Milton calls barn-door fowl *villatic fowl*.



trait, connected  
and hence a  
of a fish; and  
*alare*, to dive

word-smith was  
s, iron; from

n *turbulare*, to  
er. Cf. *Three*,

n *turbo*, a top,  
sh to the shape  
word for a top

n Low Latin  
from the same  
vassal.

n French *vue*);  
n root come at  
*peruision*; and,  
&c.)

er; from Latin  
*villa*, a farm.  
Latin *villaticum*,  
barn-door fowl







N.L.C. - B.N.C.



3 3286 02757078 3

